

RUDIMENTS OF ANCIENT HISTORY, SACRED *and* PROPHANE.

CONTAINING

The most material Transactions which have been
recorded for the first Four Thousand Years, from the
Creation of the World to the Birth of CHRIST.

By Way of

QUESTION *and* ANSWER.

Designed for the Use of SCHOOLS.

AND,

Tho' calculated chiefly for the Instruction of YOUNG GENTLE-
MEN and LADIES, yet may be very useful for all such Per-
sons as have not Abilities to purchase or consult the Originals.

COLLECTED *and* DIGESTED

From the best *Authors* extant, and reduced into a small Compass,
in a familiar Style, suitable to the meanest CAPACITIES.

By EDWARD BUTTON, *Gent.*
Of Kilnecote, *Leicestershire.*

*Neglect nothing, my Son, to make the History of the Ancients
familiar to you. Basilins the Emperor, to his Son
and Successor Leo the Philosopher.*

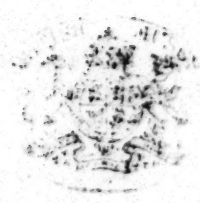
THE THIRD EDITION.

L O N D O N :

Printed for W. JOHNSTON in St. Paul's Church-yard ;
P. DAVEY and B. LAW in Ave-Mary-Lane ; and T. POTTS in
Fleet-street. 1757.

MEMORANDUM

TO THE SECRETARY OF THE
NAVY
FROM THE SECRETARY OF THE
NAVY



TO

EDWARD SMITH,

OF

Edmontborpe, Esq;

One of the *Representatives* in the
present Parliament of GREAT-
BRITAIN, for the County of
LEICESTER.

S I R,

URING the Vicissi-
tudes of Fortune which
I have experienced, no-
thing ever touched me
so near, as the untimely Death of
A 2 that

that worthy Baronet Sir VERNEY CAVE ; in whom I have lost a kind generous Friend ; You, Sir, a most agreeable Companion, and hearty Advocate.

Permit me, therefore, in his Stead, to offer the following Sheets to the Public, under your Patronage, as a Memorial of my Gratitude to the Deceas'd, and as some Acknowledgment of the Honour and Favour I have received from your happy Conversations.

But, Sir, had neither my slender Acquaintance with you, nor your peculiar Intimacy with my best Friend, prompted me to make you this Offering ; Your being the Son of a Worthy Clergyman, my Neighbour ; and at this Time one of the Stewards
for

DEDICATION.

v

for that truly CHRISTIAN SOCIETY, would have intitled you hereto. For to whom could the History of Original Priesthood so properly belong, as to a Descendant of the House of *Aaron*: And where does the Divine Authority, and Superior Grandeur, which was vested in that High and Sacred Office, so visibly appear, as in beholding the over-bearing Arrogance of an all conquering *Alexander*, shock'd and over-aw'd at the Sight of a *Jaddua*.

Accept then, Sir, of these my small Endeavours for the general Good of my native Country, and let the Usefulness of the Present make some Attonement for the Trouble of this Address.

History, Sir, is made up of nothing but Actions, all which seem chiefly to be compiled for the Use of Great Men : For if Experience be necessary to acquire that Prudence, which makes a good Prince, or a wise Senator ; nothing can be more assistant either to One, or the Other, than to join the Examples of Times pass'd, to the Experience of the Times present, that, by comparing them together, they may conjecture of the Times to come : And here, Sir, you may behold, at one View, the Patriarchs, Heroes, and Actions, of former Ages drawn, as it were to the Life, in Miniature.

Far be it from me, Sir, to endeavour at any fulsome Encomiums

DEDICATION.

vii

miums on your Person or Parts; to set forth only your prudent Conduct in that Honourable Station, which you so deservedly injoy, would look as much like Flattery in me, as it seems above the Reach of Censure in others.

Suffice it in this Place, as I am in Duty bound to lay this small Tribute at your Feet, which I humbly hope, under your Protection, will meet with a favorable Reception from those at least for whose Service it was principally intended.

That your Life, Sir, may be long and happy; that you may persevere in that unshaken Fidelity for which you are so remarkably distinguished; that you may serve the County you

represent with Honour and Integrity, and continue to be the Joy and Darling of your Constituents, are the hearty Wishes of,

S I R,

Your most obliged,

most obedient, and

most humble Servant,

Kilcote, Leicestershire,

Jan. 7, 1738-9.

EDWARD BUTTON.



P R E F A C E.



S it fares with the Faculties of the Body, so it does, in a great Measure, with those of the Mind. Every reigning Beauty is apt to allure the wanton Eye, and obliterate the Ideas of all those Objects which have formerly caused our Admiration. Every new and fashionable Kickshaw is wont to draw away the depraved Appetite from the Relish of those more substantial Dishes, which,
A 5 perhaps,

P R E F A C E.

perhaps, in their own Simplicity, are of more Use and greater Nourishment. Thus also, every new and entertaining Writer is observed to engage our Attention for the present, and is often found to captivate the Memory, nay, to erase those Impressions which were before too lightly made upon our Minds, by the Perusal of superior Authors.

To remedy this great, and almost epidemical Evil, the ensuing Treatise was originally intended; and that chiefly as a Common-Place-Book, for my own private Use, in order to fructify the Thought, and reinforce the Memory, in case of unsuspected Attacks from future Conversation: But when I seriously considered the great Benefit arising to myself from this Method of assisting the Memory, I set about enlarging my little Store-House of History, endeavoured to improve it by regular Eras, and to illustrate it with the most remarkable Occurrences intervening.

By these subsequent Additions, it swelled at length to the Size in which I now offer it to the Public.

The various Uses, and great Advantages which arise from a competent Knowledge of ancient History, are so notorious to Persons of most

P R E F A C E.

xi

most Conditions, that it seems needless to offer either Argument to enforce, or Art to demonstrate them. However, as something is due to Custom, it may, perhaps, be expected, that I mention here what useful Knowledge is comprehended in this Epitomé; which may be looked upon only as a larger Index to those voluminous Authors who have been consulted on the Occasion.

I. From the Perusal of this Treatise, any Person who can read the Bible, may be sufficiently convinced of the Truth and sacred Authority of the first inspired Writers; and also of the Prophecies therein recorded, particularly those which relate to the coming of the Blessed MESSIAH.

II. By this, People of all Persuasions, as well Jews as Christians, may gain a tolerable Insight into the History of the Old Testament, and be able to understand what is read to them in their several Assemblies for Divine Worship; and also to explain it to their Families at Home, of which I may venture to affirm, half Mankind are ignorant.

III. By this the young Tyro may be enabled to form right Notions of the Mythic-Theology of the ancient Heathens; and to find out the

P R E F A C E.

true Meaning, which is couched under many of those obscure Fables, and poetical Fictions which abound in the Classics.

IV. *Here any unprejudiced Reader may, without much Trouble, be fully satisfied, that all the Edifices which were erected by the Heathens to their false Gods, were only faint Imitations of the Tabernacle of Moses, and of the Temple of Solomon; and that their Altars, Sacrifices, Oracles, Vestal-Fire, and all other their Religious Rites and Ceremonies whatsoever, were originally taken from the primitive Manner of worshipping the TRUE GOD in those two Places.*

V. *I need not inform those learned Gentlemen, who have the Care of others committed to their Charge, how useful such a Piece may prove to such of their Pupils as are designed for Universities, and whose ripening Genius gives early Promise of their making some Figure in the World.*

VI. *In short, this System may be of Use to all, not only as a Guide to give them Light, through the dark Mazes of Antiquity; but as a Manual which contains the very first Institutions of all religious and civil Polity.*

P R E F A C E.

xiii

As to the Chronology, I have endeavour'd to make it correct; and herein fix'd upon the Æra of the World as the more easy Computation for common Capacities; for whose farther Information it may not be improper, in this Place, to explain what is mean't by Chronology, and by most of those different Æras and Epochas, which were made Use of in the World, thro' the Series of this History.

Chronology is the Doctrine of Times, Æras and Epochas. An Æra or Epocha, is a fixed Point in History, ground'd upon some signal Event, and made Use of in Chronology, to begin to compute Years: Of these there are three Sorts, Sacred, Ecclesiastical, and Civil or Political. Sacred Epochas are those we take from the Bible, as the Creation, Deluge, Foundation of the Temple, &c. Ecclesiastical Epochas are taken from Authors who have written the History of the Church since Our Saviour's Birth. Civil or Political Æras, are those which regard the Empires and Monarchies of the World; as the taking of Troy by the Grecians; the building of Rome, &c. The Æra of the Seleucidæ, from whence the Macedonians began to reckon their Years, begins at the Reign of Seleucus Nicanor, one of Alexander's Captains. The Phillipic Æra, of the Egyptians, commenced from

from the Death of Alexander, &c. which see hereafter.

An Olympiad, which was the Epocha of the Grecians, contains the Space of four Years, which they reckoned from one Celebration of the Olympic Games to another. These Games were instituted by Iphitus, to the Honour of Hercules, and celebrated about July 19, every fifth Year, at a Town in Elis, in the Peloponnesus (now the Morea) called Olympia.

The Solar Cycle is a Revolution of twenty-eight Years, after which the Letters which mark the Sundays, and other Holydays, return to their original Order. The Sun has nothing to do with this Revolution; but it is called Solar, because the Sunday, whose Letter we are in Search of, is by Astronomers called Dies Solis, i. e. The Day of the Sun. The Lunar Cycle, or Golden Number, is a Space of nineteen Years, invented by Meton an Athenian, who observed at the End of that Time the Moon began the same Lunations over again. Indiction, formerly in Use among the Romans, contains a Revolution of fifteen Years. It is still used in Apostolical Bulls and Rescripts.

The Julian Period is a Space of Time containing 7980 Years, invented by Julius Scaliger, and

P R E F A C E.

xv

and composed of the Solar Cycle, of twenty-eight Years; the Lunar Cycle of nineteen; and the Indiction of fifteen Years: These Numbers multiplied together, make 7980; but with the Use of this I shall not puzzle the Reader.

An Age, or Century, is the Space of a hundred Years; and a Lustrum is the Space of five Years, seldom used but in Poetry. An Anachronism is an Error or Mistake in the Computation of Time: Of this Virgil is guilty in making Dido and Æneas Cotemperaries, whereas they lived three hundred Years distant.

We have at present two Christian Æras: The Vulgar Æra, whose Author was Dionysius Exiguus, a learned Monk; he flourished about the Fifth Century, and, in Respect to our Saviour's Birth, thought fit that Christians should begin to reckon their Years from the Birth of the Messiah. His Design was approved of and followed: Hence it is we use this Form in public Business and Writings, viz. In the Year of our Lord, 1739. But it is certain, this Vulgar Æra is four Years short of the Birth of Christ, and that the second Christian Æra (which we have endeavoured to follow) is the true one, which begins four Years before the Vulgar; so that this present Year instead of

1739.

1739, should be 1743. Thus much for the Service of the young Reader.

It remains for me to make some Apology for one Freedom taken thro' the Course of this Treatise; that is, by sometimes proposing Questions to illustrate certain Facts, of which there is little or no previous Mention; and at other Times by inserting intervening Incidents, not immediately answering the Question proposed. As this was found a serviceable Method to shorten the Work, and done with a Design to include as much History as possible within such Interrogatories and Responses, I humbly hope it will be deemed excusable by all ingenuous Readers, as will also the Errors of the Press.

Kilncoat, Leicestershire,
Jan. 7, 1738-9.

EDW. BUTTON.

THE



CONTENTS.

BOOK I.

CHAP. I.

Of the Antediluvian World; Situation; Number of Inhabitants; Their Longevity; Religion; Chronology; Crimes for which destroyed; Opinions of Heathen Writers concerning it, &c.

Page 1 to 10.

CHAP. II.

Of Noah and his Descendants; Building of Babel; Confusion of Languages; Dispersion of Mankind; Their first Settlements; First Kings of Babylon and Egypt; Walls of Babylon; Assyrian Empire founded; Abram travels into Egypt, &c.

P. 10 to 18.

CHAP. III.

Lives of Abram, Isaac, and Jacob; Tybas paid; Circumcision injoin'd; Syphis King of Egypt introduces Idolatry; Job and his Writings; Joseph sold into Egypt; That Government subverted; Children of Israel in Bondage, &c.

P. 18. to 32.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Kingdoms erected in Greece ; Their Religion first introduced by the Egyptians ; Table of Isis ; Birth of Moses ; His Advancements ; Writes the Book of Genesis ; Made Captain over the Children of Israel ; Their Exit out of Egypt, &c.

Page 32 to 40.

CHAP. V.

Journeys of the Israelites under the Conduct of Moses ; Mannâ, its Name and Nature ; History of Lelex, first King of Laconia ; Of Cadmus ; Danaus ; Ouranus ; Saturn ; Jupiter ; Golden Age ; Silver Age ; Brazen Age, &c.

P. 40 to 49.

CHAP. VI.

Sequel of the Journeys of the Israelites ; Tabernacle erected ; Balaam's Ass ; Death of Moses ; Canaan conquered ; Settlement of the Tribes ; Death of Joshua, &c.

P. 49 to 62.

BOOK II.

CHAP. I.

The Israelites governed by Judges ; Of Terens ; Progne ; Philomela ; Melampus ; Bellerophon ; Pegasus ; Danae ; Pelops ; Hercules ; Medusa ; Atreus and Thyestes ; Sphinx ; Oedipus ; Icarus ; Dedalus ; Perseus ; Circe ; Syrens ; Jason ; Medea and Absyrtus ; Argonautic Expedition ; Golden Fleece, &c.

P. 63 to 74

CHAP. II.

C O N T E N T S. xix

C H A P. II.

Of Abimelech ; Lapithæ and Centaurs ; Priamus and Hecuba ; Paris and Helena ; Ægeus ; Theseus and Ariadne ; Medusa ; Laius and Jocasta ; Eteocles and Polynices ; Adrastus ; Ægialeus ; Jephtha ; Haddon ; Trojan War ; Sampson ; Eli ; Samuel ; Saul, &c.
Page 74 to 87.

C H A P. III.

Of the Dorians, Æolians, and Iones ; Greeks called Hellenes ; Hercules ; Homer and Hesiod ; David ; Joab ; Absalom ; Architophel ; Shimei ; Solomon ; Temple erected ; Rise of the East-India Trade ; City of Ephesus ; Rehoboam ; Division of Judah and Israel ; Abilha ; Baasha ; Benhadad ; Jehoshaphat, &c.
P. 87 to 107.

C H A P. IV.

Of Jehoram ; Prophecy of Isaac fulfilled ; Ahaziah ; Jehu ; Jezebel ; Athalia ; Joas ; Kings of the Albanes, Corinth, Assyria, Egypt, Tyre, &c. Didō builds Carthage ; Uzzia ; Ahaz ; Rome founded by Romulus ; Sardanapalus ; Dissolution of the Assyrian Empire ; Arbaces ; Tiglath-Pileser, &c.
P. 106 to 121.

C H A P. V.

Of Senacherib ; Hezekiah ; Mardoc-Empadus ; Sepulchre of David ; Regibilus ; Efarhaddon ; Psammitichus ; Deioces ; Holophernes ; Phraortes ; Josiah ; Chiniladanus ; Nebopollassar ; Nebuchadnezzar ; Divination by Arrows ; Destruction of Jerusalem, &c.
P. 121 to 132

C H A P. VI.

City of Tyre demolished ; Temple of Belus ; Walls of Babylon ; Nebuchadnezzar's Palace ; Hanging Gardens ;

dens ; Artificial Lake and Canal ; Evilmerodach ; Jehoiachin ; Salathiel ; Astyages ; Cyaxares ; Neriglissar ; Belshazzar ; Cræsus ; Solon ; Cyrus takes Babylon ; Daniel preferred ; Cyrus's Decree in Favour of the Jews, &c. P. 132 to 146.

C H A P. VII.

The Jews return from Captivity ; Build the second Temple ; Description of it ; Cambyles kills Apis the God of the Egyptians ; Smerdis the Magian usurps the Crown ; Tenets of the Magians and Sogians ; Samaritans obstruct the Work of the Temple ; Darius ratifies the Decree of Cyrus ; The Jewish State thoroughly restored, &c. P. 146 to 157.

C H A P. VIII.

Of Zerubbabel and Ananias's Embassy to Darius ; Aristagoras's Rebellion ; War between the Persians and Grecians ; Histæus ; Miltiades ; Artaphernes ; Cimón ; Xerxes ; Thucydides ; Herodotus ; Leonidas ; Themistocles beats Xerxes at Sea ; Drives him from Athens ; Battles of Plataea and Mycale, &c. P. 157 to 172.

C H A P. IX.

Of Artaxerxes ; Vashti ; Esther ; Archæmenides ; Charitimus ; Haman ; Mordecai ; Ezra ; Megabyzus ; Inarus ; Nehemiah ; Meto ; Golden Number ; Peloponnesian War ; Pericles ; Hippocrates ; Plague of Athens ; Thucydides ; Socrates ; Plato ; Punishment of Boating, and throwing into Ashes ; Mount Gerizim ; Samaritans, &c. P. 172 to 184.

C H A P. X.

Battle of the Goats River ; Athenian State subverted ; Battle of Cunaxa ; Famous Retreat of the Greeks under the Conduct of Xenophon ; Agesilaus ; Conon ; Battle of Cnidus ; Battle of Leuctra ; Epaminondas ;

C O N T E N T S. xxi

das ; Battle of Mantinea ; Mausolus ; Ochus ; Philip of Macedon ; Aristotle ; Battle of Charonea ; Alexander the Great ; Battle of Granicus ; Darius ; Battle of Issus ; Tyre taken by Alexander ; his Behaviour to Jaddua ; Builds Alexandria ; Invention of Paper, &c.
Page 184 to 202.

C H A P. XI.

Battle of Arbela ; Persepolis burn'd at the Instigation of Lais ; Darius murder'd ; Alexander's Behaviour on Sight of his Corpse ; Sisygambis ; Roxana ; Clitus and Calisthenes slain ; Porus ; Statira ; Hephestion ; Eumenes ; Perdiccas ; Antipater ; Lyfimachus ; Cassander ; Philippæan Era ; Era of the Seleucidæ ; Battle of Ipsus ; Grove of Daphne, &c. P. 202 to 217.

C H A P. XII.

Demetrius driven out of Macedonia ; Ptolemy Serranus ; Serapis, a new God of the Egyptians ; Antiochus Soter ; Zipates ; Nicomedes ; Pyrrhus ; Gauls enter Asia, Hungary, Thrace, and Macedonia ; Origin of the Galatians ; Of the Septuagint Version of the Scriptures, &c. P. 217 to 227.

C H A P. XIII.

Rise of Roman Grandeur ; King of Egypt sends Ambassadors to Rome ; Romans return the Compliment ; Antigonus Gonatas takes Athens ; Kingdom of Pergamus erected ; Of the Sadduces ; Berosus ; Apame ; Coma Berenices ; Ptolemy Philadelphus ; His magnificent Buildings, Library, immense Riches ; Antiochus Hierax ; Parthian Empire founded ; Colossus of Rhodes ; Ptolemy Euergetes ; Ptolemy Philopater ;

lopater; *Battle of Raphia*; *Battle of Hannibal at the Lake of Thrasimenus, &c.* Page 217 to 254.

B O O K III.

C H A P. I.

Of Heliodorus's Usurpation; *Antiochus Epiphanes*; *His ridiculous Conduct*; *Takes Jerusalem*; *Plunders and profanes the Temple*; *Designs the utter Extirpation of the Jews*; *Popilius's peremptory Passage to him*; *Ptolemy Macron*; *Ptolemy Philometor*; *Ptolemy Evergetes II.* *Perseus driven out of Macedonia by the Romans*; *Samaritans turn Apostates*; *Mattathias's Resolution*; *Judas Maccabæus, &c.* P. 254 to 268.

C H A P. II.

Of the Victories of Judas Maccabæus; *War in Egypt between Ptolemy Physcon and Ptolemy Philometor*; *Romans interpose*; *Demetrius deposes Antiochus in Syria*; *Of Holophernes*; *Heraclides*; *Balas the Emperor*; *Jonathan*; *Hypparchus*; *Second and third Punic War*; *Carthage destroy'd by Scipio*; *Corinth by Mummius*; *Parthian Empire established, &c.* P. 268 to 293.

C H A P. III.

C O N T E N T S. xxiii

C H A P. III.

*the War of Numantium; Pergamenian Kingdom
destroy'd; Wars in Syria; Hyrcanus reduces Samaria;
Demolishes the Temple on Mount Gerizim; Opimian
Wine; Sedit of the Jews; Cymbrian War; Origin
of the Angli; Mithridatic War; Lucullus's Victories;
Balm of Gilead; Pompey takes Jerusalem; Profanes
the Temple, &c.*

Page 293 to 324.

C H A P. IV.

*Of Pompey, Crassus, and Julius Cæsar; Diodorus
Siculus; Clodius; Cicero banished Rome; Catõ;
Aristobulus and Antigonus Prisoners at Rome;
Crassus plunders the Temple at Jerusalem: Civil War
between Cæsar and Pompey; Battle of Pharfalia;
Pompey flees into Egypt, there slain; Cæsar in
Love with Cleopatra; enters into a dangerous War
for her Sake; His Decree in Favour of the Jews; His
Motto; Reforms the Roman Calendar; Murder'd in
the Senate; The Julian Year, Leap Year; Gregorian
Year; New and Old Style, &c.*

P. 324 to 344.

C H A P. V.

*Cæsar's Murderers driven from Rome; Octavianus,
Antony, and Lepidus, erect a Triumvirate, and di-
vide the Roman Empire between them; Cicero pro-
scribed; Antipater poisoned; Battle of Philippi; Bru-
tus and Cassius kill themselves; Antony falls in Love
with Cleopatra; Marries Octavia; Ventidius's Vic-
tories; Envy'd by Antony; Rewarded at Rome; So-
sius; Octavianus jealous of Antony; Accuses him in
the Senate; Deposeth Lepidus; Quarrels with An-
tony; Battle of Actium; Antony kills himself; Cleo-
patra's Treachery and Death; Herod King of Ju-
dæa, &c.*

Page 344 to 365.

C H A P. VI.

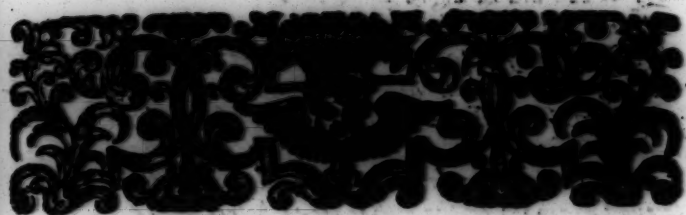
CHAP. VI.

Octavianus takes the Name of Augustus; Absolute and arbitrary Power given to him; Petronius's Victory over Candace Queen of Ethiopia; Marcellus's Death; Herod builds Sebaste, Caesarea, &c. Eastern Provinces committed to the Charge of Agrippa; Ambassadors from Porus King of India; Augustus brings the Prisoners and Ensigns from Parthia; Statue of Memnon; Herod builds the Temple at Jerusalem; Augustus succeeds Lepidus as High-Priest of Rome; Sibyls; Horace and Mecenas die; Angel Gabriel appears to Zacharias; Birth of CHRIST; Herod's Death, &c.

Page 365 to 374.



RUDI-



RUDIMENTS OF ANCIENT HISTORY, BOTH SACRED *and* PROPHANE.

BOOK I. CHAP. I.

Of the Antediluvian World; Situation; Number of Inhabitants; their Longevity; Religion; Chronology; Crimes for which destroyed, &c.



WHAT is ancient History?

Ans

A. A certain or traditional Account *Maa.* of former Ages, and of the most remarkable Occurrences which happen'd in them.

Q. Who was the first Writer of History?

A. Moses.

B

Q. When

Ann. Q. When did he begin to write?

Mun. A. Above 2400 Years after the Creation.

Q. Why do you take your Account of the Creation from a History wrote so long after it?

A. Because we have nothing extant so ancient as Moses's Writings.

Q. Was his Knowledge traditional, and did he on'y collect the Dogmata of those that lived before him?

A. Tho' he was learned in all the Learning of the Egyptians, we find no Principles there cou'd lead him into this Secret. Adam cou'd not discover the Manner of his Creation, or describe the Formation of the World before he had any Being.

Q. How then was this Stock of Knowledge communicated to Moses?

A. By immediate Inspiration; for we cannot see how he cou'd represent the early Ages of the World any other Way, than by a Converse with the Deity.

Q. Whence are we descended according to the Mosaic System?

A. From two Persons called Adam and Eve.

Q. Where did they live?

A. In the Eastern Parts of the World.

Q. Who were their Children?

A. Cain and Abel; who grew to be Men, but were of a different Genius and Disposition, one an Husbandman, the other a Shepherd.

Q. Did they differ in nothing but their Professions?

A. Yes, in Duty to their Maker also, Abel was more virtuous than his Brother, and, when they brought their Offerings, his Sacrifice was accepted beyond Cain's.

Q. Did this produce any Quarrel between them?

A. Hereupon Cain took a private Opportunity to kill him; and this was the first Act of Violence committed in the World.

Q. What was the Reason that Abel's Offering was accepted before Cain's?

A. This was owing to his stronger Faith and greater Piety, not to any Partiality in God, for he had before

vin-

ANCIENT HISTORY.

3

vindicated himself, and excused *Abel*, from having either *Ans* of them given the least Reason for this unjust Proceed-*Mun.* ing.

Q. Where do you find that ?

A. Gen. iv. 7. If thou doest well (said God to him) thou shalt be accepted; if thou doest not well, Sin lieth at the Door ?

Q. What Punishment did God inflict upon Cain for this Wickedness ?

A. The Sentence passed upon him was, That he shou'd be unprosperous in his Tillage—That he shou'd have no longer happy Converse with the Deity, which these first Ages of the World were blessed with,— and that he shou'd be a Fugitive and a Vagabond, during Life.

Q. Did not Cain repent of this great Sin ?

A. He had so true a Sense of his Crime, as to imagine, That every one that happen'd on him would kill him; and God was pleas'd hereon in some Measure to pardon his Transgression.

Q. In what Manner ?

A. By giving him an Assurance, (or Sign or Token) that no one should kill him. Thus the Words, (God set a Mark upon Cain) which have given Birth to so many ridiculous Conjectures, ought to be interpreted.

Q. What became of Cain after he had receiv'd his Sentence ?

A. He removed with his Wife and Family from the Place where he had before lived, into the Land of Nod ?

Q. Did he settle there ?

*A. Yes, and as his Family encreased, he took Care to have their Dwellings built near one another, and made a little City, which he call'd *Enoch*, from a Son he had of that Name.*

Q. What Children had Adam besides these two ?

A. We are not certain what others he had, but are told, Gen. v. 4. that he had several, both Sons and Daughters, probably a Number of each, suitable to the

RUDIMENTS of

Ann Years of his Life, and to the Increase necessary to people
Mun. the World, tho' *Moses* gives us only the Genealogy from
Seth to *Noah*.

130 Q. *What have you remarkable of the Sons of Seth?*

A. They led a Pastoral Life, dedicated themselves to the Service of God, and were distinguished by the Name of the Sons of God.

Q. *Is there any Thing peculiarly mentioned of the Patriarch Enoch?*

A. He was a Person of a superior Character, and, by the Integrity of his Life, obtained a Passage into a better
 1056 World, without dying.

Q. *What Account have you of Noah before the Flood?*

A. *Noah* was a just and upright Man, and found Favour with God: But in his Days there was a general Impiety.

Q. *What was the Consequence of this Wickedness?*

A. God determined hereon, to destroy the Inhabitants of the World by a Flood, which he discovered to *Noah* 120 Years before-hand, and instructed him how to save himself and Family, and a few Creatures of every Sort.

Q. *By what Means was Noah to do this?*

A. By building an Ark according to God's Direction.

Q. *Of what Signess was this Ark made?*

A. It was 600 Foot long, 100 Foot wide, and 60 Foot deep, contrived into three Decks or Stories.

Q. *When did Noah, his Family, &c. enter into it?*

A. According to the Hebrew Computation, in the 1656th Year, about the Beginning of our November, and in the 600th Year of his Life.

Q. *How was Chronology fixed all the Time of the Antediluvian World?*

A. In all Probability, the Civil and Solar Year were then the same, and consisted of 360 Days, as their exact Measure.

Q. *How came this Measure to be altered afterwards?*

A. The Heavens undergoing some Change at the Flood, the Motion of the Sun was altered, and its annual

nual Revolution became, as it now is, five Days and almost six Hours, longer than it was before. *Anna Mun.*

Q. What was done when Noah had entered into the Ark?

A. God caused a Flood of Water over all the World, 30 Foot higher than the highest Mountain, and thereby destroyed all the Inhabitants. This is all the History that Moses has given us of the Antediluvian World.

Q. Have you no short Hints of those Times in the Remains of some Heathen Writers?

A. Yes, and if we make Allowance for the Fables, which the Heathen Theology had introduced into all Parts of their early History, the Substance of what they offer agrees very remarkably with the Accounts of Moses.

Q. Who were the chiefst of these Writers?

A. Berosus, who wrote the History of the Chaldeans; Sanchoniatho, that of the Phœnicians; and Manetho, who collected the Antiquities of Egypt.

Q. As it will be of some Service, and also give Satisfaction to the young Reader, give an Account of these in their Order?

A. Berosus says, there were 10 Kings of Chaldaea before the Flood, the first of which was Alorus, and the last Xisuthrus, who was warned in a Dream, that Mankind was to be destroyed by a Flood, and that he should build a Sort of a Ship, and go into it with his Friends and Kindred, and take also into his Vessel, Fowls, four-footed Beasts, Provisions, &c.

Q. Did Xisuthrus act according to this Admonition?

A. Yes, and the Flood came, and when it began to abate, he let out Birds at three different Times; the first soon returned, the second came again also with their Legs daubed with Mud, but the last never came to the Ship any more.

Q. What do you infer from this Account of Berosus?

A. That this Xisuthrus evidently appears to be Noah: For he supposes from Alorus to Xisuthrus ten Generations,

Anno tions, and so many Moses computes from Adam to Mun. Noab.

Q. To what Effect is the History of Sanchoniatho?

A. He calls the first Mortals Protogonus and Aeon, which were undoubtedly Adam and Eve, from Protogonus to Misor the Father of Taautus, (who was evidently the Mixraim of Moses) Sanchoniatho computes eleven Generations, and from Adam to Mixraim, Moses makes twelve.

Q. How comes Sanchoniatho to fall short of Moses only one Generation?

A. This happened by his not having recorded the Flood?

Q. Neither of these Historians have offered any Thing that can seem to be before Moses's Time of the Creation, do you meet with any greater Difficulties in Manetho?

A. He pretends to produce Antiquities of Egypt that reach higher than the Creation by thousands of Years?

Q. What does he offer to support this Opinion?

A. It was a Point of his Religion, that their Gods had reigned on Earth, and he produces Chronological Tables of them, which reach thus high.

Q. Who is the first in his List, what his Name, and how long did he reign?

A. To the first of the Egyptian Gods, called Vulcan, he assigns no Time, nor limits his Reign; but relates, that there succeeded 30 Dynasties, or supreme Powers, consisting of 113 Generations, which took up the Space of 36,525 Years. When this Period was ran, there reigned eight Demi-gods in the Space of 217 Years. After them a Race of Heroes, in Number 15, and their Reigns took up 443 Years; then began their Kings, the first of whom was Menes, or the Mixraim of Moses.

Q. Who were the next 30 Gods of Egypt, and what are their Reigns?

A. Their most ancient Gods were the Luminaries of Heaven, as the Sun, Moon, and Stars; and it is very probable, they called the Period in which any of these Deities

ANCIENT HISTORY.

7

Deities finished its Course, the Time of its Reign, and *Ann* a whole entire *mundane* Revolution, a complete Reign *Mun* of all the Gods : For it is remarkable, that such a Revolution, according to their Computations, contained exactly 36,525 Years.

Q. Who were the Demi-gods and Heroes that preceded Menes ; and how did their Reigns take up 217 and 443 Years ?

A. Manetho rightly conjectures they were *Antediluvians*, and very likely *Egypt* was peopled no more than 660 Years before the Flood.

Q. But how could these 23 Persons succeed one another in so few Years, if their Lives were of the same Length with the other Branches of Adam's Family ?

A. This Difficulty will be made easy, if we suppose the 8 Demi-gods to be Cotemporaries ; and the 15 Heroes, who lived after them, cotemporary with one another also.

Q. Why should eight of them be called Demi-gods, and the rest but Heroes ?

A. The higher Appellation given to the first eight, looks as if they were so many Children of *Adam*, and Heads of Families which came thither, and had a Title superior to what their Descendants attained to.

Q. If this be a true Account of the Egyptian Dynasties, give me the Substance of what they offer in it ?

A. That the supreme God is Eternal. 2. That the Sun, Moon, and Stars, ran their Courses thousands of Years before Man was created. 3. And that *Egypt* was peopled 660 Years before the Flood.

Q. Have not the Chinese also been supposed to have Records that reach higher than the History of Moses ?

A. Yes, but we find, by the best Account of their Antiquities, that this is false.

Q. What Reason have you to think so ?

A. Because they pretend to no History or Memoirs that reach higher than the Times of *Fohi* their first King, and, by their own Accounts, the Age of *Fohi* coincides with that of *Noah* ; and we have many Reasons to conclude.

Anno clude Moser's Noah, and the Chinese Fohi, were the same Person.

Q. What was the Wickedness for which God destroyed the first World?

A. Some Writers have imagined it to be an Excess of Idolatry; but there is one Particular taken notice of by Moses; The Earth (says he) was filled with Violence.

Q. What do you gather from hence?

A. This Expression, and the severe Law made against Murder soon after the Flood, made it probable, that the Men of the first World, were very guilty of usurping upon the Lives of one another.

Q. How long did Men usually live in this World?

A. The Length of the Lives of Mankind then was very remarkable. According to Moses, Adam lived 930 Years, Seth 912, Jared 962, and Methuselah 969.

Q. Have not some Persons thought it incredible, that the human Frame could ever endure to so great a Period?

A. Yes, and for that Reason they suppose the Years here mentioned to be Lunar, consisting each of 30 Days.

Q. What have you to offer against this Notion?

A. At this Rate the whole Time of the first World would be less than 130 Years, and Methuselah himself would have been little more than 80 Years old.

Q. Of what Sort then were the Years that Moses computed these Mens Lives by?

A. They were Solar Years, of 360 Days each.

Q. What Reasons are given for the Longevity of these People?

A. Some have attributed it to the Simplicity of their Diet, and the Sobriety of their living; others to the Strength of their Stamina; but according to the best and most philosophical Notions, it was chiefly owing to the Situation of the World they lived in.

Q. How do you suppose the Antediluvian World was placed?

A. Under a constant Serenity and Equality of the Heavens,

ANCIENT HISTORY.

9

Heavens, and so situate, with regard to the *Sun*, as to *Abino* have a perpetual *Equinox*, where there was no consider- *Mun.* able Variety of the Seasons: The Air exactly suited to their Frame and Constitution, not offering them any Violence without, or raising any Fermentation within.

Q. What was the Religion of the Antediluvians?

A. It is believed that God himself taught those Persons, whom he was pleased to converse with, what *Sacrifices* he would have offered, what religious *Ceremonies* he would have them use, and how they should order themselves in his Worship. For the Method of worshipping God by *Sacrifices*, does in no wise appear to be invented by the Wit of Man, but to have been originally from Divine Appointment.

Q. What was the Number of Persons in this first World?

A. If we make the greatest Allowance possible, as to what Time of Life they might have their first Children, and suppose they had no Children till they were 100, and none after 500, the Increase must have been prodigious.

Q. Have any Authors formed Calculations of it?

A. Yes, and they suppose, upon a moderate Computation, that there were in the old World at least two Millions of Millions of Souls, which they think is a Number far exceeding that of the Inhabitants of the present Earth.

Q. What Chronology have you of the Transactions of this first World?

A. Several of them are not reduced to any fixed Time.

Q. Which are they?

A. We are not told when *Cain* and *Abel* were born, in what Year *Abel* was kill'd, or when *Cain* left his Parents, when the City of *Enoch* was built, or when the Descendants of *Cain's* Family were born, &c.

C H A P. II.

Of Noah and his Descendants ; The Building of Babel ; Confusion of Languages ; Dispersion of Mankind ; Their first Settlements ; First Kings of Babylon and Egypt ; The Assyrian Empire founded ; Walls of Babylon built ; Abram travels into Egypt, &c.

Anno **A** *T what Time and Place did Noah come out of the*
Mun. *Ark ?*

1657 *A.* About the Tenth of November the Earth was sufficiently drain'd ; and Noah came ashore near Sagar Scythia, on the Hills beyond Bactria, North to India.

Q. What did he do when he first took Possession of the World again ?

A. He raised an Altar, and offered Sacrifices.

Q. Was God pleased to accept his Piety ?

A. Yes, and promised a Blessing to him and his Posterity, granted them the Creatures of the World for Food, and gave them some *Laws*, to be observed for the Future.

Q. Were not the Creatures used for Food before the Flood ?

A. No, Men lived upon the Fruits of Trees, and the Product of the Ground only. Under this Restraint of Diet, their Lives must have been very laborious, and the Sentence passed upon Adam, Gen. i. 29. literally fulfilled.

Q. Were the living Creatures in Use for Sacrifices before this Time ?

A. Several Considerations strongly intimate they were, before Mankind had leave to eat Flesh.

Q. Where did Noah and his Family settle ?

A. Near

A. Near Mount *Ararat*, where he first came on shore: *Ann*
But when his Descendants were multiplied to Hundreds, *Man*.
Part of them travelled from the *East* to the *Plain of*
Shinaar, about 1200 Miles distant.

Q. What did they aim at here?

A. When they had determin'd to settle, they set all 1736,
Hands to work to build a Tower, which should be the
Wonder of the World, and preserve their Memory to the
End of it.

Q. How did they succeed in this Attempt?

A. Their *Ambition* proved a Monument of their
Folly, for after twenty Years had been spent in building
of it, God confounded their Language, and obliged them
to leave off, and separate from one another. Here *Nim* 1757
rod began his Reign.

Q. In what Manner did they separate?

A. They divided themselves under the Conduct of
leading Men amongst them, and went to seek other
Habitations.

Q. What particular Countries were planted by these
Men?

A. *Noah* had three Sons, *Shem*, *Ham*, and *Japhet*.
Japhet, the eldest of them, was not at the Confusion of:
Babel, but lived and died with his Father.

Q. Who were the Descendants of *Japhet*?

A. There were fourteen of them Heads of Nations,
Gomer, *Tubal*, *Togarmath*, *Magog*, and *Mesech*, settled in
the north Parts of *Syria*. *Ashanex* planted himself in
Armenia; *Tarsish* in *Cilicia*; *Kittim* was Father of the
Macedonians; and *Elisba* is thought to have planted some
of the *Cyclades* in the *Aegean Sea*.

Q. In what Parts did the other five fix?

A. *Ripbath* settled near the Borders of *Paphlagonia*;
Javan is thought to have planted *Greece*; *Madai* was
the Father of the *Medes*; *Tiras* of the *Thracians*; and
Dodanin, whose Name is also wrote *Rhodanin*, is con-
jectured to have planted *Rhodes*.

Q. How many Children had *Shem*, the second Son of
Noah?

RUDIMENTS of

Anno A. Five : *Elam*, the eldest, led his Associates into *Mun. Persia* ; *Assur* lived under *Nimrod*, in the Land of *Sennaar*, and *Arphaxad* lived at *Ur* of the *Chaldees*.

Q. What have you remarkable of the Descendants of *Arphaxad* ?

A. *Eber* his Grandson had two Sons, *Peleg*, who was born at the Time of the Confusion ; and *Jochtan*, who, as soon as he came of Years, led away Part of his Family to seek a new Habitation.

Q. Had he a large Family ?

A. He had thirteen Sons, who with their Families in Time spread from Mount *Misra* to Mount *Sebar*, two Mountains in the East. There were Nations in *India*, which took the Names of some of these Sons of *Jochtan*, viz. *Ophir*, whither *Solomon* sent for gold ; and *Havilah*, on the Bank of the River *Ganges*.

Q. Where did the Remainder of *Arphaxad's* Family dwell ?

A. They continued at *Ur* for three Generations ; but being expelled thence in the Days of *Terah*, the Father of *Abraham*, by the *Chaldeans*, they removed to *Haran* ?

Q. Where are the other two Sons of *Shem* supposed to have fixed themselves ?

A. *Lud* was the Father of the *Lydians* in *Lesser Asia* : And *Aram* settled in some Part of *Syria*, probably in *Armenia* the *Lesser*.

Q. What Issue had *Ham* the youngest Son of *Noah* ?

A. He had four Sons. *Cush*, the eldest, does not appear to have been the Leader of any Company, but his Children spread into several Parts of *Arabia*, up to *Midian* and *Egypt*.

Q. What were the Names of these Sons of *Cush* ?

A. *Seba*, *Sabta*, *Raamah*, and *Sabtecha* ; and the Sons of *Raamah* were *Sheba* and *Dedan*, the former of which lived in the Borders of *Midian*, and the latter in the Land of *Edom*.

Q. Had *Cush* no more Sons than those mentioned above ?

A. Yes,

A. Yes, two, (viz.) Nimrod, who reigned King at Babel; and Havilah, who lived near the River Pison, Mun. which ran out of the Euphrates into the Bay of Persia.

Q. What Account have you of Mizraim, the second Son of Ham, and of his Descendants?

A. Mizraim became King of Egypt, which Country, after his Death, was divided into three Kingdoms, by 1772 three of his Sons. Ananim was King of Tanis or Lower Egypt: Naphtubim had Memphis or Upper Egypt; and Pathrusim the Kingdom of Pathros or Thebes.

Q. Where did Menes or Mizraim, whom the Egyptians afterwards worshipped by the Name of Osiris, first seat himself?

A. At Zoan, in the Entrance of Egypt, and after some Time removed farther into the Country, and built the Cities of Thebes and Memphis.

Q. Whither did the rest of his Sons go?

A. Ludim and Lehabim peopled Lybia; Castubim fixed at Casbiotis near Palestine; and he had two Sons, one called Caphtorim, who succeeded him; the other Philistim, who planted the Country of the Philistines.

Q. Who were the third and fourth Sons of Ham?

A. The third was Phut, and settled somewhere in Arabia near Cus; the fourth Canaan, he had eleven Sons, who peopled the Land of Canaan; Sidon fixed in Phenicia; Arvad was placed near him; and Hetb lived towards Egypt. In what Parts the other eight settled in this Country, cannot be determined with any Certainty.

Q. Is this all that is offered by Writers about the first Settlement of Mankind, after their Dispersion from Babel?

A. Yes; and tho' this Account is countenanced by better Arguments than any unprejudiced Reader could hope to meet with for a Fact so ancient, and so imperfectly described by the earliest Writers, yet we will not affirm it true in every Particular.

Q. After this Dispersion, how did Nimrod lay the Foundation of his Kingdom at Babel?

A. He

Anno *A.* He was a mighty Hunter before the Lord, and used
Mun. to make up Companies to chase and kill wild Beasts,
 which infested those Parts; and by thus exercising his
 People in Bands, he led them on to a social Defence of
 one another; and by Degrees brought them to a Sense
 of Government.

Q. Did he wage any War to enlarge his Dominions?

A. He made no Attempt to extend his Government
 farther than the Necessities and Conveniencies of his
 People required. It is thought he reigned one hundred
 1905 forty eight Years.

Q. What remarkable Transactions happen'd in Nim-
 rod's Reign?

A. In his Time *Assur* conducted a Number of Men
 from *Babel*, and settled in *Affyria*, and laid the Founda-
 tions of *Nineveh*.

Q. Who succeeded Nimrod, as the second King of Ba-
 bylon?

A. *Belus*; but we are not told of what Family he
 was; very likely not much a-kin to his Predecessor;
 for as the first civil Polity was that of Kings, so the
 Persons promoted to that Dignity were chosen for their
 known Wisdom and Virtue.

Q. What have you memorable of *Belus*?

A. He was the Inventor of the *Chaldean* Astronomy.
 1965 He also spent much Time in cultivating his Country,
 and in improving his People.

Q. Who was the second King of *Nineveh*, or *Affy-
 ria*?

A. *Assur* dying at this Time, *Ninus* succeeded. He
 was a Prince of an ambitious Spirit, began the first Wars,
 and broke the Peace of the World.

Q. What Conquests did he make?

A. He subdued the *Babylonians*, over-ran many of the
 Infant States of *Asia*, and, by uniting Kingdom to King-
 dom, laid the Foundations of the *Affyrian* Empire.

Q. Did he meet with no considerable Resistance?

A. He made several fruitless Attempts upon the chief
 City of *Bactria*, which was bravely defended by *Zoro-
 astres*,

after, King thereof; but he at last conquer'd it by the *Anno*
Contrivance of a Woman call'd Semiramis. *Mun.*

Q. Who was Semiramis?

A. She was the Wife of Menon, a Captain in his Army.

Q. What Recompence did he make this Woman for her Bravery and Conduct?

A. He forced her Husband to consent to his marrying of her, and gave him his own Daughter in lieu.

Q. Had Ninus any Children by her?

A. One Son call'd Ninyas, a Minor when his Fa- 2017
ther died.

Q. Who was thought the fittest Person to govern this new but large Empire, on the Death of Ninus?

A. Semiramis, who in the Beginning of her Reign removed her Court from Nineveh to Babylon, and encompassed that City with a Wall, and built many stately Edifices.

Q. Did she wage any Wars?

A. She attempted to conquer India, and raised an Army for that Purpose; but having consumed her Forces, and impaired her Credit by this unsuccessful Expedition, she died soon after her Return to Babylon, having first resign'd the Empire to her Son Ninyas.

2059

Q. How did he govern the Assyrian Empire?

A. Sensible of his Mother's Errors, he engaged in no dangerous Enterprizes, but lived in Peace, and transmitted his Empire to his Successors, so well constituted, as to last in the Possession of a Series of Kings of no great Fame, above one thousand Years.

Q. Before you proceed any farther in the History of the Kings of Assyria, tell me what became of the Sons of Mizraim, or Menes?

A. After his Death, his seven Sons governed seven little Kingdoms, and are supposed to be the Cabari of the Ancients.

Q. What do you mean by the Word Cabari?

A. Varro

Anno A. Varro says, it signifies *Powerful Deities*, and as *Mun.* such, the idolatrous Nations worshipped their ancient Heroes.

Q. What have you particularly mention'd of the three Sons of Menes, who divided the Kingdom of Egypt between them?

A. There is little said of *Ananim*, the first King of Lower Egypt, but his Name and Term of Life; but *Naphtubim*, who was King of Memphis, called by the Egyptians, *Tosorthus*, and by the Latins, *Æsculapius*, is said to have invented Architecture, Physic, and Anatomy.

Q. What have you recorded of the third, who was named *Pathrusim*, King of Thebais?

A. His Egyptian Name was *Thyoth* and *Athothos*; his Greek Name *Hermes*; and the Latins called him *Mercurius*. He is said to have settled their Religion, to have taught the Use of Letters, and to have been sole Author of all the Egyptian Arts and Sciences
2002 whatsoever.

Q. Who succeeded him in Thebais?

A. The Country of Thebais is divided into two Parts by the River Nile. *Thyoth II.* had that Part towards Asia, and *Cencenes* the other.

Q. What was his Kingdom called?

A. This, from a City of that Name near *Abydes*, which was the Metropolis of it: *Aristarchus* and *Spanius* succeeded one another, as Kings of Lower Egypt, about this Time.

Q. Is there nothing memorable said of the succeeding Kings of Egypt, besides their Names, and the Dates of their Reigns?

A. Only of *Venuphes*, who came after *Cencenes* at This. He is supposed to have built some Pyramids in a Plain towards *Lybia*, in the Desert of *Cochane*.

Q. You have before observed, that the Descendants of *Arphaxad* were driven from *Ur* by the Chaldeans; what caused this Rupture?

A. The

A. The *Chaldeans* had been for some Time corrupted *Anno* in their Religion, which the Ancestors of *Terah* winked *Mun.* at; and, his endeavouring to work a Reformation in them, occasioned his first *Persecution* on Account of Religion.

Q. Which Way did *Terah* travel from *Ur*?

A. He took with him *Abram*, *Nabor*, his Sons, and *Lot* the Son of *Haran*, and as many as would adhere 2078 to them, and settled in *Mesopotamia*, at the farthest Distance from the *Babylonians*; and there built a little City, which they named *Nabor*, and called the Land the Land of *Haran*.

Q. How long did they tarry here?

A. After *Terah's* Death there arose a Difference about Religion amongst them also; and *Abram*, on Account of some Defection in his Family, from the true Worship of God, upon receiving an Admonition so to do, took *Sarai* his Wife, and *Lot* his Brother's Son, his Cattle and Substance, and went away from his Father's House into the Land of *Canaan*.

Q. Was not *Canaan* possess'd at this Time by the Descendants of *Canaan*, the Son of *Ham*?

A. Yes; but the Earth was not now so full of People, but that any Traveller might find vacant Places enough to fix himself and Family in.

Q. How far did *Abram* travel into these Parts?

A. He came first to *Moreh* in *Sichem*: Here God was pleased to repeat the Promise he had before made him, That he would give that Land to his Posterity. Hereupon he built an Altar, and worshipped, then removed to *Bethel* and *Hai*; and here he built another; and after he had staid in this Place a little while, there happened a *Famine* in *Canaan*, and he went into *Egypt*.

C H A P. III.

The Lives of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob ; Tythes paid ; Circumcision enjoined ; Syphis, King of Egypt, introduceth Idolatry ; Job, and his Writings ; Joseph sold into Egypt ; that Government subverted ; Children of Israel in Bondage.

Anno **H**OW did Abram behave himself on his first Entrance into Egypt ?
Mun.

A. When he came into that Part of the Country called the Land of *Tanis*, whither he was bound, he was in great Pain about his Wife *Sarai*.

Q. Whence did this his Uneasiness proceed ?

A. She was very handsome, and he feared the King, or some other great Person, might fall in Love with her, and kill him in order to marry her.

Q. What Precautions did he take in this Case ?

A. He desired her to call him *Brother* ; but her Beauty being much talked of, she was sent for to Court, and the King had an Intention to have taken her to Wife ; but finding out she was the Wife of *Abram*, he restored her to him, and suffered them to take all that belonged to them, and leave the Country.

Q. Whither did Abram journey from hence ?

A. He returned into *Canaan*, and made his first Stop between *Bethel* and *Hai*, and there offered Sacrifices.

Q. Was Lot with him at this Time ?

A. Yes ; but their Substance was now so much increased, that they thought it convenient for them to separate ; and *Lot* removed beyond *Jordan*, but *Abram* continued for some Time where he was, and afterwards removed to the Plain of *Mamre* in *Hebron* ; and became an Instrument of great Service to the King of the Country where he resided.

Q. In

*Q. In what Manner was Abram serviceable to this Anno
King? Mun.*

A. Chedorlaomer, King of Assyria, having heard that the Kings of Sodom, Gomorrah, &c. had revolted from him, came to reduce them; and having gained an entire Conquest over them, took Lot, his Family and Substance, who then dwelt at Sodom, Prisoners; whereupon Abram pursued them, and rescued his Brother Lot, and his Goods, and made himself Master of the Enemy's Spoil.

Q. How was he received on his Return from this Enterprize?

A. The King of Sodom, and Melchizedec King of Salem, who was the Priest of the most High God, went out to meet him with great Ceremony; and Abram gave the Tenth of the Spoil he had taken to Melchizedec, and the Remainder to the King of Sodom; ten Years after this, Abram received from God the Promise of a Son, which was accordingly fulfilled by the Birth of Ishmael, whom 2094 he had by Hagar the Egyptian, Sarai's Maid.

Q. Had Sarai no Children by Abram?

A. She never expecting any, had given her Maid to him for a Wife, to prevent his dying childless; but thirteen Years after Ishmael's Birth, he received another Promise from God, that he should have a Son born of Sarai, whose Descendants should be Heirs of the Blessing before promised to him.

Q. In what Manner did God reveal his Will to Abram?

A. The Person who appeared to him, called himself the Almighty God, and can be conceived no other than our Blessed Saviour.

Q. What Covenant did God enter into with Abram at this Appearance?

*A. He gave him fresh Assurances, that his Posterity should inherit the Land of Canaan; that Ishmael should be a happy Man, and that Princes should descend from him; but that the Covenant made at this Time should be established with Isaac, whom Sarai should bear. After this Promise, Abram's Name was changed into
Abraham,*

Anno Abraham, and Sarai's into Sarab, and Circumcision was
Mun. enjoined him and his Family.

Q. Where and how was the next divine Appearance made unto Abraham?

A. The same Person, accompanied with two Angels, came to him again soon after in the Plains of Mamre, as he sat at his Tent-Door in the Heat of the Day, and did eat with him.

Q. What was the Purport of this Message?

A. To confirm to him again the Promise of a Son by Sarab, and to warn him of the immediate Destruction of Sodom, and some other Cities in the Plain. After this, the two Angels made a Visit to Lot, and staid with him all Night, acquainting him on what Account they were sent, and ordering him and his Family to leave the Place.

Q. Whither did Lot and his Family go from Sodom?

A. He, with his two unmarried Daughters, removed to Zoar; but his Wife turning back, and his Sons-in-Law and their Wives, refusing to go along with him, perished in that City.

Q. How long did Lot live at Zoar?

A. But a little Time, for he was afraid this Place might be destroyed also: Therefore retired further, and lived in a Cave upon a Mountain.

Q. Were not his Daughters uneasy at their thus being deprived from all Converse with the World?

A. They thought they should die unmarried, and intrigued together to impose Wine upon their Father; and by this Means went to Bed to him, and were with Child by him, and had each of them a Son, viz. Moab and Ammon; From these two Sons of Lot, the Moabites and Ammonites were descended.

Q. Did Abraham still continue at Mamre?

A. About this Time he removed to Gerar, a City of the Philistines: Here he again pretended Sarab to be his Sister, on which Abimelech King of Philistia had a Design to marry her.

Q. How did Abraham prevent this?

A. It

A. It pleased God to inform *Abimelech* in a Dream, *Anno* that she belonged to *Abraham*, and he restored her to her *Mun.* Husband, and gave him Sheep, Oxen, and Servants, and 1000 Pieces of Silver, with Liberty to live where he would in his Kingdom. Soon after this, a Son was born of *Sarah*, and was circumcised on the eighth Day, 2108 and named *Isaac*.

Q. Did not *Abraham* rejoice exceedingly on this Occasion?

A. When the Child grew old enough to be wean'd, he made an extraordinary Feast; and *Ismael*, laughing to see such a Stir made about this Infant, incensed *Sarah* to such a Degree, that she would have him and his Mother turned out of Doors.

Q. Did *Abraham* his Father consent to this?

A. He first applied himself to God for Direction, who was pleased to assure him, he would take Care of *Ismael*; and order'd him to do what *Sarah* requested. Hereupon, after *Hagar* had receiv'd Water and Provisions from *Abraham*, she took her Son along with her, and they wandered in the Wilderness of *Beerseba*.

Q. How did *Abraham's* Affairs prosper at *Gerar*?

A. His encreasing Prosperity made *Abimelech* fear that he wou'd soon grow too powerful a Subject, and both of them entered into a Covenant, and swore never to injure each other.

Q. Was not *Isaac* now grown almost a Man?

A. Yes, and God made a very remarkable Tryal of his Father's Fidelity at this Time; for he required *Abraham* to offer this his Son *Isaac* for a Burnt-Offering.

Q. Did *Abraham* determine to act in this Case as God commanded him?

A. He went to the Place appointed, built an Altar, laid his Son upon the Wood, and took the Knife with full Resolution to kill him.

Q. How was he prevented?

A. By a Voice from Heaven, saying, Lay not thine Hand upon the Lad: Hereupon he look'd about, and saw a Lamb caught in a Thicket, which he offered instead of his Son.

Q. What

Anno Q. *What Name did Abraham give to this Place?*

Mun. A. Deeply affected with this surprizing Incident, he called the Place *Jehovah-jireth*, i. e. because it will be told hereafter, *that this Day the Lord was seen in the Mountain*; after this *Abraham* went to live at *Beer-sheba*.

Q. *How long did Sarah live?*

A. She lived to be 127 Years old, and died at *Kirjath-arba* in *Hebron*: Here *Abraham* bought a Field which had a Cave in it, and deposited therein her Remains.

Q. *When, and to whom was Isaac marry'd?*

A. His Father sent his Head-Servant with an Equipage and Presents suitable to his Circumstances into *Padan Aram* or *Mesopotamia*; and obtained for him *Rebekah*, the Daughter of *Bethuel*, the Son of *Nabor* his
2148 Brother; and he was this Year married to her.

Q. *Did Abraham take to himself another Wife now Sarah was dead, and Isaac married?*

A. Yes, after this he married *Keturah*, and had several Children by her, which he took Care in his Life-Time to send into the World; and gave them Gifts,
2183 &c. *Gen. xxv.* This is the Account *Moses* gives of the Life of *Abraham*.

Q. *What is the Substance of what other Writers say concerning Abraham?*

A. *Berosus*, indeed, does not call him by his Name, but describes a Person of his Character, to have lived ten Generations after the Flood; and so *Moses* makes *Abraham*. *Nicolaus Damascenus* mentions his Name, and says, he came from the Country of the *Chaldees*, and settled in *Canaan*, but on account of a Famine went into *Egypt*. *Eusebius* also very remarkably agrees with the History of *Moses*.

Q. *What Particulars have you in the Remains of Sanchoniathon, which seem totally with the Actions of Abraham?*

A. He gives us the History of one *Chronus*, who had but one Son by his Wife, and another by another Per-
son.

son. 2. That this *Chronus* circumcised himself and *Anno* his Family. 3. That he sacrificed his only Son, (so *Mun. Abraham* is reported to have done by the Heathen Historians) and that *Chronus's* Son, who was sacrificed, was named *Jebud*; and thus *Isaac* is called by *Moses*, Gen. xii. 2.

Q. *What do you gather from hence?*

A. That there is a great Probability, that *Moses's Abraham*, and *Sanchoniathon's Chronus*, were one and the same Person.

Q. *Where did Isaac live after his Father's Death?*

A. At the Place where his Father left him.

Q. *What Children had he by Rebekah?*

A. About 20 Years after Marriage he had by her 2163 two Sons, *Esau* and *Jacob*; the latter was very studious in religious Contemplations: But *Esau* had little Care about them, and for a small Refreshment sold his Birth-right to *Jacob*.

Q. *What was his Birth-right?*

A. His Right of being Priest or Sacrificer for his Brethren, for selling of which he is justly termed *Prophane*, as not having a due Esteem for a religious Employment, which belonged to him.

Q. *How long did Isaac live in the Land of Canaan?*

A. About this Time there was a Famine in the Land, 2208 and, as his Father *Abraham* had before done, he removed to *Gerar*, where *Esau* married two *Hittite* Women, much to the Affliction of his Parents.

Q. *Where was the Country of the Hittites?*

A. They bordered upon *Philistia* near to *Gerar*.

Q. *Who was King of Egypt at this Time?*

A. *Syphis*, a very famous Prince, who, according to *Sir John Marsham's* Tables, was the 10th King of *Memphis* after *Menes* or *Misraim*, and reigned 19 Years. 2227 He was the first of the *Egyptians*, who speculated upon religious Subjects.

Q. *As I apprehend, the Egyptians were not at this Time become Idolators, in what did the Religion of Noah and Abraham differ from theirs?*

A. In

Anno Mun. *A.* In some Points, which depended upon special Revelations made to Abraham. They knew nothing of the Promise made to him, nor were they apprized that they ought to worship him whom Abraham worshipped, namely, the Lord who appeared to him, and was to be his covenanted God, in Distinction from those who worshipped the true God of Heaven, without any Notion of this Lord at all.

Q. What did Syphis do in Opposition to the Religion of Abraham?

A. He wrote a Book on those Subjects, which Abraham had been famous for, and carried away his own People, and many of the neighbouring Nations into Idolatry.

Q. What was his System?

A. Instead of teaching to invoke God in the Name of the Lord, he set up the Worship of the Sun, Moon, and Stars, and taught the Egyptians to invoke in their Names, as Mediators: So that they had not one God and one Lord, but one God, and Lords many; and afterwards they had Gods many also.

Q. What other considerable Actions have you recorded of this King?

A. He is said to have built the largest Egyptian Pyramid, the Bottom of which covered 11 Acres of Ground, and which was 500 Foot high. In his Time also lived Job the Arabian, Author of the Book in the Old Testament, called by his Name.

Q. Have not some Writers imagined, that there never was any such a Person as Job, and that his History is only an instructive Fable?

A. This Opinion has no Colour of Argument to support it, the Prophet Ezekiel supposes Job to have been as real a Person as either Noab or Daniel; and St. James mentions him as a true Example of Patience.

Q. Is not the Book of Job supposed to have been originally wrote in Metre?

A. It seems most probable, that Job himself, who best knew his own Condition, and Conversation with his

his Friends, left behind him a written Account of it; *Imo* and that some later Hand put it into Measure: whether *Moses*, *Solomon*, or some other of the inspired Writers of the Old Testament, no one can determine.

Q. Proceed now with the History of Isaac and his Family?

A. About the hundredth Year of his Life, *Rebekah* observing him over fond of his eldest Son *Esau*, enquired of God concerning them, and receiv'd for Answer, that the younger, called *Jacob*, should be distinguish'd by the Blessings of Heaven. Hereupon she laid a Scheme for his obtaining the Blessing which his Father design'd to give to *Esau*, and the Artifice succeeded.

Q. Was not Esau provoked at his Brother for this Trick put upon him?

A. Yes, and as soon as his Father should be dead, he determin'd to kill him. But *Rebekah* hearing of his Intention, went to *Isaac*, and mentioned to him the Misfortune of *Esau's* Marriages, and the Comfort they might have of *Jacob*, if he wou'd take Care to dispose of himself better; and, by this Means, procured him to be sent out of the Way.

Q. Whither did his Father send him?

A. He order'd him to go immediately into *Mesopotamia*, and enquire for the Family of *Bethuel* his Mother's Father, and get one of *Laban's* Daughters for a Wife.

Q. What particular Incident did Jacob meet with on this Journey?

A. God appear'd to him in a Dream, promising, to bring him safe back again into *Canaan*, and to give that Land for an Inheritance to his Posterity. Hereon *Jacob* took the Stones, on which he had laid his Head, and erected a Pillar, and promised, on his Part, to worship him in that Place, and to dedicate to his Service the Tenth of all his Substance.

Q. What Reception did he meet with from his Relations at Haran?

C

A. He

Ans A. He was receiv'd with an hearty Welcome; and
Mun. Laban having two Daughters, *Leah* and *Rachel*, *Jacob*
 took a Liking to the younger, and propos'd to his Un-
 cle to stay with him seven Years, as a Servant to look
 after his Flocks, if he would give him her to Wife.

Q. Did Laban agree to this Proposal?

A. At the seven Years End he deceiv'd him, and
 married him to *Leah*, telling him, he cou'd not break
 thro' the Custom of the Country, to marry his younger
 2250 Daughter first; but if he wou'd serve him seven Years
 more, and desired it, he would give him *Rachel* also.

Q. Was Jacob satisfied herein?

A. He agreed to the Bargain, and when the Week
 was expired for the Celebration of *Leah's* Nuptials, he
 married *Rachel*, and continued with *Laban* seven Years
 longer.

Q. What Family had Jacob at the Expiration of this
 Term?

A. He had now twelve Children, and began to think
 it high Time to make some Provision for them; ac-
 cordingly, came to a fresh Bargain with his Father-in-
 Law, and in a few Years grew rich under him, at which
Laban being uneasy, *Jacob* resolv'd to leave him.

Q. In what Manner did he separate from him?

A. He, having contriv'd Matters with his Wives,
 and parted his Cattle from *Laban's*, retired in a private
 2263 Manner, and passing the *Euphrates*, made for Mount
Gilead; where, after seven Days Pursuit, *Laban* over-
 took him.

Q. What was done at this their meeting again?

A. *Laban* blamed him for going away so abruptly,
 and complain'd, that he had stolen his *Teraphim*, which
Rachel, fond of the Memory of her Ancestors, had
 brought with her unknown to *Jacob*: But *Laban*, on
 Search, not being able to find it, they grew Friends,
 made solemn Engagements to each other, and then
 parted.

Q. Where did Jacob remove from Mount Gilead?

A. Here

A. Here calling to Remembrance the Displeasure of *Anna* his Brother *Eſau*, he determined to endeavour to appeaſe *Mun*. him before he proceeded any further on his Journey to his Father *Iſaac*'s Habitation.

Q. Where did *Eſau* live at this Time?

A. While *Jacob* was at *Haran*, *Eſau* grew diſſatisfied with his own Marriages, and went to *Iſhmael*, and married one of his Daughters, and ſettled on Mount *Seir* in the Land of *Edom*, which, on Enquiry, *Jacob* finding out, ſent thither to him.

Q. What Answer had he to his Meſſage?

A. The Meſſengers brought him Word, that *Eſau* was coming after them, attended by four hundred Men.

Q. Was not *Jacob* much ſurprized to hear this?

A. He hereon began to contrive the moſt likely Expedients for his Safety, and ſending his Wives and Children, and all his Subſtance, over the Brook *Jabbok*, he ſtand alone behind them. Here an Angel, in the Shape of a Man, came and wreſtled with him, but did not overcome him, which was a Token that he ſhould eſcape the Danger which threaten'd him. Here alſo his Name was changed from *Jacob* to *Iſrael*.

Q. How did the two Brothers behave to each other at this Meeting?

A. *Jacob* bowed himſelf to the Ground ſeven Times, and *Eſau* ran to him and embraced him with great Tenderneſs, and wept over him with Tears of Joy, and invited him to *Seir*; but on *Jacob*'s evading this Offer, they parted. *Eſau* went home, and *Jacob* to *Succoth*, where he built a Houſe, and lived ſome Time; then removed to *Salem*, a City of the *Shechemites*: Here he bought ſome Ground of the Children of *Hamor*, and ſettled.

Q. What remarkable Actions were done by *Jacob* and his Family, while they reſided here?

A. His Daughter *Dinah* viſited the *Shechemites*, and *Shechem*, Prince of the Country, fell in Love with her, and lay with her. Her Father and Brothers reſenting

After this Injury, *Shechem* sent *Hamor* to *Jacob*, to desire his *Min.* Consent to marry her on her own Terms.

Q. What did Jacob say to this Proposal?

A. He answered Hamor deceitfully, and pretended, they could not marry with an uncircumcised People: On this, Hamor and Shechem persuaded all their People to be circumcised; and after three Days, when they were fore, Simeon and Levi, two of Jacob's Sons, came to the City boldly, and slew all the Males, and killed Hamor and Shechem, and took Dinah out of the House.

2279 *Q. Whither did Jacob remove on this Occasion?*

A. By the particular Direction of God he went to Bethel, and there made a Reformation in his Family; 2283 after this he journeyed to Ephrath, where his Wife Rachel died in Labour of Benjamin: Hence he removed to the Tower of Eder, and thence to Hebron, where his Father Isaac at this Time lived.

Q. What other Misfortunes, besides the Loss of his Wife, had Jacob met with since his Removal from Bethel?

A. His Son Reuben had the Baseness to lie with his Concubine Bilhah at Eder; and there was a Difference among his Children, which ended in the Loss of his beloved Son Joseph, who had drawn the Envy of his Brethren upon him, in telling them some Dreams, which seemed to imply his future Advancement.

Q. How did they execute their Revenge against Joseph?

A. Jacob sent him from Hebron to Dothan, where his Brothers were taking Care of the Flocks; and here they seized him, and sold him to some Ishmaelites, who 2288 were carrying Spices from Mount Gilead to Egypt; and they sold him again there to Potiphar, Captain of the King's Guard: Nine Years after this Isaac died.

Q. Did not the Death of Isaac bring Esau and Jacob to another Meeting?

A. Esau came to assist at his Father's Funeral, and to receive his Substance as Heir, and carried it with him into Seir; and his Sons or Grandsons were Dukes in the Land of Edom; for after some Time they got the Dominion

nion of these Countries from the Sons of *Scir*, destroy'd *Anno*
the *Horites*, and dwell in their *Stead*. *Mun.*

Q. How did Joseph behave himself under Potiphar?

A. He lived with great Comfort, and in a little Time was made his Steward, and had the Management of all his Affairs; but his Mistress falling in Love with him, ruined all; for on his refusing to comply with her Desires, she accused him to her Husband, of a Design to ravish her; and he was cast into Prison, where he was kept two Years.

Q. By what Means did he procure his Enlargement?

A. The King of *Egypt* had dreamed two remarkable Dreams, which made him very uneasy, because his *Magi* could not interpret them. In his Perplexity, two of his Servants, who had been Fellow-Prisoners with *Joseph*, remembering how punctually he had interpreted their Dreams, gave the King an Account of it, who ordered *Joseph* to be sent for.

Q. How did he interpret the King's Dreams?

A. He told him, there would be seven Years Plenty, and seven Years Famine, all over *Egypt*; hoped he would make a right Use of the Information, and send proper Officers to gather a fifth Part of each plenteous Year's Produce, and lay it up in Store, against the Time of Scarcity.

Q. Did the King come into this Scheme?

A. Yes, and thought no Person so fit as *Joseph* to manage the Office of gathering the Corn in the Years of Plenty; therefore immediately made him his Deputy over all the Land of *Egypt*.

Q. What particular Marks of Honour had Joseph at this Time conferred upon him?

A. He wore the King's Ring, rode in his second Chariot; and where-ever he passed, the Officers appointed, cried before him, *Bow the Knee*. *Pharaoh* called him, *Zaphnath-paaneah*, i. e. a Discover of Things bidden, and married him to the Priest of *On's* Daughter; and he had by her two Sons, *Manasseh* and *Ephraim*.

RUDIMENTS of

Anno. Q. How did Joseph manage his Stock of Corn in the Mun. Years of Famine?

A. When he opened his Stores, he acquired for the King immense Riches. The Egyptians bought his Corn with Money, till all the Money in that Land, and all that could be procured out of the Land of Canaan, was in Pharaoh's Treasury: After this he purchased their Cattle, and lastly their Lands for Corn; so that by the Management of Joseph, Pharaoh became sole Proprietor of all the Money, Cattle, and Lands, in Egypt.

A. What did the People do for Sustenance after they had parted with their all?

A. They came to Joseph, and offered themselves to be Servants to Pharaoh; but Joseph refused to accept of this Offer, so returned back their Possessions to them all, upon Condition of paying to the King yearly, the fifth Part of the Product of their Lands for ever.

Q. When Joseph bought in the Lands of Egypt for Pharaoh, did he buy the Priests Lands?

A. No; they eat the Portion which Pharaoh gave them, and therefore sold not their Lands.

Q. Did no Persons of the neighbouring Nations come to Egypt at this Time, to buy Corn?

A. Many; and amongst others, Joseph's Brethren came from the Land of Canaan.

Q. How did he behave himself towards them?

A. At first he used them severely, but afterwards discovering himself, he sent for his Father, and obtained for him and all his Family, a Residence in the Land of Goshen.

Q. How long did Jacob live after he came to Egypt?

A. Seventeen Years. When he died, Joseph ordered the Physicians of Egypt to embalm him, and made a solemn Mourning for him seventy Days; then obtained Leave of Pharaoh to go into Canaan, to bury him; and all Joseph's Brethren, and all the prime Officers of the Court of Egypt attended the Funeral.

Q. What have you peculiarly mentioned of this Procession?

A. That

A. It was so great, and the solemn Stop which they *Ann* made on the Borders of *Canaan*, was so very remarkable, that the *Canaanites* ever after called the Place, *Mun* where they stopped, *Abel-mizraim*, i. e. *The Mourning-place of the Egyptians*.

Q. Where was Jacob buried?

A. In the Cave of *Macpelah*, by *Abraham* and *Sarah*.

Q. Who was the King of Egypt that advanced Joseph?

A. *Thufinares* first preferred him, but he supported his Credit during three Reigns after, and was highly esteemed by the Princes, and universally beloved by the People.

Q. How long did he live after his Father?

A. Fifty-two Years, and saw his Grandchildren grown 2367 up, then called his Brethren together, and made them swear to him, that they would carry his Bones with them when they went out of Egypt.

Q. What Encouragement did the Children of Israel meet with after the Death of Joseph?

A. They were favoured and protected by the Kings of Egypt for his Sake, till the Government was overthrown by the *Pastors*, a numerous Army of unknown 2420 People, who over-ran all the Country, and subdued all before them, and made one of their Leaders, called *Salatis*, King thereof.

Q. Who are these People, that subverted the Government of Egypt thus suddenly, supposed to be?

A. It is most probable they were the *Horites*, whom the Children of *Esau* drove out of their Land.

Q. How did this first Pastor King *Salatis* use the Israelites?

A. He did all he could to keep them low, employing them as Slaves in all laborious Services; and, upon observing how exceedingly they increased, he ordered the Midwives to kill all the Male Children that should be born; and finding these Orders not executed by them, he charged his People to throw them into the River.

C H A P. IV.

Kingdoms erected in Greece ; their Religion introduced first by the Egyptians ; Table of Isis ; Birth of Moses ; his Advancement ; writes the Book of Genesis ; made Captain over the Children of Israel ; their Exit out of Egypt, &c.

Anno **W**ERE the Israelites only oppressed by this new King
Mun. of Egypt ?

A. The Violence of his Conquests had so terrified many of the ancient Inhabitants of the Land, and also Persons of the first Rank, that they left their native Country, in pursuit of happier Settlements.

Q. What particular Persons are mentioned to have left Egypt at this Time ?

A. Cecrops, Erichthonius, and the Father of Cadmus, Danaus ; and Belus followed soon after.

Q. Who was Belus ?

A. He was the Son of Neptune, who very probably was an Inventor of Shipping, and from thence came to be called the God of the Sea ; for the Egyptians call the Shores, which the Sea Waves beat upon, *Neptun*.

Q. Whither did Belus go ?

2494 *A.* He went to *Babylon*, and carried with him some of the Egyptian Priests, and obtained them Leave to settle, and cultivate their Studies there ; and they met with Encouragement and Protection.

Q. What Studies were these Egyptians engaged in ?

A. They employed themselves in *Astronomy*, and in making Observations on the Stars : And as the Egyptians had found out a Method to improve these Views, 300 Years from the Time of this Belus, by building their *Pyramids*, from the Tops of which they might take their Prospects with greater Advantage ; so Belus might, perhaps,

perhaps, have now taught the *Babylonians* the Use of *such* Structures; and projected that lofty *Tower*, which *Mun* conveyed his *Name* down to Posterity.

Q. *Whither did Cecrops go?*

A. He left *Egypt* sooner than *Belus*, and, after some 2453 Years travel, fixed at *Attica* in *Greece*; where he married *Ateneus's* Daughter, and, on his Death, succeeded him in his Kingdom.

Q. *How did Cecrops act in his new Government?*

A. Before his Time, this People lived promiscuously up and down the Country, unsettled, and took the Fruits of the Earth, and Cattle for their Use, where they could find them; but he gave them *Laws* for Society, and drew them together to live in settled Habitations; and built a Town or City, which he called *Cecropia*.

Q. *Who succeeded Cecrops in this Kingdom?*

A. *Cranaus*, a wealthy *Attican*, one of whose Daughters married *Amphictyon*, who expelled his Father-in-Law, and made himself King; and, in a little Time, *Erichthonius* deposed him, who very probably came into 2493 *Greece* with *Cecrops*.

Q. *What became of Cadmus?*

A. He came into *Boetia*, and built *Thebes*, accompanied by a Number of Followers, called the *Jephyræi*; they were Natives of *Phœnicia*, and coming into this Country, which was inhabited by the *Hyantes* and *Aones*, they expelled the former out of the Country, and came to Terms of Accommodation with the latter.

Q. *What was the Agreement between Cadmus and the Aones?*

A. He bought a Cow, and marked her, and told them, he had a special Command from the Gods to build a City where the Cow should lie down when weary; and ordered his Companions to drive her gently into the Country; and where she lay down he built *Cadme*, giving the *Aones* free Liberty to incorporate with his People.

Q. *Where did Danaus, another considerable Egyptian Fugitive, travel?*

C 5.

4. He

Anno A. He was descended from Grecian Ancestors, and
Mun. came to Argos, and obtained that Kingdom from Ge-
 landor the Son of Stbenelus.

Q. How were the Argives induced to accept him for
 their King, being a Stranger?

A. Gelanor was a Descendant of the Brother of Iafus,
 late King of Argos; and Danans of Iafus, by Io his
 Daughter; and when the Arguments for their Right had
 been heard on both Sides, the next Day was appointed
 to determine their Claims; and the People being as-
 sembled, an Accident put an End to the Dispute, and
 gained the Crown for Danans.

Q. What was the Accident which determined this
 Matter?

A. There happened a Fight between a Wolf and a
 Bull, where the People met; and the Wolf conquering
 2501 the Bull, the Combat was thought ominous; for they
 being less acquainted with the Wolf than the Bull, de-
 clared, by the Event of this accidental Combat, that the
 Stranger should rule over them.

Q. What remarkable Occurrences do you meet with in
 his Reign?

A. According to the Parian Chronicon, a Person
 named Mars, was tried at Athens for the Murder of Ha-
 2473 lirrithius the Son of Neptune; and that the Place of the
 Trial was called Arius Pagus; and this was the Begin-
 ning of the Court of Arcopagus at Athens.

Q. Was not Greece inhabited long before these Days?

A. It is certain that it was; but there can very little
 be said about the Affairs thereof, before these Men
 settled in it; and the several Kingdoms, that were raised
 on the other Parts of Greece, began also about the Time
 of Cecrops.

Q. Was the ancient Religion of Greece introduced by
 these Egyptians?

A. It is generally said so, and in their Time the
 Egyptian Religion was strangely corrupted; for they
 worshipped not only the Luminaries of Heaven and their
 famous Men, but also Images and living Creatures, as
 Birds, Beasts, and Reptiles.

Q. Have

*Q. Have you any particular Collections or Monuments Anno
of their Idols? Mun.*

A. There is a Draught of a very celebrated Piece of Antiquity, given us by *Montfaucon*, called the Table of *Isis*, which may properly be called a general Table of their Divinities of every Kind, and of all the Religions and Superstitions of Egypt. Though this seems of a more recent Date than either *Cadmus*, *Danaus*, *Plutarch*, or *Eusebius*.

Q. Give a Description of this Table?

A. It was made of Brass, and about four Foot square; the Ground Work was a black Enamel, inlaid with Silver Plates, which represented different Figures, distinguished into several Copartments, and interspersed with various Hieroglyphicks, to decypher them.

Q. Where was this Curiosity found?

A. It fell into the Hands of a common Artificer at Rome, when that City was plunder'd by *Char. V. Anno Dom. 1527*. This Person sold it to Cardinal *Bembo*, at whose Death it came to the Duke of Mantua, and was kept in that Family till the Year 1630, when that City was sack'd by the Emperor's General, but has never 2433 been seen since.

Q. You left the Israelites much distressed in Egypt under Salatis, how did they surmount those Difficulties?

A. In the Time of their Affliction *Moses* was born; and his Mother, unwilling to have him thrown into the River, made a Basket, put the Infant into it, and set it among the Bullrushes by the Water-side, leaving it to the Providence of God.

Q. What became of it afterwards?

A. Pharaoh's Daughter coming to the River, and, hearing a Child cry, ordered it to be brought to her, determined to preserve it; and *Moses's* Sister standing near, offered to procure a Nurse for it; and the Princess harkening to her Proposal, she brought her Mother, to whom the Child was delivered.

Q. How was Moses disposed of, when he was taken from his Mother?

A. He

Ann *A.* He was sent for to Court, and instructed in all the *Mun.* Learning of the Egyptians, and became a Person of such Eminence, that the Princess adopted him for her Son, and her Father designed him for his Heir to the Crown of Egypt.

Q. Was Moses preferred to any Place of Trust by Pharaoh?

A. Josephus relates, that he was made General of the Egyptian Army, and that he besieged Saba the capital City of Ethiopia; that he took the Place, and Tharbis the King's Daughter in it.

Q. Did Moses visit his Brethren, and pity their miserable Condition?

A. Yes, often; and, one Day in particular, observing an Egyptian Task-master inhumanly severe with an Hebrew, he killed him. The next Day he found two Hebrews in Contest with each other, and having first admonish'd them, offered to decide the Quarrel; but they refused to submit to his Arbitration, and upbraided him with the Murder of the Egyptian.

Q. Was not this Conduct of Moses suspected by Pharaoh?

A. When he heard hereof, he determined to put him to Death; to avoid which, Moses fled to Jethro the High Priest, and chief Inhabitant of Midian, married one of his Daughters, and kept his Flocks 40 Years.

Q. In what did he employ himself during this Retirement?

A. He is supposed to have wrote his Book of Genesis, at the Leisure which he had there.

Q. Moses seems now to have given over all Thought of seeing his People any more, what unexpected Events occasioned his Return into Egypt?

A. As he was following Jethro's Flock in their Feeding towards Mount Horeb, he saw a Bush flaming for a considerable Time, and not in the least diminished by the Fire; and standing still to consider the Meaning of it, he heard a Voice, which declared the Design of God to deliver the Israelites out of Egypt by his Hand, and the Method by which he would effect it.

Q. How

Q. How did he act on this Occasion ?

Answ

A. He went to *Yethre*, and having got Leave to go *Mam.* from him, he took his Wife and Sons, and set out for *Egypt*; and *Aaron*, by God's Appointment, met him in the Wilderness; and they went to the People of *Israel*, acquainted them with their Business, and, by their mighty Works, convinced them, that God did indeed now design to visit them.

Q. Did Moses carry his Wife and Children with him on this Errand ?

A. He is supposed to have circumcised his youngest Son on this Journey; but when he met *Aaron*, he sent them and his Wife back to his Father-in-Law, and took *Aaron* only into *Egypt* with him, according to the Directions received. Here he is said to have asked God's Name, to inform himself who the Person was, that was to be their Deliverer.

Q. What Answer did God think fit to give to this Question ?

A. He bid *Moses* call him *I AM THAT I AM*; and also added, that he was *The God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob.*

Q. What is meant by these Words ?

A. By the former of them, God intimated his essential Divinity, *I AM, &c.* i. e. *independent, immutable, self-existent*: By the latter Words, he declares himself to be the Person who appeared to *Abraham*, and made the Promise to him and his Seed.

Q. What was the next Step taken by Moses and Aaron, towards the Delivery of the Children of Israel, out of Slavery ?

A. After they had conversed with the Elders, they went to *Pharaoh*, and asked him Leave to take the *Israelites* three Days Journey into the Wilderness, to perform a Sacrifice to the Lord their God.

Q. What Answer did they receive to this Request ?

A. *Pharaoh* told them, he knew no such God as the God of *Israel*, and resolved not to suffer them to go out of the Land.

Q. When did they reject this Demand ?

A. A

Anno A. A few Days after, when the King desired them to
Mun. shew some *Miracles*, to induce him to believe they were
 sent from the God they had before spake of. Hereon
Moses ordered *Aaron* to cast his *Rod* upon the Ground,
 and it was immediately changed into a *Serpent*.

Q. Was not Pharaoh surprized at this Transmutation?

A. He called together his *Magicians* and *Sorcerers*, to try if they could not, by their Arts, perform the like Wonder; and it pleased God to permit them to succeed in their Attempts to delude *Pharaoh*; but to give him a sufficient Reason to consider this Fact more seriously, *Aaron's* Rod swallowed up those of the *Magicians*: Tho' he still refused to let the Children of *Israel* go.

Q. Did they, after this, renew their Petition for his dismissing the *Israelites*?

A. Yes, many Times; and *Moses* and *Aaron* wrought several other *Miracles* in *Egypt*, after the same Manner; see *Exod. viii.* But the last was the severest Message which they ever brought to *Pharaoh*.

Q. How was this represented to him?

A. That, at Midnight, God would strike dead the First-born of every Family throughout the Land of *Egypt*; and *Moses* had before this been instructed to direct the People to prepare the *Passover*, and get all Things ready for their Departure.

Q. Did not this strike a Dread and Terror upon all the *Egyptians*?

A. At Midnight there was a great Cry and Confusion amongst them; and they came to *Moses* in a great Fright, and desired him to get the People together, with all that belonged to them, and begone. Hereupon *Moses* took
 2513 the Bones of *Joseph*, which his Brethren had sworn to carry with them, and travelled from *Rameses* to *Succoth*, about twelve Miles.

Q. Whither did they go from *Succoth*?

A. To *Etham*, a Town near the Border of the Wilderness of *Arabia*; and thence to *Pibahiroth*, between *Migdal* and the Red Sea; and the Lord went before them
 by

by Day in a Pillar of a Cloud, to lead them the Way; and by Night, in a Pillar of Fire, to give them Light.

Q. Did Pharaoh pursue them after they were gone out of Egypt?

A. He repented of his having given them Leave to depart, and resolved to follow and revenge himself upon them, and summon'd together a numerous Army for this Purpose.

Q. Were not the Israelites exceedingly afraid at the Approach of Pharaoh?

A. They were ready to mutiny against Moses for bringing them out of Egypt; but it being Night when the Egyptians came up with them, Moses had them not fear, and assured them, God would give them a miraculous Deliverance, and destroy the Egyptians without their being exposed to the Hazard of a Battle.

Q. In what Manner was their Deliverance effected?

A. As soon as Moses had done speaking, the Pillar of Fire and of the Cloud, which used to go before them, removed between them and the Egyptians, with the dark Side towards them, and the bright Side towards the Israelites; so that the former could not see their Way to get up to them.

Q. Which Way did the Israelites flee from them?

A. To the Red-Sea, where they stopped some Hours; and Moses held up his Hand, and God divided the Waters, and they passed over on dry Ground from one Side to the other: But the Egyptians pursuing them, and not having the Light of the Pillar, imagined they were upon dry Ground also; when Moses stretched forth his Hand again, and the Waters over-whelmed them.

Q. Of what Numbers did Pharaoh's Army consist?

A. Josephus says, there were 600 Chariots, 50,000 Horse, and 200,000 Foot Soldiers, drowned at this Time.

Q. Who was this Pharaoh King of Egypt, that pursued the Israelites, and perished in the Red-Sea?

A. According to Sir John Marsham's Tables, his Name was Apophis; for he reigned there, A.M. 2520. But the Reader must not expect the numeral Characters

Anno in the *Egyptian* Reigns, are so truly handed down to *Mun.* us, that six or seven Years Difference can be accounted for.

CHAP. V.

The Journeyings of the Israelites under the Conduct of Moses ; Manna, its Name and Nature ; History of Lelex, first King of Laconia ; of Cadmus ; Danaus ; Ouranus ; Saturn ; Jupiter ; the Golden Age ; Silver Age ; Brazen Age, &c.

Anno **W**HAT was done by Moses after the Deliverance of the Israelites from the Egyptians ?
Mun.

A. They first joined in a Song of Thanksgiving, and then wandered into the Wilderness of *Sbur*, three Days without Water ; at length they found some at *Marah*, but could not drink it, because it was bitter ; and they murmured against their Leader.

Q. How did Moses remedy this Grievance ?

A. He cried unto the Lord, and he ordered him to take a Bough from a Tree which he was directed to, and put it into the Water ; and it was made sweet.

Q. Whither did they remove from *Marah* ?

A. To a Place in the Wilderness of *Sin*, where they found twelve Fountains of Water, and seventy Palm-Trees, and called it *Elim* ; but this being a barren Desert, incapable of supplying them with Provisions, they were ready to mutiny again, when God was pleased miraculously to relieve them by a great Flight of Quails ; and moreover rained them Bread from Heaven.

Q. What was this Bread ?

A. It

A. It was like *Coriander Seed*, of a white Colour, *Anno*
and the Taste of it like *Wafers* made with Honey. *Mus.*

Q. Did the *Israelites* know what it was?

A. No; therefore they said to one another, *Man hu*, which are two *Hebrew Words*, and signify, *What is this?* and, not knowing what Name to give it, called it *Manna* ever afterwards.

Q. How did they gather it?

A. The Head of every Family was ordered to gather as many *Omers* every Morning, as he had Persons therein.

Q. How much was an Omer?

A. It was the tenth Part of an *Ephab*, about three Pints of our Measure.

Q. What other Order was given the *Israelites* about gathering this *Manna*, or *Manna*?

A. They were bid to gather not more than one Day's Provision at a Time, and be careful to leave none till next Morning, for it bred *Worms* and stank; but on the sixth Day they were to gather a double Quantity, because the seventh Day they were to do no Manner of Work; and being the *Sabbath*, no *Manna* fell thereon.

Q. How long were the People thus miraculously fed with *Manna* from Heaven?

A. About forty Days, and then *Moses* led them to *Rephidim*, where they murmured again for Want of Water; and *Moses* smote a Rock at Mount *Horeb*, in Sight of the Elders of *Israel*, and a River of Water flowed out.

Q. What more Misfortunes did they meet with at *Rephidim*?

A. Here the *Amalekites*, near whose Country they encamped, attacked them; and *Moses* ordered *Joshua* to chuse out a sufficient Number of the ablest Men to sustain the Assault, and went to an Eminence near, with his Rod in his Hand, and *Aaron* and *Hur* to accompany him.

Q. How was the Event of this Engagement?

A. The Battle was for some Time dubious, and it being observed, whilst *Moses* held up his Hand, the *Israelites*

Anno Israelites had the better ; but when he let it fall, the *Mun.* Amalekites prevailed, and *Moses* being tired, *Aaron* and *Hur* desired him to sit down, and supported his Hands till *Joshua* obtained a compleat Victory over them.

Q. Whither did the Israelites travel from hence ?

A. They marched to *Sinai*, and pitched their Camp at the Foot of the Mount, and staid near a Year in this Place.

Q. What was transacted here ?

A. *Moses* spent some Time in writing down the Laws and Judgments which God had given him, built an Altar, offered Sacrifices, and read what he had written to the People, which they solemnly engaged to perform.

Q. What more was done by *Moses* after this ?

A. He, *Aaron*, *Nadab*, *Abihu*, and Seventy Elders, went up some Part of the Mountain, and saw the God of Israel, and worshipped him ; and having given *Aaron* and *Hur* the Charge of the People, he went with *Joshua* to the Top of the Mount, and there tarried 40 Days.

Q. In what Sense did *Moses*, &c. and the Seventy Elders see the God of Israel ?

A. By this Expression is meant the divine Person, who is many Times called in the Old Testament, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob ; and frequently appeared to them, and was afterwards made *Flesh*.

Q. What have you recorded of *Lelex*, the first King of *Laconia*, who flourished about these Times ?

A. He made divers Settlements ; in *Caria*, in *Ionia*, at *Ida* near *Troy*, and afterwards in *Greece* ; in *Acar-nania*, in *Ætolia*, and in *Beotia* ; went into *Phœnicia*, thence into *Lesser Asia*, and from thence crossed into *Grace*, making Settlements in many Places, till he at length fixed in *Laconia*.

Q. How did he act in these several Processions ?

A. He endeavour'd to civilize the uncultivated People where-ever he came, and probably left Persons behind him to complete his Designs ; and from every Place he touched at, took such new Associates with him as he liked ; so that his Company became, in a few Years, a mixed Multitude of different Nations : And this seems

to be the Reason why the Greeks called him *Lelex*, and *Anno*
and them *Leleges*. *Mus.*

Q. Who was Lelex, and where did he first come from?

A. He seems to be an *Israelite*, somewhat older than *Moses*; began his Travels, and took the same Rout as *Cecrops* and the Father of *Cadmus* did: For as divers famous Natives fled from *Egypt* upon the Conquest of the *Pastors*, some of the *Hebrews* also, hard pressed with Slavery, might leave that Country in the same Manner.

Q. Who succeeded him in Laconia?

A. *Myles* his Son; after him *Eurotas*, Son of *Myles*, became King; who dying without Male Issue, the Crown of *Laconia* went into another Family, and *Lacedæmon*, Son of *Jupiter*, was promoted to it.

Q. Give the History of the famous Jupiter of the Greeks, who was also cotemporary with Moses?

A. He was Son of *Saturn*, a King of *Crete*; but early History gives but a confused Account of the *Creteans*. *Cres* was King of *Crete* about the fifty-sixth Year of *Abraham*. *Talus* was Son of *Cres*; *Vulcan* of *Talus*, and *Rhadamanthus* of *Vulcan*; in whose Days we place the *Dædali Idæi*.

Q. Who were these Dædali Idæi?

A. They were five Brothers, equal in Number to the Fingers of a Man's Hand; and for that Reason called *Dædali*. Now from *Abraham* to *Moses* are seven Descents, *Abraham*, *Isaac*, *Jacob*, *Levi*, *Cobath*, *Anan*, and *Moses*; and there are about as many from *Cres* to *Jupiter*, (viz.) *Cres*, *Talus*, *Vulcan*, *Rhadamanthus*, *Ouranus*, *Saturn*, and *Jupiter*.

Q. Where did Ouranus live?

A. In the Eastern Parts of *Crete*, and married *Vitæa*; who, according to the Custom of these Times, took the Name of *Terra*, or *Tellus*, as her Husband did that of *Cælum*, or *Ouranus*; the Elements and Lights of Heaven being the Deities now worshipped.

Q. What Children were born of these two Parents?

A. First the *Centimani*, *Briareus*, *Gyes*, and *Cæus*.

Q. Are

Anno Q. *Are not these Men said to have had an hundred
Mun. Hands, and fifty Heads a-piece?*

~ A. They were of larger Size, greater Strength, and perhaps of more Cunning than common Men; and therefore the *Fable* has given them the Hands and Heads of Multitudes.

Q. *Whither did Ouranus send these Men?*

A. To inhabit *Tartarus*, where we find them in Power and Command in the Days of *Jupiter*; but where this Country was, may be difficult to determine; though *Pluto* was afterwards King of it, and took away thither *Proserpine* from her Mother *Ceres*: So that it is plain it was not in *Crete*, for there they, on Search, could not find her: These Dominions then were in some foreign Country, probably in *Sicily*.

Q. *Why is Pluto called the God of the Dead, and his Country their Region?*

A. Because he invented the Rites and Ceremonies that were used at Funerals, and all the gloomy Fictions imagined to belong to the State of the Departed, are said to have their Place in the Land of *Tartarus*.

Q. *What more Children had Ouranus and Tellus?*

A. The *Cyclopes*, whose Name were *Harpes*, *Steropes*, and *Brontes*. These are said to have but one Eye a-piece, and that situate in the Middle of their Fore-heads, from their wearing a Head-piece, or martial Vizor, that had but one Sight through it. *Ouranus* and *Tellus* were also the Parents of the *Titans* and *Titaniads*; and *Tellus* had also other Children by a Person named *Pontus*, who was her second Husband.

Q. *What were the Names of these?*

A. *Phorcus*, *Thaumas*, *Nereus*, *Eurybaea*, and *Ceto*; and *Ouranus* had several Children by a Concubine called *Ops*.

Q. *Who is this Ops supposed to be?*

A. She was no *Cretan*, but a Foreigner, and probably was the *Cybele* of the Ancients. *Tellus* made a Voyage also into *Sicily*, and staid there some Time, until she had a Son named *Typhon*, by *Tartarus*, a Person of

of the highest Eminence in that Kingdom at this *Anno*
Time. *Mun.*

Q. What Account do you give of Saturn?

A. He is said to have castrated and deposed his Father *Ouranus*; but we have no Reason to believe this, or what is told of the Birth of the *Furies* from him, to be Fact. These Relations are Part of the *Mythic Theology*, which afforded many Narrations of imaginary Actions, founded upon the ancient Philosophy, and Religion historically put together, but never really done.

Q. Whom did Saturn marry, and how many Children had he?

A. He married his Sister *Rhea*, and had by her three Sons and three Daughters, *Jupiter*, *Neptune*, *Pluto*, *Vesta*, *Ceres*, and *Juno*.

Q. Is not Saturn said to have eat up his Children as soon as they were born, and after a Time to have vomited them up again?

A. This Fable seems to take its Rise from his being the first in these Parts that introduced a Regularity of Diet among his People, and as soon as his Children were fit, he sent them abroad for Education, and when they had sufficiently improved themselves, he recalled them home again from foreign Countries.

Q. Did not Saturn regulate the Manners as well as the Diet of his People?

A. He instituted Rites of Religious Worship, and Rules to promote the Peace of Society. He took care to form their Language and their Sentiments, and, by Degrees, brought them to a Sense of Duty to their Gods, and of Justice and Integrity towards one another.

Q. Was all this done by the Rigour of Power and penal Laws?

A. He had no Magistrates to enforce his Dictates, or to execute Vengeance in order to restrain Offenders; by the Influence of his Direction only they were led to pursue the public Good, and the Peace, Ease and Content in which they lived, induced Posterity to call their Times, **THE GOLDEN AGE.**

Q. Who

Anno Q. Who became King of Crete after Saturn ?

Mus. A. Jupiter, his rightful Heir ; he married his Sister Juno, and by her had five Children, *Hebe, Ilybia, Argus, Mars, and Vulcan.* He had also nine other Wives, and Children by each of them, besides several more by different Women.

Q. Who were the nine Wives, and what the Names of their Children ?

A. (1) *Metis*, by whom he had *Pallas*. (2) *Themis*, who bare him *Irene, Eunomia, and Dica*, called the *Horæ* ; also *Clotbo, Lachesis, and Atropos*, who were called the *Fates*. (3) *Euronome*, was Mother of *Aglaia, Euphrosyne, and Thalia*. (4) Of *Ceres* was born *Proserpine*. (5) Of *Mnemosyne* the *Muses*. (6) *Latona* bare him *Apollo and Diana*. (7) *Venus* was born of *Dione*. (8) *Mercury* of *Maia*. (9) *Bacchus* of *Semele*.

Q. What Improvements did Jupiter make in his People, who had been before brought to so good a Disposition by his Father Saturn ?

A. He introduced a new Scene of Life and Action, taught them to build Houses, to sow, reap, gather, and preserve Corn for Food, appointed Magistrates to hear and decide Controversies ; and directed his Subjects to submit to their Determinations.

Q. What particular Arts were attempted on his Encouragement ?

A. The Working of divers Sorts of Metals ; Arms were introduced ; a Soldiery invented, and trained ; Navigation improved ; Horses tamed ; Musick and Physick advanced ; a Correspondency with foreign States, by Embassies, attempted, &c.

Q. Who were the Persons that assisted him in thus reforming and instructing his Subjects ?

A. Those who had the Management of particular Arts in their respective Provinces committed to them, were *Neptune and Pluto* his Brothers ; *Vesta and Ceres* his Sisters ; *Juno*, his Wife ; *Vulcan, Mars, Apollo, Mercury, Venus, Diana, and Minerva*, his Children ; and afterwards

wards the Name of *Bacchus* was added to them, and he became the Author of several *Inventions*. Anno
Mun.

Q. How were the Cretan Worthies distinguished from their Ancestors or Successors?

A. When the ancient Greek Heroes came to be reputed Gods, these twelve only attained to the highest Honours. They had one common Altar at *Athens*, and were called the *Di Consentes*, or *Consentientes* by the Romans; and it was usual to swear by them: They were revered above other Deities, and as they jointly assisted their President *Jupiter*, in forming the ancient Cretan Polity, they were enrolled with and subordinate to him in the List of Fame: And in his Reign began THE SILVER AGE.

Q. What Wars was Jupiter engaged in during his Reign over the Kingdom of Crete?

A. The *Titanes* and the Children of *Ops*, who were the Tyrants of their Age and Country, made frequent Incursions into his Dominions, but were at length all slain by him. After he had thus settled the publick Safety at Home, he and his Associates traveled into foreign Lands, and visited the Cities and States of *Greece*, and instructed them in many Points conducive to the public Welfare.

Q. What particular Actions were transacted by Jupiter in his Travels?

A. He made an Expedition into *Arcadia*; *Lycaon* was King there, a Prince of some Fame, but of most savage Manners; for he shed human Blood at his Sacrifices.

Q. How was Jupiter entertained by this King?

A. He received him with an Air of Hospitality, but, at the Entertainment, caused the Body of a Child to be served up to the Table; at which *Jupiter* being provoked, with the Help of his Attendants, fell upon him and slew him.

Q. Was not Lycaon said to have been turned into a Wolf?

A. This Fiction was invented Ages after his Death, perhaps from his Successors continuing the barbarous Custom of eating human Flesh; or, as *Plato* moralizes it, from

Amo from their Tyranny; for Tyrants are, indeed, like *Mun.* Wolves to their People.

Q. *What other Kings did Jupiter visit after this?*

2494. A. He and his whole Family were at *Cadmus's* Wedding at *Thebes* in *Beotia*, when he gave *Harmonia* his Daughter to him for his Wife; and about twenty-two Years after made him a second Visit, when he fell in Love with *Cadmus's* Daughter *Semele*; from hence the *Mythologists* invented all that is offered about the Death of *Semele*, and the Birth of the *Grecian Bacchus*.

Q. *Who succeeded Jupiter, and how long did he reign?*

A. We are not told when he died; and it seems probable, no one Person became King of the whole Island of *Crete* after him, till the Days of *Minos*; for, in succeeding Times, there were great Wars and Commotions in the then known World; Colonies marched from many Countries to find new Settlements; and *Crete* was invaded by some of them: From such a Scene of Hostility this was called, **THE BRAZEN AGE.**

Q. *How do you explain the Fable of Prometheus, who lived with Jupiter, and what was meant by the Fire he is said to have stolen from Heaven?*

A. *Plato* says, the Fire which he stole was the Arts, which *Vulcan* and *Minerva* taught the *Cretans*; Science is the Fire and the Life of Man; and *Jupiter* thought it politically unsafe, to suffer any Person to teach the People those Arts, but such only as derived their Authority from him; and for this Crime *Prometheus* was deem'd a Seducer of his Subjects. The Fable, taken in this Sense, is not inelegant.

Q. *What was his Punishment for this Crime?*

A. He was banished to some uncultivated Mountain, called *Caucasus*; and, after some Years, recalled.

Q. *What became of the several Persons that were assitant to Jupiter, and engaged with him in the Scene of Action?*

A. They did not all settle in *Crete* for Life. *Apoll* was a great Traveller; he visited many Parts of *Greece*. He came to *Athens*; went from thence to *Panopaeus*, a City

City of *Phocis*, and killed *Tityus*, a Man of extraordinary Size and Strength, who oppressed the People in that Neighbourhood. *Anno*

Q. To what Parts did Apollo travel after this Exploit?

A. He went to *Delpas*, where the Tyrant *Python* governed, whom he slew also, on his refusing him Admittance. This *Python* was surnamed *Draco*, which gave Birth to the Fable of his killing the monstrous Serpent called *Python*. Here he seems to have spent the Remainder of his Life, and to have been much respected: For Posterity erected to him a Temple in this Place.

Q. Where did the rest of the Cretan Worthies fix themselves?

A. *Neptune* planted his Children in the Island of *Atalantis*; *Vulcan* went to *Lemnos*; *Ops*, called afterwards *Cybele*, from the Mountain she lived upon, removed from *Crete* to *Phrygia*, and became famous there; *Ceres* came into *Attica*. The rest were occasionally in divers Parts of *Greece*, and celebrated in all, for the Arts they excelled in. 2499

CHAP. VI.

Sequel of the Journeyings of the Israelites; the Tabernacle erected; of Balaam's Ass; the Death of Moses; Canaan conquer'd; Settlements of the Tribes; Death of Joshua, &c.

WE left *Moses* and *Joshua* on the Top of Mount *Anno* *Sinai*: How did the *Israelites* behave themselves *Nan* during his Absence?

D

A. They

Anno A. They were greatly surprized at his long Stay, and
Mun. gathering about Aaron, required him to make them a
 God; who asked them for their Ear-rings, melted them
 down, and made a Golden Calf, then built an Altar be-
 fore it, and proclaimed a Feast unto the Lord.

Q. What did Moses do when he saw this Image, and
 the People dancing before it?

A. He was much moved, and throwing down the
 two Tables of the Law, which he had in his Hands, he
 took the Idol and melted it; then reduced the Lump to
 Powder, and mixed the Powder with Water, and made
 the Children of Israel drink it.

Q. How did Moses act, after he had made Intercession
 for the People for this their Idolatry?

A. At the Command of God he made two new Ta-
 bles of Stone, like those he had broken, and went up
 to Mount Sinai a second Time, where he tarried forty
 Days and forty Nights, without eating Bread or drink-
 ing Water.

Q. What was he employed about during that Time?

A. He wrote down, as God directed him, the Ten
 Commandments, and received the Orders set down,
Exodus xxxiv. And when he came from the Mount, he
 called the Congregation together, told them what had
 been appointed to him, and required them to make their
 Offerings for erecting the Tabernacle, and taxed every
 Israelite, above twenty Years old, half a Shekel, which
 is about 15 d. our Money.

Q. To how much did the Sum, raised by this Taxation,
 amount?

A. To 3772½ l. 17 s. 6 d. and the voluntary Con-
 tributions brought in a Quantity of all Sorts of Mate-
 rials sufficient for the Occasion; so that all further
 Offerings were forbidden.

Q. Who were nominated to be the Directors and Over-
 seers of this Work?

A. Bezahel and Aboliab, by a special Designation
 from God himself; and against the End of the Year,
 the Tabernacle, and its Appurtenances, the Silver-Bread
 Table,

Table, the Priests Garments, Holy Ointments, the Golden Anno Candlesticks, and all the Utensils for the Service of the Munn. Altar, were finished, ready to be put up.

Q. All the Parts of the Tabernacle being now ready to be put together, when did they begin to rear it?

A. On the first Day of the first Month, in the second 2514 Year, Moses reared up the Tabernacle, and placed the Ark in it, and hung up the Vail, &c. And when he had thus raised it, God was pleased to give the People a visible Demonstration, that it was erected according to his Directions.

Q. In what Manner did this visible Evidence of the Divine Presence appear to them?

A. A Cloud covered the Tent of the Congregation, and the Glory of the Lord filled the Tabernacle, which continued from this Time, until the Israelites had finished their Journeyings thro' the Wilderness.

Q. Was this the first Structure, that was erected in the World, for the Purposes of Religion?

A. Yes; for we do not find the heathen Nations had any Notion of building Houses to their Gods, till after the Israelites had built their Tabernacle.

Q. Did Moses and the People go into the Tabernacle to worship, as soon as it was erected?

A. No; the Cloud abode thereon, and the Glory of the Lord filled it, so that Moses could not enter into it for some Days; during which Time the Lord, in an audible Voice, deliver'd to him the Laws recorded in the first eight Chapters of Exodus.

Q. What was done after he had received these Laws?

A. He proceeded to anoint the Tabernacle, the Altar, and all its Vessels, and to consecrate Aaron and his Sons to the Priests Offices.

Q. When did Aaron first officiate as High Priest?

A. On the twelfth Day of the first Month: But there happened an unhappy Accident which interrupted his Ministration.

Q. What was this Misfortune, and how occasioned?

D 2

A. Nadab

Anno *A.* Whilst Aaron was ordering the Bullock and the Ram for the Peace-Offering, which the Fire of the Lord consumed upon the Altar; Nadab and Abihu took each of them a Censer, and put Fire therein, and Incense on the Fire; and thus offering *strange Fire* before the Lord, contrary to his express Command, there went out Fire from the Lord, and struck them dead. This put a Stop to the remaining Offices of that Day's Service; and we have no Account of any thing more done till the first Day of the second Month.

Q. How was Moses thought to be employed during this Interval of sixteen Days?

A. He now received the Laws recorded in *Leviticus*, from the Beginning of Chapter xi. to the End of that Book, except the Laws contained in the three last Chapters, which were not given to Moses at the Door of the Tabernacle, but upon the Mount.

Q. What was the next Command Moses received from God?

A. To take a Poll of every Male of twenty Years old and upwards, excepting the *Levites*; and for the easier taking of this Poll, twelve Persons were named to be Princes of the Tribes of their Fathers; and they assembled their Tribes, and gave in the Names and Number of the Persons they were set over. After this Moses receiv'd a Command to appoint the Order in which the Host of the *Israelites* should march and encamp.

Q. Was not Moses also directed to take the Number of the *Levites* soon after this Time?

A. Yes, and to appoint the several Families their respective Services, and to set apart the whole Tribe for the Ministry of the Tabernacle.

Q. Did you not say the eldest Son in every Family was the Minister of Religion in old Times?

A. Yes; but in the Jewish Institution God thought fit to dismiss the First-born from this Service, and to direct the *Levites* to be dedicated to him in their Stead. After this, Moses had two Silver Trumpets made to summon the Assembly, and for sounding an Alarm, and the

the Cloud being taken off from the Tabernacle, they *And* marched, by the Direction of it, from the Wilderness of *Mun.* Sinai to the Wilderness of *Paran.*

Q. What memorable Incidents happen'd here ?

A. The People grew so uneasy, that God destroyed many of them with Fire from Heaven ; but, on *Moses's* Prayer, the Fire ceased. However, he was quite tired out with their restless Humours, and begged of God to ease him of his Burden ; accordingly he was ordered to chuse Seventy Elders out of the Officers over the People ; and God was pleased to qualify them for the Employment designed.

Q. Whither did they journey from Paran ?

A. To *Hazereth*, where *Aaron* and *Miriam* warmly opposed *Moses* for his marrying *Jethro*, the *Cushite's* Daughter, an *Arabian*. In this Contest God was pleased to come down in the Pillar of the Cloud to justify *Moses*, and struck *Miriam* with a Leprosy, and order'd her to be put out of the Camp ; but, on *Moses's* Prayer, she was recovered.

Q. Where did they remove on her Re-Admission ?

A. Further on in the Wilderness of *Paran*, whence *Moses* sent Spies into the Land of *Canaan*. On receiving the Report of these Messengers, the People mutinied ; and God, for this Offence, determined, that none of the Persons, who had thus rebelled against him, except *Caleb* and *Joshua*, should enter into the Land of *Canaan*.

Q. Did they offer to make any Attempt upon the Canaanites at this Time ?

A. They would march against them, though *Moses* assured them, that God would not now give them Success ; accordingly the *Amalekites* and *Canaanites* smote them unto *Hormah*, and *Moses* was ordered to lead them back again to the *Red-Sea* ; and we hear but little more of them for about thirty-seven Years. This Retreat probably occasioned the Rebellion of *Korah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*.

Anno Q. Where do you meet with the Israelites again, after
Mun. this Retreat from Canaan?

~ A. In the fortieth Year from their Exit out of Egypt, after they had made seventeen Encampments from
 2553 their leaving the Wilderness of Paran, they came into the Deserts of Sin, and pitched their Tents at Kadesh.

Q. In what Manner did they behave themselves here?

A. They found but little Water in these Parts, at which they soon grew discontented, and murmur'd against Moses and Aaron; who, on consulting God for a Supply, were ordered to gather the Assembly, and then Moses was to take Aaron's Rod, and they were both to speak unto a Rock in the Desert, and it was to pour forth Water in the Sight of the Israelites.

Q. Was this the first Emotion of Discontentment that had appeared amongst the People, during an Interval of near thirty-seven Years?

A. Yes; and Moses could not bear it; but being provoked, he spake unadvisedly with his Lips; and hereupon He and Aaron committed a Fault, for which God pronounced against them a second Time, that they should not bring the People into the Land of Canaan.

Q. What was the Fault which Moses and Aaron were here guilty of?

A. When they had gathered the Congregation, Moses smote the Rock twice, instead of speaking to it as God had commanded; and this was acting contrary to the Commission which God had given him, and looked like an Affectation of raising his own Credit among the People, instead of promoting the Glory of God.

Q. Whither did they remove from Kadesh?

A. On the King of Edom's refusing to let them pass thro' his Country, they marched to Mount Hor, where
 2553 Aaron died; and Eleazar his Son was appointed High Priest in his Place. Soon after this, the King of Arad, a City in the Southern Parts of Canaan, on their coming too near his Borders, fell upon them, and took some of them Prisoners.

Q. Had

Q. Had the Israelites offered any Violence to his Country? *Anno Mun.*

A. No; and they were so provoked at this unjust Action, that they vowed, if ever they should hereafter be able, they would utterly destroy this People.

Q. Moses having met with Opposition, both from the King of Edom and the King of Arad; which Way was he now ordered to conduct his People?

A. He was bid to fetch a Compass round the Land of Edom; but this Expedition so discouraged the People, because of the Length of the Way, that they began to grow too mutinous for Moses to lead any farther; but God corrected them for this Obstinacy, by sending among them *fiery Serpents*, which destroy'd many of them.

Q. Were they not humbled at this Calamity?

A. They immediately came to Moses, and intreated him to pray for them; and he obtained them a Cure for the Malady that afflicted them.

Q. In what Manner was this Cure effected?

A. God directed Moses to make a *Serpent*, and set it up in the Camp; and promised, that whoever looked at it, should, tho' bitten with the *fiery Serpents*, recover and live: And he made a *Serpent of Brass*, and set it up as he was commanded, and the People found it an effectual Remedy against this Calamity.

Q. Whither did the Israelites remove their Quarters from hence?

A. After two Incampments, one at *Zalmonah*, the other at *Punon*, which are omitted by Moses, they went to *Pisgah*, where Moses sent to *Sihon King of the Amorites*, to ask Leave to march through his Country.

Q. What Answer did he receive to this Message?

A. *Sihon* was so far unwilling to grant his Request, that he determined to oblige them to quit his Territories: Hereon a Battle ensued, but the *Israelites* gaining the Victory, pursued the Advantage, and forced *Sihon* out of that Country, and took Possession of it.

Q. To whom did this Tract of Land belong before Sihon conquered it?

Amo A. To the *Moabites*, and from this Time, the several
Mun. Victories, which the *Israelites* obtained in the Land of the
 ~~~~~ *Amorites*, were gotten by Detachments from their main  
 Body : But they sent out select Bodies against the *Midi-*  
*anites*, and by these conquered, and took Possession also  
 of the Kingdom of *Basban* : And then *Moses* marched  
 the whole Camp to the Plain of *Moab*, near the Banks  
 of *Jordan*, over-against *Jericho* ; and they reach'd from  
*Bethjesmeth* unto *Abel-shittim*.

Q. Who was King of Moab at this Time ?

A. *Balak* the Son of *Zippor*, who being in great Con-  
 sternation upon Account of the successful March of the  
*Israelites*, sent for *Balaam* the Son of *Beor*, a famous  
 Prophet, to curse this People.

Q. How, and in what Manner, did *Balaam* comply  
 with this Request made to him ?

A. He first told the Messengers, that no Offers should  
 prevail upon him, to do any Thing but what God di-  
 rected ; but, on *Balak's* repeating his Request, and pro-  
 mising *Balaam* any Advancement in his Kingdom, he  
 undertook the Journey, and God gave him Leave to go  
 with them, upon Condition he would stay till the Mes-  
 sengers of *Balak* should call him in the Morning, and say  
 nothing but what he should direct.

Q. Was *Balaam* careful to act as God commanded ?

A. Greedy of the Reward offer'd him, he staid not to  
 be called in the Morning, but rose early, saddled his  
 Ass, and went with the Princes of *Balak* ; and for this  
 Disobedience God's Anger was kindled against him, and  
 he was opposed by the Angel.

Q. Has not what follows, in *Moses's* Narration of the  
 Ass's speaking, appeared to many a great Difficulty ?

A. Yes ; but if we consider that God, by thus mi-  
 raculously moving the Tongue of the dumb Animal,  
 designed to over-rule the Tongue of *Balaam*, that he  
 should speak nothing hereafter, but what he should  
 please to direct ; the Miracle was not unnecessary, nor  
 was the Fact in any wise impossible. And *Balaam's*  
 Behaviour, when he came to *Balak*, which is at large re-  
 lated

lated *Nun. xxiii, xiv.* is a sufficient Proof how he was *Amo*  
affected by it. *Mun.*

*Q. What have you remarkable said of the Children of Israel, during their Stay at Abel-shittim?*

*A.* They fell in Love with the Daughters of Moab, went to their Sacrifices, and partook of them; whereon the Anger of the Lord was kindled against them, and he commanded *Moses* to order the Judges to put these Offenders to Death; and then sent a Pestilence amongst them, by which 24,000 were carried off.

*Q. On what Account was this Plague said?*

*A.* *Phinias*, the Son of *Eleazar*, took a Javelin and slew *Zimri* the Son of *Salu*, and *Cassi* the Daughter of *Zur*, in the Sight of all the Congregation; and God's Displeasure ceased.

*Q. What was next transacted after the Ceasing of this Plague?*

*A.* God commanded *Moses* and *Eleazar* to take another Poll of the *Israelites*, upon casting up which, they found the Number of the People to be, 601,720 Men, of 20 Years-old and upwards, without the *Levites*, who from a Month old and upwards were 23,000; and there appeared no one Person alive of those numbered at *Sinai*, except *Moses*, *Caleb*, and *Joshua*.

*Q. The Israelites being now in Possession of a large Tract of Land, How was this their first Conquest disposed of?*

*A.* The Children of *Reuben* and *Gad* desired this Part for their Inheritance.

*Q. Was this their Request thought reasonable?*

*A.* At first it occasioned some Dispute, but when these two Tribes had explained their Meaning, that they hereby intended not to desert their Brethren, but to assist them in reducing the Land of *Canaan*, and only settle their Families here, *Moses* consented to it, and ordered *Eleazar* and *Joshua* to divide all the Land, they had conquered on the East Side of *Jordan*, amongst the Children of *Gad* and *Reuben*, and the half Tribe of *Manasseh*.



*Anno* Q. Did Moses, before his Death, leave any Directions  
*Mun.* for dividing the Land of Canaan?

A. Yes, and charged the People, when they shou'd have conquer'd it, to expel the Inhabitants, and demolish all the Monuments of their Idolatries; then told them the Bounds and Extent of it, named the Persons that should divide it, appointed the *Levites* their Cities, and the Cities of Refuge; and now calling to Mind that he was not to go into the Land, he prayed God to permit him; but his Prayer was not accepted.

Q. What were the Orders Moses received from God, after his last Petition was denied?

A. To go up to Mount *Pisgab*, and take a View of the Land; and here he was expressly told he should not go over *Jordan*: So he begged of God to name a Person to lead the People, and was directed to appoint *Joshua*. At this Time the *Law* written in *Num.* xxviii, xxix, and xxx. were given him.

Q. How long did Moses live after this?

A. Not long: For on his coming down from the Mount, he began to exhort the *Israelites* in the Words mentioned *Deut.* i. Then called *Joshua*, and exhorted him to be of good Courage in leading the People; after this, he presented himself and *Joshua* before the Lord in the Tabernacle; and the Lord appeared in the Pillar of the Cloud, and revealed to *Moses*, that after his Death the People would forsake the Law, and bring upon themselves great Evils.

Q. What Method did Moses take on this Occasion to warn them against so fatal a Perverseness?

A. He wrote the Song, which is preserved in the xxxiii Chapter of *Deuteronomy*, and added it to the Book of the *Law*, which he ordered the *Levites* to keep in the Side of the Ark of the Covenant; after this he blessed the Tribes, and went up to the Top of Mount *Pisgab*; and we do not read that he ever came down again, but rather he seems to have died there.

Q. Whither did Joshua, who after the Death of Moses, took the Command of the *Israelites*, first lead them?

A. When

*A.* When the Time of Mourning for *Moses* was over, *Amos* he sent Spies into the Land of *Canaan*, and removed *Mos.* his Camp, with Design to enter into it, to the Banks of *Jordan*, where they halted three Days.

*Q.* How were these Spies concealed, and whither did they go?

*A.* They went to *Jericho*, and to a Woman's House called *Rahab*, who secured them from the King's Searchers; but in three Days they returned to *Joshua*, and brought him Word, that the Inhabitants of *Canaan* were in great Terror on his Approach.

*Q.* Whither did they march, after *Joshua* had received this Report from the Spies?

*A.* God miraculously divided the River *Jordan*, and they passed over it, as they had before over the Red-Sea, on dry Ground.

*Q.* How long were they in passing this River?

*A.* Near a whole Day; and when all the People were clean passed over, God commanded *Joshua* to send twelve Men, one out of every Tribe, to the Priests who bare the Ark, which stood in the Midst of the River, and order each Man to bring on his Shoulder a Stone with him on Shore.

*Q.* What was done with these twelve Stones?

*A.* The next Day *Joshua* pitched them in *Gilgal*, to perpetuate the Remembrance of this Miracle, and then encamped on the East-Side of *Jericho*; where God commanded him to revive the Rite of Circumcision; for none of the Children of the *Israelites* had been circumcised since their Exit out of *Egypt*.

*Q.* How was this Neglect occasioned?

*A.* By the Covenant they made with God at *Horeb*; which obliged them to be strictly careful not to make any Thing a Rite in their Religion, which the Lord had not commanded.

*Q.* What other Acts of Religion were performed by the *Israelites*, in the Plains of *Jericho*?

*A.* On the 14th Day of the Month they kept the *Passover*; and on the 15th the Feast of unleavened Bread.

*Anno* according to the Orders they had received for keeping *Mun.* them; and it being now Wheat Harvest in *Canaan*, and they in a plentiful Country, there fell no more *Manna*.

*Q. Did Joshua march against Jericho when these Offices of Religion were over?*

*A.* Yes; but it being surrounded with an high Wall, the Gates shut up against him, and no proper Engines for taking such Places as yet invented, he seem'd to have no Hopes of reducing it but by Stratagem, or a Blockade.

*Q. How long was it before he made himself Master of the City?*

*A.* While he was contriving proper Means for this Purpose, God appeared to him in the Shape of a Man, with a drawn Sword in his Hand, and called himself, *The Captain of the Host of the Lord*; and here *Joshua* gave him the incommunicable Name of *Jehovah*.

*Q. What Instructions did Joshua receive from the Lord at this Interview?*

*A.* He first promised to deliver the City and the King thereof into his Hand, then directed him to march seven Times round the Walls, and they fell to the Ground; and they entered and sacked it, slaying all the Inhabitants except *Rahab* and her Family. After this, they secured all the Silver and Gold, and the Vessels of Brass and Iron, which they found in it, then burnt the City, and destroyed all the Cattle.

*Q. What particular Things are mentioned to be done by Joshua, on his taking this City?*

*A.* He pronounced the Man to be accursed, who should attempt to rebuild *Jericho*; and prophesied, that he should lay the Foundation thereof in his first-born, and in his youngest Son set up the Gates: Which Prophecy was fulfilled above 500 Years after by *Hiel* and *Segub*, in the Days of *Abah*.

*Q. Into what Part of Canaan did the Israelites march after the taking of Jericho?*

*A. To*

*A. To Ai, a neighbouring City, which they took also, and destroyed the Inhabitants: And now they remember'd what Moses had enjoin'd them to do when they passed over Jordan; accordingly they set up on Mount Ebal great Stones, and plaister'd them with Plaster, and wrote the Law upon them; then built an Altar, and there sacrificed to the Lord.*

*Q. What were the Words of the Law, which Moses ordered to be wrote on these Stones on Mount Ebal?*

*A. The Words set down from the 15th Verse of Deut. xxvii. to the End of Ch. xxviii.*

*Q. Did not the Nations of Canaan, on these Successes of the Israelites, form a confederate Army for their common Safety?*

*A. Yes; but the Gibeonites refused to enter into their Association, and obtained a League with Israel; on hearing of which, the Canaanites marched their Forces against them, under the Command of five of their Kings.*

*Q. How did the Gibeonites defend themselves against them?*

*A. They sent for Joshua, and his Army from Gilgal, and obtain'd a compleat Victory over the Canaanites, took the five Kings Prisoners, and put them to Death: Two great Miracles attended this Battle.*

*Q. What were they?*

*A. God was pleased to kill more of the Enemy by a Storm of Hail-stones, then fell by the Sword of the Israelites; and the Sun and Moon were seen to stand still for near a whole Day, to afford the Israelites a Continuance of Day-light, to pursue the Victory.* 2554

*Q. Did Joshua meet with any more Opposition, after he had, by this Defeat, reduced the Nations of the South Parts of Canaan?*

*A. On his Return to Gilgal, the King of Hazer, in Conjunction with the other Kings in the North Parts, had brought a numerous Army against him, which rendezvoused at the Waters of Meron; but Joshua obtain'd a great Victory over them, took the City of Hazer, and*

*Ans* and burnt it to the Ground, and, in about five Years *Mus.* more, subdued all the Nations of Canaan; and having now triumphed over, in all 31 Kings, he put an End to the War, and divided the Land of Canaan amongst the Tribes of Israel, and settled their Families.

*Q.* As it will be too tedious here to repeat the particular Settlements of each Tribe, tell me what became of the Reubenites, Gadites, and half Tribe of Manassah, whose Inheritances were on the other Side of Jordan?

*A.* Joshua called them to him, thanked them for their Assistance, and dismissed them; when they were come to Jordan, before they passed the River, they built a large Altar, as a Memorial that they belong'd to the Tribes of Canaan, and that they had no Place of Sacrifice in their own Country, but on the other Side of the River, before the Tabernacle of the Lord.

*Q.* Whither did the Canaanites go, who were driven out of their Land by Joshua?

*A.* They fled into Foreign Countries; and Justinian mentions some Pillars in the Place where Tangier now stands, to have had this Inscription upon them in old Phœnician Letters, WE ARE THE FUGITIVES FROM THE FACE OF JOSHUA THE ROBBER, THE SON OF NUN.

*Q.* How long did Joshua live after he had fixed the Israelites in Canaan?

*A.* Several Years, and in a Scene of Peace and Quiet all his Days. Sometime before he died, he summon'd the Tribes to Shechem, and desired them to be faithful, and not forsake the Lord to serve any other God, &c. He was buried on the North Side of the Hill Gash, being 110. Years old when he died.

*Q.* Where was this Place of his Burial?

*A.* In the Border of his Inheritance in Timnath Serah.



**RUDIMENTS**  
**OF**  
**ANCIENT HISTORY,**  
**BOTH**  
**SACRED *and* PROPANE.**

**BOOK II. CHAP. I.**

*The Israelites govern'd by Judges ; Of Terens ;  
 Progne ; Philomela ; Melampus ; Bellerophon ;  
 Pegafus ; Danae ; Pelops ; Hercules ; Medusa ;  
 Atreus and Thyestes ; Sphinx ; Œdipus ; Icarus ;  
 Dædalus ; Perseus ; Circe ; Syrens ; Harpies ; Jason ;  
 Medœa and Absyrtus ; Argonautic Expedition ;  
 Golden Fleece ; &c.*



*HO governed the Israelites after the Death Anno  
 of Joshua ? Mun.*

*A. Tho' it is not expressly said any  
 one Person commanded in Chief, over 2578  
 the People, as Moses and he did ; Caleb  
 was of greatest Authority, and seemeth  
 with the Advice of Phineas, to have ordered and di-  
 rected their Wars.*

*Q. What*

*Ann.* Q. What Wars did they make during this Inter-Mun. regnum?

A. The Tribe of *Juda* made War upon their Borders; and the rest of the Tribes sought to enlarge and establish their own Territories: But a Civil War broke out between the *Benjamites* and the rest of *Israel*; for forcing to Death the *Levite's* Wife; which proved most fatal to them.

Q. What was the Event of these Engagements?

A. The House of *Joseph* took *Bethel* or *Luz*, from the *Hittites* and the *Amorites*; recover'd all the plain Countries from *Dan*, &c. so that the Success of the War was variable; but by these Conflicts and intestine Broils they weaken'd their main Body to such a Degree, that for many Ages they could not bring into the Field such Numbers as they had formerly muster'd.

Q. How did the *Israelites* behave themselves, during these Commotions, towards the Lord, their God, who had aforesaid so often miraculously defended them?

A. Unmindful of his Benefits, they now married with the Heathen Nations, and served *Baal*, *Asherah*, and other Idol Gods: But God provoked at their Idolatry, deliver'd them into the Hands of the *Aramites* of *Mesopotamia*.

Q. How long did they labour under this Oppression, and how were they delivered from it?

2586. A. After they had felt the Smart of God's Displeasure for eight Years, he had Compassion on them, and raised up *Othniel* the Nephew of *Calib*; to be their Judge and Leader, who drove the *Aramites* out of the Land: And the *Israelites* enjoy'd Peace all the Time of his Government, which continued 40 Years.

Q. How many such Judges did God raise up among his People?

A. Twelve, till *Samuel*.

Q. What famous Persons of other Nations lived about the Time of *Othniel*?

A. According to *Homer*, *Pandarus* or *Pandion*, the fifth King of *Athens*, (whose Daughters were *Progne* and *Philemela*) lived in this Age.

Q. What

*Q. What was done in Canaan after the Death of Amnon Othoniel?*

*A. The Israelites relapsed into their former Idolatry, and God encouraged Eglon, King of the Moabites, to invade them, who, in Conjunction with Ammon and Amalek, easily conquer'd them. In this unhappy Condition, they continued eighteen Years, when God was pleased, on their Repentance, to deliver them by the Hand of Ehud.*

*Q. In what Manner did Ehud effect this?*

*A. He went to Eglon with Presents from the Israelites, as an Ambassador to appease him; and having obtained Admittance to his Person, he run him through the Body with a Poinard, and, shutting the Door of his Closet, made his Escape. Then he marched his Forces into the Country of Moab, and slew 10,000 of the Enemy; after which, Sangar, his Successor, having miraculously slain 600 Philistines with an Ox Goad, the Israelites were in Peace for eighty Years, from the Death of Othoniel.*

*Q. What memorable Things were done; and what considerable Men lived, in the Days of Ehud?*

*A. Naomi, with Elimelech her Husband, and her two Sons, traveled into Moab, so that the Story of Ruth is to be referred to this Time. In his Days also Tereus ravished Philomela, and cut out her Tongue: Praxas, his Wife, and her Sister, to be revenged on him for this Action, killed her only Son Irys, and dressed his Flesh as a dainty Dish, of which Tereus eat his Fill; after which she fled to Athens. Hence arose the Fables in Ovid. Met. concerning them.*

*Q. Are any more mentioned by the Heathen Writers to have flourished about this Time?*

*A. Yes; Melampus the Physician, who, from his Skill in Medicine, is said to have understood the Voices of Birds and Beasts, lived now; as did also Tantalus, King of Lydia, who, though he abounded in Wealth, his Mind being transported to higher Desires, enjoy'd no Pleasure in them. Of whom Hor. Ovid. &c. in the 47th Year of*

★ *Anno of Ebud, Tras began to reign in Dardania, and gave it his own Name; and Phemone, Chief Priest of Apollo at Delphos, is said in these Days to have invented heroic Verse.*

*Q. Are these all?*

*A. No, Cecrops II. the seventh King of Athens, and Acrisius, the fourteenth King of Argos, began their Reigns in the Days of Ebud. Pelops also, who gave Name to Peloponnesus, now called Morea, was of the same Date, and Liber Pater, or the Indian Bacchus, is reported by some to have invaded India, in the Time of this Judge. Bellerophon, the Son of Glaucus, the Son of Sisyphus, lived in this Age also.*

*Q. What have you remarkable said of Bellerophon?*

*A. Antea, or Sthenobia, Wife of Pratus, King of the Argives, fell in Love with him, and on his Refusal to comply with her Desires, she accused him to her Husband of a Design to ravish her. Hereupon Pratus sent him to his Son-in-Law Jobates King of Lycia, under Pretence of some important Business, but with secret Orders for Jobates, on his Arrival, to put him to Death.*

*Q. How was he received by the King of Lycia?*

*A. The King thought it dishonourable to kill him, therefore employed him against Chymara, a Monster vomiting Fire.*

*Q. How did Bellerophon behave in this Exploit?*

*A. As the Story says, the Gods pitying his Innocency, sent him a flying Horse called Pegasus, which no one before could bridle or ride, but Minerva; upon which Beast Bellerophon overcame the Monster, and also many other Services given him in Charge; then returned to Lycia, where Jobates gave him one of his Daughters, and afterwards his Kingdom?*

*Q. How is he reported to have acted, when he came to govern that Kingdom?*

*A. He grew so insolent, that he attempted to fly up to Heaven on Pegasus; but Jupiter caused a Fly to sting his Horse, and he threw him down into a Valley of Cilicia, where he died; after this Pegasus flew back to Heaven.*

Heaven, and *Aurora* begged him of *Jupiter*, to ride on *Anno* before the Sun. *Mun.*

*Q. Can you explain this Fable?*

*A.* It is expounded different Ways: First, that God often relieves Men in undeserved Adversity, and casts them down when they are too high minded.

*Q. What is the other Interpretation thereof?*

*A.* That by *Chymara* was meant a cruel Pirate of the *Lycians*, whose Ship had in her Head a *Lion*, in the Middle a *Goat*, and in the Stern a *Dragon*; of which three Beasts this Monster was said to be compounded; which *Bellerophon* pursued in a Galley with such Swift-ness, that it was called the *flying Horse*, and to him is attributed the Invention of *Sails*. This Explanation is probable enough; for *Virgil* calls one of *Aeneas's* largest Ships *Cbymara*. *Aeneid. L. 5.*

*Q. Go on now with the History of the Israelites?*

*A.* In the Time of their Peace and Plenty they began again to forget God, and returned to their former Abominations; and when their Sins were ripe for Ven- 2706 geance, God sent *Jabin*, King of *Hazor*, against them, who invaded their Territories, and kept them in Sub-jection twenty Years; when God was pleased to raise up *Deborah* the Prophetess to their Relief.

*Q. By what Means did Deborah work their Deliver-ance?*

*A.* She encouraged *Barac* to levy an Army out of *Nephthalim* and *Zabulon*, and march against *Jabin*, who slew him and all his Army: On this Victory *Deborah* sang the Song, *Judges v.*

*Q. How long was it from the Beginning of Jabin's Op- 2746 pression to the End of this Peace?*

*A.* Forty Years, in which Time the Kingdom of *Argos*, which had continued 544 Years, was translated to *Mycanae*. Now also *Acrisius*, on consulting the Oracle, was told, that he should be slain by the Son of his Daughter *Danae*.

*Q. What Precautions did Acrisius take on this Admo-nition?*

*A.* He



*Anno* A. He shut her up in a Tower, that no Man should  
*Mun.* accompany her; and she being a very beautiful Lady,  
 it is feigned, that *Jupiter*, in a golden Shower, fell into  
 her Lap, and begat a Child of her.

Q. What is the Meaning of this Fiction?

A. Some King's Son, or other great Person, corrupted  
 her Keepers with Gold, and enjoyed her, of whom  
*Perseus* was born, who slew his Grandfather by Accident; and, to avoid the Infamy of Parricide in *Argos*,  
 changed Kingdoms with his Uncle *Pratus*, and built  
*Mycena*.

Q. What other memorable Actions are related of  
*Perseus*?

A. As he and his Soldiers sailed from *Peloponnesus*,  
 on an Adventure to *Africa*, *Medusa*, the Daughter of  
*Phoreus*, as she was hunting near the Lake *Tritan*, was  
 surprized and slain, whose Beauty, when *Perseus* beheld,  
 he order'd her Head to be embalm'd; and carried it into  
*Greece*; which so astonished the Beholders, as to occa-  
 sion the Fiction, that all who look'd on *Medusa's* Head  
 were turn'd into Stone.

Q. How did the Israelites act on the Death of *Deborah*  
 and *Barac*?

A. They return'd to their former impious Idolatry;  
 and the *Midianites*, assisted by the *Amalekites*, infested  
 their Land, and brought them into a State of Servitude;  
 so that they were forced to creep into the Caves of Moun-  
 tains, and such-like Places, for seven Years, when the Lord,  
 2753 by his Angel, stirred up *Gideon* the Son of *Joash*, after-  
 wards called *Jerubbaal*, to revenge their Cause.

Q. What Forces had he to oppose these powerful Enemies,  
 and by what means did he vanquish them?

A. He had but 300 select Persons, with whom he  
 began the Alarm, each of these, by *Gideon's* Appoint-  
 ment, carried a Trumpet, and a Light in a Pitcher; and  
 thus he marched to attack the Army of the *Midianites*,  
 which consisted of 32,000 Men, who, on seeing the  
 Lights, and hearing the Crack of so many Pitchers,  
 imagined the Army of *Israel* was very numerous, and  
 fled

slain before them, and were killed in great Numbers, *Anno* and two of their Princes, *Oreb* and *Zeb*, were taken *Mun.* and slain.

*Q. Did Gideon pursue this Advantage?*

*A.* He followed after them, till he and his Men were quite spent with Travel and Slaughter, and desired Relief from the Inhabitants of *Succoth* and *Penuel*, to refresh his Men, in order to overtake the other two Kings, who had saved themselves by Flight; but they refused to succour him.

*Q. Did he follow the Enemy any farther after this Ingratitude from his Brethren the Israelites?*

*A.* Yes, to the utmost; and finding *Zeba* and *Zalmunna* in *Karkor*, he took them Prisoners also, and afterwards caused them to be put to Death.

*Q. What Number of the Enemy were slain in this Pursuit?*

*A.* Twenty-seven Thousand; and after this *Gideon* took Revenge of the Elders of *Succoth*, and the Inhabitants of *Penuel*?

*Q. In what Manner did he use them, for their Unkindness to him?*

*A.* He put seventy Elders of *Succoth* to Death with unusual Torment, and shewed no Mercy to the Inhabitants of *Penuel*.

*Q. Is it not thought a little incredible, that Gideon, with 300 Men, should destroy 27,000 of the Canaanites?*

*A.* It may seem so on the first Sight; but we find these 300 Men only gave the first Alarm, and put the *Midianites* to Flight, and the rest of his Army came up to the Slaughter and Pursuit: For it is written, *The Men of Israel being gathered together out of Nephthali, and out of Ashur, and out of Manasseh, pursued them.*

*Q. How was Gideon received by the People on his Return from this Victory.*

*A.* They offered him the Sovereignty over them, which he refused; but desired them to bestow on him the *Golden Ear-rings* which every Man had gotten.

*Q. 70*

*Anno* Q. To what Use did he put these Ear-rings, and what  
*Mun.* was the Value of them?

*W* A. They weighed 2380 *L* our Money, and he converted them into a Garment of Gold, blue Silk, Purple, Scarlet, and fine Linnen, belonging to the High Priest only; and set up the same in his own City of *Ophra*, which drew *Israel* to Idolatry, and proved his Destruction.

Q. What famous Men lived in other Parts of the World, during the Time of this Judge?

A. *Egeus*, the Son of *Pandion*, reigned at *Athens*; *Euristheus* was King of *Mycæna*; which Kingdom, after his Death, fell into the Hands of *Atræus*, Son of *Pelops*, who with his Brother *Thyestes*, ruled over *Peloponnesus*.

Q. What is recorded of this *Atræus*?

A. He slew the Children of *Thyestes*, (on a Suspicion that he attempted both his Wife and Crown) and caused their Flesh to be dress'd, and feasted him therewith: What is wrote of *Dædalus* and *Icarus* is supposed to have been done about this Time also.

Q. Are not *Sphinx* and *Oedipus* said to have lived in the Days of *Gideon*?

A. Yes; *Sphinx* was a great Robber both by Sea and Land, and was subdued by *Oedipus*, who commanded the *Corinthian* Army. By the Riddles, she is said to have propounded, are meant the rocky and inaccessible Mountains which she defended; by *Oedipus's* solving them, his Victory over her. At this Time also *Hercules* is reported to have killed the Giant *Antæus*.

Q. Give a short Account of the famous Expedition of the Argonauts, which is fixed to have been made in the Time of *Gideon*?

A. *Pelias* the Son of *Neptune*, Uncle to *Jason*, reigning in *Iolcus*, a Town of *Thessaly*, was warned by the Oracle of *Apollo*, to beware of him who wore but one Shoe; and one Day sacrificing to *Neptune*, invited *Jason* to him, who, coming hastily, lost one Shoe in passing a Brook: Hereupon *Pelias* put to him this Question.

Q. What Course should be taken with the Person, of whom the Oracle adviseth to be careful?

A. *Jason*

*A.* Jason answered briefly, I would send him to *Anno Colchos*, to fetch the *Golden Fleece* : *Pelias* immediately *Mun.* commanded him to undertake the Voyage : Jason prepared for it, and had a Ship built by *Argos*, according to the Direction of *Pallas*, and procured all the valiantest Men of *Greece* to sail with him.

*Q.* What was the Name of this Ship ?

*A.* It was called *Argo*, and in the Cabin was a Table made of the Beech of *Dodona*, which, as the Fables say, could speak. They arrived first at *Lemnos*, where the Women of the Island had slain the Males, purposing to lead an *Amazonian* Life ; but the *Argonauts* found them very loving and friendly.

*Q.* Proceed with this Journal ?

*A.* From *Lemnos*, they came to *Myfia*, where they left *Hercules*, and *Polyphemus*, the Son of *Elates*, who went in Search of *Hylas*, the Darling of *Hercules*, who was ravished by the Nymphs. *Polyphemus* staid and built a Town in *Myfia*, called *Cios* ; but *Hercules* returned to the Ship.

*Q.* To what Parts did they sail from *Myfia* ?

*A.* They touched next at *Bithynia*, where *Amycus* was King, who, being a strong Man, obliged all Strangers to fight with him at *Whirl-Batts* ; with which Weapons he had killed many, but was now himself slain by *Pollux*. From hence they sailed to *Salmydessus*, a Town in *Thrace* ; where *Phineus* a Soothsayer lived, who was grievously tormented with the *Harpies*.

*Q.* What Sort of Animals were these ?

*A.* They were said to be a filthy Kind of Birds ; which had the Faces of Women, and long Talons ; and when *Phineus's* Table was spread, they came flying in, devouring and carrying away the greatest Part of the Victuals, and defiling the rest, so as it could not be eaten.

*Q.* Did the *Argonauts* endeavour to redress this Grievance ?

*A.* They bargained with *Phineus* to destroy the *Harpies* that perplexed him, provided he would give them Directions for their Voyage ; and they completed this



*Arno* this in the following Manner. They had with them two *Mun.* young Men called *Zetes* and *Calais*, who, as the Fable says, could fly; whom they order'd to draw their Swords, and then spread the Table; the *Harpies* coming down to play their usual Pranks, they pursued them through the Air, and slew them.

*Q.* After this, what Advice did *Phineas* give them for their future Safety in the Voyage?

*A.* As the Fable goes, he caution'd them to be careful of two dangerous and floating Rocks, called *Symplegades*; and gave Directions how they should escape them; which, when they had done, from this Time (as was decreed by the Gods, after the Passage of a Ship) the Rocks became fixed. Hence the *Argonauts* sailed to the *Mariandyni*, where *Lycus* the King entertained them kindly. Here *Typhis* the Pilot died; and *Aeneas* undertook to steer the Ship: So they passed by the River *Thermodon*, and arrived at *Colchos*.

*Q.* How did they manage now they were arrived at the Port whereto they were bound?

*A.* *Jason* went to *Æetes* King of *Colchos*, and demanded the *Golden Fleece* in the Name of *Pelias*: *Æetes* answered, If he alone would yoke two brazen Hoofed Bulls, which were given him by *Vulcan*, and breathed Fire; and also sow some *Dragons Teeth*, which *Minerva* had given him; then he should receive the *Fleece* as his Reward.

*Q.* Did *Jason* attempt to perform this dangerous Task?

*A.* While he was in great Perplexity about it, *Medæa*, the Daughter of *Æetes*, fell in Love with him, and on his Promise of marrying her, led him by Night to the Place where the *Golden Fleece* was; and he brought it into the Ship *Argos*; and with it *Medæa*, and her Brother *Abhyrtus*.

*Q.* Where was this *Fleece* kept?

*A.* It hung upon an Oak in the Grove of *Mars*, and was watched by a waking Dragon, which *Medæa*, by her Magic, cast into a Sleep.

*Q.* Dia



*Q. Did not Æetes, when he heard of the deceitful Practices of his Daughter, pursue them?* Anno Mun.

*A. Yes; but when Medea saw him draw near, she slew Absyrtus, and scatter'd his Limbs in divers Places, which Æetes staying to gather up, suffered them to escape.*

*Q. What Course did the Argonauts steer after this?*

*A. Jupiter, incensed at the Murder of Absyrtus, caused a great Tempest, which carried them out of their Knowledge; when the Table spoke to them, and said, the Anger of Jupiter would not abate, till they were cleansed by Circe, who dwelt in *Æsonia*. In their Passage thither, they sailed by the Coast of the *Syrens*, who sung to allure them; but all escaped excepting *Butes*, whom *Venus* ravished, and carried into *Sicily* to dwell—After many other Dangers, they came home to *Iolus*, having spent four Months in the Voyage.*

*Q. What secret Meaning is couched under this Fable?*

*A. Some, by this Journey of Jason, would understand the Mystery of the Philosophers Stone; others signify by Jason, that Wisdom and Moderation overcome all Dangers; but the Opinion of *Dercilus* seems most probable.* 2764

*Q. In what Manner does he explain it?*

*A. He says, that Jason, with the rest, did really go to rob Æetes at Colchos, and the Manner of those People getting Gold, was by placing Fleeces of Wool in the steep Torrents falling from Mount *Caucasus*, which preserved the Grains of Metal, and let the Water drain thro' them — That the Rocks, Sands, Straits, Currents, &c. in the Passage between *Greece* and *Pontus*, are poetically turned into *Bræzen Bulls*, armed *Men*, the *Dragon* cast asleep, &c. — and that the *Harpies*, *Syrens*, &c. were other Hazards they fell into.*

## C H A P. II.

Of Abimelech ; Lapithæ and Centaurs ;  
 Priamus and Hecuba ; Paris and Helena ;  
 Ægeus ; Theseus and Ariadne ; Medusa ;  
 Laius and Jocasta ; Oedipus ; Æteocles  
 and Polynices ; Adrastus ; Ægialeus ;  
 Jephtha ; Haddon ; Trojan War ; Samp-  
 son ; Eli ; Samuel ; Saul ; &c.

*Anno* **W**HO was made Judge over Israel after the Death  
*Mun.* of Gideon ?

2793 *A.* His Bastard Son, Abimelech, who calling to Mind  
 the Offer which the People had made to his Father, of  
 making him King over them, (by the Interest of his  
 Mother, who was a *Sechemitish* Concubine) stirred up  
 the Inhabitants of *Sechem*, in order to gain this Honour  
 to himself.

*Q.* In what Manner did they carry on their Design ?

*A.* They first borrowed seventy Pieces of Silver of  
 their Idol *Baalberith*, with which Abimelech hired a  
 Company of desperate Vagabonds, to assist him to  
 murder his Brethren, the Sons of Gideon, by his other  
 Wives.

*Q.* How many Sons had Gideon by his Wives ?

*A.* He had Seventy, and but one, called *Jotham*,  
 escaped Abimelech's Fury : By this detestable Slaughter  
 he usurped the Government.

*Q.* Did not Jotham endeavour to alienate the *Seche-*  
*mites* from this Tyrant, and to revenge the Death of his  
 Brethren ?

*A.* He had little Success herein ; but he prophesied,  
 what should befall them in the End, as how a Fire  
 should come out of the *Bramble*, and destroy the *Cedars*  
 of *Lebanon*.

*Q.* How

*Q. When was this Prophecy fulfilled?*

*A.* Sometime after, *Gaal* the Son of *Ebed* took *Sechem*, wherein their Idol *Baalberith* was worshipped; and, putting all the Inhabitants to the Sword, burnt the City to the Ground. *Amos. viii.*

*Q. Did Abimelech escape this Slaughter?*

*A.* He being mortally wounded in the Assault by a Stone, which a Woman threw over the Wall, commanded his Page to stab him, to avoid the Dishonour of dying by so feeble a Hand.

*Q. What other Wars were waged during Abimelech's Usurpation?*

*A.* The *Lapithæ* and *Centauri* made War against the *Thebans*. These Nations, being the first in those Parts who devised to bridle and ride upon *Horses*, were taken by such as had never seen *Horsemen* before, for individual Creatures, compounded of Men and Horses.

*Q. Who succeeded Abimelech as Judge of Israel?*

*A.* *Thola*, of the Tribe of *Issachar*, governed them twenty-three Years; after him *Jair* the *Gileadite* twenty-two Years. Of these Judges there is nothing material recorded. 2796

*Q. What famous Men lived in the Days of Jair?*

*A.* *Priamus* began to reign in *Troy*; and when *Hercules* sacked *Ilium*, he, with his Sister *Hesperia*, were taken Prisoners; but afterwards being ransomed, he greatly strengthened the City, and enlarged his Dominions so far, as he became Supreme Lord of *Lesser Asia*.

*Q. Who did he marry, and how many Sons were born to him?*

*A.* He married *Hecuba*, Daughter of *Cisseus* King of *Thrace*, and had by her seventeen Sons, one of which, called *Paris*, took away *Helena* the Wife of *Menelaus*. This Rape occasion'd the *Trojan War*. *Theseus*, the tenth King of *Athens*, began his Reign likewise in the Time of *Jair*.

*Q. What memorable Actions are mention'd of Theseus?*

*A.* When *Minos*, King of *Crete*, had so far subdued the *Athenians*, as to force them to send him every Year

*seven of their Sons for Tribute, whom he inclosed in a Min. Labyrinth, and who are said to be devour'd by Minotaur, (probably because the Sons of Taurus, which he begat on Pasiphae the Queen, had Charge over them) Theseus desired to be sent amongst them, hoping by his Valour to deliver the rest, and free his Country from that Slavery.*

*Q. Did his Father Aegeus consent to this dangerous Attempt?*

*A. Yes, but ordered him, if he returned with Safety and Victory, to carry a white Sail, instead of the mournful black one with which he left Athens.*

*Q. What Success had Theseus in this Enterprize?*

*A. On his coming to Minos, Ariadne, the King of Crete's Daughter, fell in Love with him, and gave him a Ballum of Thread, by which he conducted himself thro' all the Turnings of the Labyrinth, where he slew Minotaur, and then return'd to Athens: But having forgotten the Instructions his Father gave him about the Sail, and Aegeus seeing the Ship coming with the black Sail, he threw himself into the Sea, which was afterwards, from him, called Aegeum.*

*Q. Give an Account of the War at Thebes in this Age, which is said by some to be the most ancient that ever Greek Poet, or Historian, wrote of?*

*A. Oedipus, the Son of Laius, King of Thebes, having been sent away from his Parents when an Infant, on Account of what an Oracle foretold concerning him, did afterwards, by contending for the Way in a narrow Passage with his Father, kill him, not knowing who he was; and when he became King of Thebes, he married his Father's Wife Jocasta, not knowing her to be his own Mother.*

*Q. Had he any Children by this incestuous Marriage?*

*A. Two Sons, Eteocles and Polynices; and as soon as Oedipus understood, by good Circumstances, the Murder and Incest he had committed, he pulled out his Eyes for Grief, and his Wife and Mother slew herself; then the two Brothers, above-mentioned, agreed to reign alternately, one the first Year, and the other the next, &c.*

*But*

But when *Eteocles* had reigned the first Year, he refused *Anna* to resign the Government to his Brother ; whereupon *Men. Polynices* fled to *Argos* to seek Redress.

*Q. Who was at this Time King of Argos ?*

*A. Adrastus*, who assembled his Forces, and marched with him towards *Thebes*. When he arrived at *Cytheron*, he sent an Ambassador to *Eteocles*, to require him to perform the Agreement he had made with *Polynices* ; and, on his Refusal, laid Siege to the City, when it came to a Battle, in which many were slain on both Sides, and then it was agreed, that the two Brothers should decide the Quarrel in Single Combat ; wherein they slew each other.

*Q. Did their Deaths put an End to the War ?*

*A. No* ; another Battle was fought afterward, in which many of the Princes of the *Argives* were slain, and their Army wholly routed. *Adrastus* fled to *Athens*, to desire their Aid, and to recover the dead Bodies of the *Argives*, which the *Thebans* would not suffer to be buried.

*Q. Did the Athenians comply with his Request ?*

*A. They* immediately sent out an Army, under the Conduct of *Theseus*, who took *Thebes*, and restored the Bodies of the *Argives* to sepulchre.

*Q. Did the Sons of the Argives, which were slain in this War, take no farther Revenge of the Thebans ?*

*A. Egialeus*, Son of *Adrastus*, about ten Years after, raised an Army, and came before *Thebes*, but was opposed by *Laodamas* Son of *Eteocles*, whom he slew in this Battle : But the City was saved from utter Destruction by *Thersander* the Son of *Polynices* ; for he persuaded the Citizens, who were fled, to return, and reigned over them.

*Q. Who became the next Judge of Israel after Jair ?*

*A. The Israelites* having been more wicked and idolatrous than ever during their last Years of Peace, God was pleased to correct them now by the *Ammonites* ; but they prevailed with *Jephtha* to lead the *Gileadites* to War against.



*Anno* against *Ammon*, on this Condition, that they should make *Mun.* him their Governor after Victory.

Q. *What Success had Jephtha in this War?*

A. He soon vanquish'd them, and forced them over the Mountains of *Arabia*. After this Victory he is said to have made the rash *Vow*, mentioned *Judges xi*.

Q. *Was Jephtha made Judge over Israel after this Victory, as it had been covenanted with him?*

A. The Tribe of *Ephraim*, out of Envy, quarrel'd with *Jephtha*, and he was forced to give them Battle, in which he slew forty-two thousand; and then judged *Israel* six Years, and died. To him succeeded *Izban*, who ruled seven Years; then *Elon* was their Judge ten Years; all which Time *Israel* had Peace. After these *Hebdon* was their Judge, who died in the eighth Year of his Government, and then succeeded an *Interregnum*; during which, it is supposed, the *Israelites* were held in Servitude by the *Philistines*, till their Deliverance by *Samson*.

Q. *What remarkable Actions happened in the World in the Time of these Judges?*

A. The *Trojan War* began about this Time say some, but others place it above forty Years higher.

Q. *What was the Occasion of this War?*

A. *Tyndareus* had a very beautiful Daughter called *Helen*, to whom most of the principal Men in *Greece* made their Addresses, and bound themselves in an Oath, that whosoever's Fortune it should be to marry her, if she was taken away from her Husband, (which was a common Practice in those Days) they would all join their Help to recover her.

Q. *Who gained her for a Wife?*

A. Her Father gave her free Choice of a Husband, and she fixed her Affections upon *Menelaus*. *Paris*, the Son of *Priamus*, hearing of her extraordinary Beauty, and incited by *Venus*, i. e. *Lust*, found Means to carry her away; and this Rape brought all the Powers of *Greece* against that City.

Q. Of

*Q. Of what Force did this confederate Army consist? Anno*

*A. They had a Fleet of a thousand two hundred Mun. Sail, and a hundred thousand Men; but before they came to a Rupture with the Trojans, they sent Menelaus and Ulysses, Ambassadors to Troy, to demand Helen, and the Goods that were taken with her out of Menelaus's House.*

*Q. What Answer did they receive from this Embassy?*

*A. They sent Word she was not there, but in Egypt; hereupon the Trojans thought themselves deluded, and made War upon them.*

*Q. Was Helen in Troy at this Time?*

*A. It is very probable she was not, because Paris, in his Return with her, was driven by foul Weather on the Coast of Egypt, where, being accused of the Rape before Proteus, then King there, Helen, and the Goods taken with her, were detained, and Paris dismissed.*

*Q. Who commanded in Chief in this Expedition?*

*A. Agamemnon, whom Calchas, a Run-a-gate Trojan, desired to sacrifice his Daughter to appease, as he pretended, the Anger of Diana, who withstood their Passage; but it is difficult to ascertain, whether this young Princess Iphigenia fell a Victim to these Divinations, or not.*

*Q. How long were these Confederate Princes before they made themselves Masters of Troy?*

*A. They seem, during the first nine Years of this War, to have plundered the Country round, and enriched themselves, and not to have attacked Troy till the tenth Year; and whether it was taken then, by the Treason of Aeneas and Antenor, or by the Wooden Horse, as Poets and common Fame have delivered, is uncertain.*

*Q. What Account have you of the general Losses on each Side in this War?*

*A. Doubtless there were great Numbers of Men slain, and many Generals and valiant Commanders, whose Exploits are beautifully represented and magnified by Homer.*

*Anno* Q. *As it was the Vanity of many Cities in Greece, Mun. and other Nations in those Parts, to strive to bring their Descents from some of the Princes who warred at Troy; Which are those Nations, which in all Probability came of the Trojans?*

A. The *Albanes* in *Italy* (and from them the *Romans*) were brought into that Country by *Aeneas*. The *Venetians* were first seated in *Padua* by *Antenor*, and the *Chaonians* planted in *Epirus*, by *Helenus* Son of King *Priamus*.

Q. *How many of the Princes of Greece returned from this War?*

A. First *Agamemnon*; but he, on his Arrival, was slain by his Wife, and the Adulterer *Aegisthus*, who had usurped his Kingdom: *Nestor* and *Pyrhus* also, whom *Orestes* afterwards slew. *Menelaus* went into *Egypt* to fetch *Helen*; and *Ulysses*, after wandering about ten Years, came home in a poor Condition, and had hard Work to recover the Mastership of his own House. The rest either perished by the Way, or were driven into Exile.

Q. *What is said of the Birth of Sampson, who became the next Judge of Israel after Hebdon?*

A. God forbade the Wife of *Manoah* his Mother to drink Wine or strong Drink, or to eat any unclean Meats, after she was with Child of him, because those Liquors hinder their Strength, and weaken Children in the Womb.

Q. *What memorable Things are recorded of him?*

A. He was twice betrayed by the Importunity and deceitful Tears of his Wives; by the first he lost Part of his Goods, by the second his Life; for he being made  
2887 blind and a Prisoner by her Treason, ended his Days to be avenged of his Enemies, by pulling down the Pillars of the House, at a Feast, where they sent for him to deride him.

Q. *Did he deliver Israel from the Oppression of the Philistines?*

A. In some Sort he revenged their Cause; for he slew thirty of them in his first Attempt, then burnt their Corn  
in

in Harvest, and afterwards gave them a great Overthrow *Ann* upon it: But notwithstanding these serviceable Actions, *Mun.* the Men of Judah took him, bound him, and, out of *Wm.* Fear, delivered him to the *Philistines*: But as soon as he was loosen'd, he slew 1000 of them with the *Jaw-Bone of an Ass*. His Actions are written at large, Judges xii, xiv, xv, xvi.

*Q. Who succeeded Sampson as Judge over Israel?*

*A. Eli the Priest, to whom Samuel foretold the De-* 2888  
*struction of his House for the Wickedness of his Sons,* which he suppressed not.

*Q. How was this Prophecy of Samuel fulfilled?*

*A. The Lord was pleased soon after to bring the Philistines upon them, and they slew 34,000, among whom were the Sons of Eli; and when he heard of this Defeat, he fell from his Chair, and brake his Neck.*

*Q. What more have you concerning Eli?*

*A. He was the first of the Stock of Ithamar, the Son of Aaron, who obtained the High Priesthood. All his Predecessors being of the Race of Eleazar the elder Brother of Ithamar. Now it came to pass also, that the Ark (whereby God himself was represented) fell into the Hands of the Heathens.*

*Q. Whither did the Philistines carry the Ark?*

*A. To Azotus; and there set it up in the House of their Idol Dagon; but on the first Night the Idol fell out of his Place, and lay under the Ark: The next Day being replaced, it fell a second Time, and the Head and Hands were broken off. After this, God struck the Philistines with the Hemorrhoids, of which they died in great Numbers; and then, by general Consent, the Ark was removed to Gath.*

*Q. What was the Consequence of this Removal?*

*A. The Plague was more grievous and mortal there: than it had been at Azotus; so that it was carried thence to Ekron; but they also felt the same Smart, For there was Death and Destruction throughout the City. In the End, by the Advice of the Priests, they resolved to return the Ark, with other Gifts, to the God of Israel.*

Anno *Q. In what Manner did the Philistines send it back to*  
 Mun. *Israel?*

*A.* They durst not drive, or direct it to any certain Place; but ordered a new Carriage to be framed, and yoked thereto two new *Milch Cows*, thinking they would go where their Calves led them, and not be forced any other Way; and having got ready the *golden Hemorrhoids*, and the *golden Mice*, left them to draw the Ark where o Nature directed.

*Q. Which Way did these Kine travel with it?*

*A.* They went directly towards *Bethshemesh*, into the Field of one *Joshua*, and there stood still: But God spared not even his own People, in that they presumed to look into the Ark there; for in that Place perished 50,070. From hence it was carried to *Kirjathjearim*, and placed in the House of *Abinadab*, where it remained twenty Years, in the Charge of *Eleazar* his Son, till *David* brought it to *Jerusalem*.

*Q. Who became Governor of Israel after the Death of Eli?*

*A.* *Samuel*, whose Mother *Hannab* being long fruitless, obtained of God by Prayers and Tears; and according to her Vow, dedicated him to his Service, even from the Dug.

*Q. Did Samuel wage any War against the Philistines?*

*A.* In the Beginning of his Government, they, having heard of *Samuel's* Preparation for War, marched with their Army towards *Mizpah*, and came in View, while he was performing his Sacrifice; but it pleased God, by Thunder and Tempest, to disperse them, and *Samuel* led the *Israelites* to prosecute the Victory.

*Q. What was done by Samuel in Memory of this Success?*

*A.* He erected a Monument in the Place, which he called *Ebenexer*, i. e. the Stone of Assistance; and then pursuing the Advantage of the Defeat, he recovered many Cities, which had long been possessed by the *Philistines*, then made Peace with the *Amorites* and the *Canaanites*; and, having thus settled Affairs, he

put



put off the Weight of his Government from himself, to *Anno*  
his two Sons *Joth* and *Abijah*. *Mur.*

*Q. How did his Sons dispense Justice and Judgment among the People?*

*A.* Thirsting after Riches, they set the Law at a Price, and sold it to the best Bidder; hereon the Elders of *Israel* prayed *Samuel* to consent to a Change of their Government, and desired a *King* to rule over them.

*Q. How did Samuel act in this Matter?*

*A.* He first sought Counsel of God, then endeavour'd to dissuade them from the Design; and, lastly, told them from God's Revelation, the Inconveniences and Miseries which should befall them; but they still persisted herein, till *Samuel* at length had a Warrant from God, to consent to their Importunities.

*Q. Who was now elected King of Israel?*

*A.* God foretold *Samuel*, that he would present to him a Man of the Land of *Benjamin*, whom he should anoint; and ordered him to go the Day before to *Ramath-Sophim*, and prepare a Feast for his Entertainment.

*Q. How did Samuel act on this Occasion?*

*A.* He went to *Ramath*, prepared a Banquet, and stood at the Gate of the City; and there came to him a Person named *Saul*, whom *Samuel* had never before seen; but God made him know it was the same he had foretold him of: *Saul* meeting *Samuel* in the Gate, asked him, in what Part of the City the *Seer* dwelt, for he was in Search of his Father's Asses, and not of a Kingdom.

*Q. What Answer was made by Samuel to Saul?*

*A.* He told him he was the Man he sought, and desired him to go before him to the *High Place*, when *Samuel* placed him according to his Degree, conferred with him about the Affairs of the Kingdom, and the next Morning anointed him King of *Israel*.

*Q. After this, did Saul return Home again?*

*A.* Yes; and *Samuel* foretold him every Incident he should meet with in the Way; and that he should hereafter be a Partaker of God's Spirit, and Prophecy with them;

*Ann* them ; and thereby his Disposition should be changed  
*Mun.* from the Vulgar, into that which became a King, elect-  
 ed and favoured of God.

2926 *Q. How did Saul govern the Kingdom of Israel ?*

*A.* As soon as he came to the Crown he was inform-  
 ed, that *Nabab*, King of the *Amorites*, was coming to  
 besiege *Jabes Gilead* : Hereon he summoned the Forces  
 of *Israel*, and hewing a Yoke of Oxen in Pieces, sent  
 Messengers over all the Country, protesting, — *That*  
*whoever came not forth after Saul and Samuel, so should*  
*his Oxen be served.*

*Q. What Effect had this Threatening upon the People ?*

*A.* In seven Days he procured an Army of 330,000  
 Men, with which he passed *Jordan* in the latter Part of  
 the Day, and then divided them into three Parts ; and  
 marching all Night, in the Morning-Watch surprized  
 the Army of *Nabab* the *Ammonite*, and put them to the  
 Sword, till the Heat of the Day, and the Weariness of  
 his Troops, obliged him to give over the Pursuit.

*Q. What additional Honours did he obtain after this Victory ?*

*A.* The People were so far in Love with their new  
 King, that now they threatened to kill those who mur-  
 mured against his Election ; after this the Army remo-  
 ved, and *Samuel* summoned the People to meet at *Gil-  
 gal*, where they again confirmed *Saul's* Title ; and to  
 strengthen himself, he took a Guard of 3000 chosen  
 Men, and assigned 1000 to attend his Son *Jonathan* at  
*Gibeah*, the Place of his Nativity.

*Q. What other Exploits were done by Saul and Jona-  
 than ?*

*A.* *Jonathan* surprizing a Garrison of the *Philistines*,  
 greatly provoked them, and they got together 30,000  
 armed Chariots, and 6000 Horse, and invaded *Juda* :  
 This sudden Invasion so terrified the *Israelites*, that some  
 hid themselves in Caves, and others fled over *Jordan* ;  
 but *Saul*, by *Samuel's* Appointment, with 2000 of his  
 Guards, and many other People, staid at *Gilgal*, in  
*Benjamin*.

*Q. How*

*Q. How long was Saul ordered to tarry here?*

*Anno*

*A. Seven Days; but when the last Day was in Part* *Mun.*  
spent, and he perceived his Soldiers to desert him; he removed, and hereby acted in Disobedience to God's Command, as delivered to him by *Samuel*; who sharply reproved him for it, and told him the Kingdom should be taken from his Posterity, and be given to another.

*Q. Whither did Saul go from Gilgal?*

*A. When Samuel was come to him, they returned to Gibeab, and there Saul took a View of his Army, and found it to consist only of 600 Men, the rest having deserted; and there was neither Sword or Spear, but only in the Hand of Saul and his Son Jonathan; for the Philistines had not left them a Smith in all Israel.*

*Q. Did they attempt any Thing against the Philistines, while they were in this desperate Condition?*

*A. Saul kept himself in his own City of Gibeab, as a Place of Strength; but Jonathan, encouraged by God, scaled a Mountain, whereon a Company of Philistines were lodged, (their main Army being encamped in a Plain adjoining) and with his Esquire only, slew twenty of them; whereon the main Body, ignorant of the Cause, fled in Confusion, and, through Fear and Jealousy, slew one another; and Saul himself, being apprized of this Disorder amongst the Enemy, attacked them in their Flight, and obtained a glorious Victory over them.*

*Q. Was not Saul greatly encouraged by this unexpected Victory over the Philistines?*

*A. Yes; and the Philistines, from this Overthrow, keeping themselves quiet for some Time, Saul subdued the Ammonites, Edomites, Moabites, and the Arabians of Zabab; and now, on assembling his Forces, he could muster 210,000 Men.*

*Q. What was the next Enterprize he attempted with this Army?*

*A. On the Command of God, given to him by Samuel, he invaded Amalec, and destroyed all that Part 2930  
of Arabia Petraea, from Havilah towards Tygris, unto Shur, which bordereth upon Egypt; but whereas Saul  
was*

*Anno* was instructed by *Samuel*, to destroy this Nation without  
*Man.* Compassion; he not only spared *Agag*, but reserved the  
 best of the *Beasts* and Spoil of the Country, under Pre-  
 tence of offering them in *Sacrifice* to the living God.

Q. *How was Saul punished for this his second Dis-  
 obedience?*

A. *Samuel* told him, God would take the *Crown*  
 from him; and after this he cut *Agag* to Pieces before  
 the Lord at *Gilgal*, then departed to *Ramath*, and came  
 no more to see Saul, until the Day of his Death.

Q. *What other Occurrences are recorded of Saul, after  
 this his Rejection?*

294<sup>1</sup> A. *Samuel* by God's Direction, having anointed *Da-  
 vid*, one of the Sons of *Ishai*, King over *Israel*, the *Phi-  
 listines* resolved on another Trial of their Fortunes, and  
 marched against *Saul*; when after some Skirmishes, it  
 was agreed to decide the Matter by a single Combat:  
 Here *Goliath*, of *Gath*, a mighty Giant, undertook to de-  
 fy the whole Army of *Israel*, and made way for *David*,  
 whom *Samuel* had anointed, to have a famous Entrance  
 in publick Notice of the People.

Q. *How did David engage with this Champion?*

A. With no other Arms, offensive or defensive, than  
 a Sling and a Stone, he overthrew this haughty Giant,  
 and with his own Sword struck off his Head; whereup-  
 on the *Philistines* fled.

Q. *Did not David, by being anointed King before the  
 Death of Saul, and by this Action, draw upon himself the  
 Indignation of his Master?*

A. *Saul* sought all possible Means to destroy him;  
 and murdered *Abimelech* for relieving him, and would  
 have slain his own Son for pleading his Innocency; and  
 the more to express his Impiety towards God, he went  
 for Counsel to the *Witch* of *Endor*; but soon after, he,  
 his three Sons, and his faithfullest Servants, were slain  
 by the *Philistines*, and their Bodies were hung over the  
 Walls of *Bethsan*, till they were stolen and buried by  
 the grateful *Gileadites*.

CHAP. III.

*Of the Dorians, Æolians and Iones; Greeks called Hellenes; Hercules; Homer and Hesiod; David; Joab; Absalom; Achitophel; Shimei; Solomon. Of the building of the Temple; the Rise of the East-India Trade; Ephesus; Rehoboam; Division of Judah and Israel; Abissha; Baasha; Benhadad; Jehoshaphat, &c.*

**W**HAT was doing in the other Parts of the World, *Anno during the Time of Samuel and Saul?* *Mun.*

*A.* About the 11th of Samuel, *Aeneas Sylvius*, the Son of *Posthumus*, began his Reign over the *Latines*, in *Alba*; and *Derclius* in *Affyria*; in this Age also the *Dores* obtained *Peloponnesus*.

*Q.* Who were these People called *Dores*?

*A.* Greece was anciently possessed by three Tribes, the *Ionians*, *Dorians*, and *Æolians*; at length it was called *Hellas*, and the People *Hellenes*, from *Hellen*, the Son of *Deucalion*, Lord of the Country *Phthiotis* in *Thessaly*. *He'llen* begat three Sons, *Xuthus*, *Dorlus*, and *Æolus*, the former being banished by his Brethren, came to *Athens*, and married the Daughter of King *Eriethens*, and by her had two Sons, *Achæus* and *Ion*; *Achæus* fled into *Peloponnesus*, and seating himself in *Laconia*, gave Name to that Region.

*Q.* What became of those who took their Names from *Dorus*, *Æolus*, and *Ion*?

*A.* The *Æoles* inhabited *Bæotia*: The *Dores* after leaving *Thessaly*, seated themselves about *Parnassus*, and at length became Masters of the Countries round *Lacedæmon*: *Ion* married *Helice*, the Daughter of *Solinus*, King of *Scycionia*, and built *Ægialia*; but at this Time, the



*Arno the Doræ assisting the Heraclidæ, drove both the Iones Mun. and Achæans out of Laconia and Peloponnesus.*

Q. *Who were the Heraclidæ?*

A. They were of the Race of Hercules, whose Descendants held the Kingdom of Sparta 700 Years. Strange Things are told of their Father Hercules, and his twelve great Labours, which must be allegorically understood; for there seems to be many Persons called Hercules, all whose Exploits were ascribed by the Greeks to the Son of Almena.

Q. *What other famous Men lived in this Age?*

A. Homer and Hesiod. Homer was an excellent and learned Poet; but there are many different Opinions concerning the Time when he lived. He was called Melesigenes from the Place of his Birth; and at length Homer, from his being blind in his latter Days, because blind Men follow a Guide; which Signification, among others, is in the Verb *ἡμῶν*: And it seems as if he and Hesiod were Contemporaries.

Q. *What Opposition did David meet with in Israel, after the Death of Saul?*

A. Abner, who was Saul's General, set up Ithobsebeth against him; and David only made a defensive War till Abner passed Jordan, but then sent his chief Commander Jacob after him, where they came to a Battle, in which Abner lost 360 Men, and Joab but 20, whereof Asabel his Brother was one.

Q. *Did this Victory put an End to the Civil War?*

A. No; it lasted some Years after; but at length Abner being reconciled to David, was murdered by Joab; on which Ithobsebeth's Party despairing of future Success, slew him also, and fled to David, presenting his Head to him.

Q. *Were these two Murders occasioned by David's Order?*

A. Neither of them; for he much lamented the Death of Abner, with this publick Imprecation; *Let his Blood fall on the Head of Joab, and all his Father's House,*  
 &c.

&c. And he ordered the two Captains, who brought *Anna* the Head of *Ishbosheth*, to be put to Death. *Mun.*

*Q. What was the first Enterprize David undertook, when he was established in the Kingdom?*

*A.* He first marched against the *Jebusites*, and having made himself Master of Fort *Zion*, (which was afterwards called the City of *David*) he became Lord of *Jerusalem*, and expelled them out of that City.

2957

*Q. How long had the Jebusites held Jerusalem?*

*A.* It does not clearly appear when it was first built; but it was a principal City in *Josua's* Time, and had been in Possession of these People ever since; but when *David* took it, he changed the Name of it, from *Jebusalem* to *Jerusalem*, which the *Greeks* called *Hierosolyma*: He also strengthened it with a *Citadel*, and beautified it with many *Palaces*.

*Q. What additional Honour was conferr'd upon David, after these Conquests?*

*A.* He received *Ambassadors* and *Presents* from *Hiram* King of *Tyre*. He also took divers other *Concubines*, and married more *Wives*, by whom he had ten Sons in *Jerusalem*, besides six by his former *Wives*, during the seven Years he reigned in *Hebron*. He was also now anointed King of *Juda* as well as of *Israel*.

*Q. Did not this draw the Envy of the Philistines upon him?*

*A.* They attacked him at two several Times, but were in both Engagements repulsed with Loss: And now *David* got together 30,000 chosen *Israelites*, to conduct the *Ark* from the House of *Abinadab*, in *Gibeon*, to *Jerusalem*; and, after three Years, it was brought into the City with great Solemnity, *Sacrifices*, *Musick*, and *Dancing*, in which *David* bore a Part, and was hereupon derided by *Michol* his Wife, who told him in Scorn, That he was uncovered as a Fool, in the Eyes of the Maidens his Servants.

*Q. What was the next Thing David set about, after he had brought away the Ark?*

*A.* He

*Anno Mun.* *A.* He consulted with the Prophet *Nathan*, for building the *Temple*, and though it was forbidden him, because he was a *Man of War*, and had shed *Blood*, yet his pious Design was so well accepted of God, that he had the happy Promise of an everlasting *Throne*, which should be established in his Seed. After this, he defeated the *Philistines* in five Battles successively and then destroyed the *Moabites*.

*Q.* Where did David lead his Army after these Victories?

*A.* Against *Hadadezer*, Son of *Rebop*, King of Syria *Zobab*, whom he subdued, and became Lord of *Damascus*. In this War, the Syrians had 100,000 Men slain before he forced them to Tribute; and now having beaten the *Arabians*, and *Mesopotamians*, from the Confederacy of *Ammon*, he sent *Joab* to destroy that Country, and besiege *Rabbah*, afterwards *Philadelphia*.

*Q.* What Success had Joab in this Expedition?

*A.* He soon took the City, and therein the King's Crown, which weighed a Talent of Gold: This David set upon his own Head; and carried away with him the rest of the Riches and Spoils taken in these Wars, to *Jerusalem*, to dedicate them unto the Lord God.

*Q.* How were the Inhabitants of this City treated by David and Joab?

*A.* With extream Rigour, and as Heathen Idolaters: for some of them he tore with Harrows, some he cast into Brick-Kilns, and others he sowed asunder.

*Q.* How did David behave himself after these wonderful Successes; for now he had no apparent Enemy to molest his Peace?

*A.* He now began to forget his former Miseries, and the Mercies of God, and gave a loose to his vicious Inclinations; and added the Murder of *Uriah* to the Adultery he committed with his Wife. On this Occasion it was, *Nathan* propounded to him his own Crime in the Person of another, that took the poor Man's Sheep, who had none else.

*Q.* How did God afflict David for this Impiety?

*A.* He

*A.* He first lost the *Child* of Adultery, which he be-<sup>Anno</sup> got of *Bathsheba*; then one of his *Sons*, named *Amnon*,<sup>Mun.</sup> ravished his own *Sister*; and soon after, *Abshlom* his Brother murder'd him, and fled; and when, by the Interposition of *Joab*, he was brought again into the King his Father's Favour, he, by the Instigation and Villany of *Achitophel*, rebelled against him, and proclaim'd himself *King*; but at length was killed in Battle by *Joab*, for which *Loss David* mourned exceedingly.

*Q.* What other remarkable Acts are recorded of David?

*A.* He took *Amasa* into Favour, who was his Son *Abshlom's* General; he pardoned *Shimei*, who reviled him to his Face; and accepted of *Mephibosheth's* Excuse, who had been falsely accused by *Ziba*; then he delivered *Saul's* Sons to the *Gibeonites*, whom they hung up in Revenge of their Father's Cruelty; and by this the Succession of the Kingdom of *Juda* and *Israel* was secured to the House of *David*.

*Q.* How long had David enjoyed the Blessings of Peace after the Death of *Abshlom*?

*A.* About seven Years, when he again displeased God, by numbering the People in Ostentation of his Power, for he sent *Joab* with other of his Captains, who after nine Months and twenty Days travel, returned with an 2986 Account of all his Subjects fit to bear Arms.

*Q.* To what Number did they amount at this Time?

*A.* To one Million, three hundred thousand.

*Q.* What was his Punishment for this Pride?

*A.* He had his Choice of three, either seven Years Famine, an unsuccessful War for three Years, or a general Pestilence for three Days; and he chose the last, by which seventy thousand Persons perished.

*Q.* How old was David at this Time?

*A.* He was now grown very weak and feeble, and was advised to lie in the Arms of a healthful young Maiden, to keep him warm, though he was in a Manner bed-ridden; and *Adonijah*, his eldest Son, having brought over *Joab*, and *Abiathar* the Priest, to his Interest, began

*Anno* gan to prepare for his Establishment in the Kingdom at-  
*Mun.* ter his Father's Death.

Q. *What was done by David to prevent this Design?*

A. He called to him *Zadec* the Priest, *Nathan* the Prophet, and *Benaiah* the Captain of his Guard, and gave them Charge to anoint *Solomon*; and set him on the Mule he himself used to ride, and shew him to the People; of which *Adonijah* being informed, abandoned his Assistants, and fled to the Horns of the Altar; and *Solomon* for the present pardoned him.

Q. *What were the last Acts of David?*

A. He summoned the Princes of the Tribes of *Israel*, and told them his Design of building the Temple, and produced the Model of the Work, as appointed by God himself, which was approved of by them: And whereas he had given three thousand Talents of Gold, and seven thousand of Silver; they added to it seven thousand of Gold, and ten thousand of Silver, besides Brass, Iron, and Jewels, heartily rejoicing in so religious a Work. Then he set forth to them his own Title to the Kingdom, and told them God himself had appointed *Solomon* to be his Successor.

Q. *What Advice did David give to Solomon, who was now anointed King of Judah and Israel?*

A. He bid him be cautious of *Joab*, who had insulted him, and slew his Son *Absalom*, contrary to his  
 2990 Command, and unjustly killed *Abner* and *Amasa*: He also ordered him to take off *Shimei*, and then died, having reigned forty Years, seven in *Hebron*, and thirty-three at *Jerusalem*.

Q. *What became of Joab and Shimei afterwards?*

A. *Benaiah*, the Son of *Jeboiadab*, pulled *Joab* from the Sanctuary, and cut him in pieces; and as soon as *David* was laid in his Grave, *Solomon* slew *Shimei*.

Q. *How much Treasure did David leave to his Son Solomon towards building the Temple of Jerusalem?*

A. A Sum exceeding all Belief, but for the Testimony of the Scriptures; a hundred thousand Talents of Gold,



Gold, a thousand thousand Talents of Silver, and Brass *Anno*  
and Iron surpassing all Weight. *Mun*

*Q.* Is there no Account given by what means he was  
thought able to amass such immense Wealth?

*A.* He was in himself frugal, and made the utmost  
Profit of all he had; but when he conquered Edom, he  
became Master of two Sea-port Towns on the Red-Sea,  
viz. Elath and Esfongeber, and taking the Advantage  
of their Situation, traded to India, whence he brought  
vast Treasures.

*Q.* Are not Ophir and Tarshish mentioned in Scripture  
as two Places from whence this Trade was carried on?

*A.* From the former David drew much Profit, and  
Solomon had from thence in one Voyage four hundred  
and fifty Talents of Gold, which amounts to 3,240,000*l.*  
our Money.

*Q.* Which were the principal Fountains of all those vast  
Treasures, which David and Solomon acquired?

*A.* They were all the Trade of Africa, Arabia, Per-  
sia, and India, which grew to so high a Pitch under  
David's Management, and which he drew to these two  
Ports, and from thence to Jerusalem.

*Q.* To whom was this Trade transferr'd, when  
Tiglath-Pileser, King of Nineveh, dispossessed the Jews  
of it?

*A.* First to the Syrians, but it is not said at what  
Place their principal Mart was fixed; at length we find  
the whole of it engross'd by the Tyrians.

*Q.* Who enjoy'd it after them?

*A.* When the Ptolemys prevail'd in Egypt, they did  
(by building Berenice, Myas-Hormos, and other Ports on  
the Western Side of the Red-Sea, over against Elath  
and Esfongeber) draw all this Trade into that Kingdom,  
and fixed the chief Mart at Alexandria.

*Q.* How was this marine Traffic carried on then?

*A.* Through the Red-Sea, and the Mouth of the  
Nile; but a little above 200 Years since, a Way was  
found out to sail to those Parts by the Cape-of-Good-  
Hope: After this the Portuguese managed this Trade  
for

*Anno* for some Time; but now it is in a Manner wholly got  
*Mun.* into the Hands of the *English* and *Dutch*.

Q. Give some Account of the most material Transacti-  
 ons in other Parts of the World, during the Time of  
 David?

A. About the 14th Year of his Reign, died Codrus,  
 the last King of the *Athenians*, to whom succeeded the  
 first Prince of those called *Medontidee*, without regal  
 Title.

Q. What Reason mov'd the *Athenians* to change their  
 Government?

A. When the *Grecians* of *Doris* asked Council of  
 the Oracle for Success in their Wars against the *Athenians*,  
 it was answered, That they should undoubtedly conquer  
 them, when they could obtain any Victory, and pre-  
 serve the *Athenian* King alive; of which Codrus being  
 informed, entered the Camp of the *Dorians*, and killed  
 the first Man he met, and was afterwards cut to  
 Pieces.

Q. Go on with the Accounts of other Places.

A. *Ixion* reigned at *Corinth*, and *Agis* at *Lacedemon*;  
 He, on the Citizens of *Helas* in *Laconia* refusing to  
 pay him Tribute, condemned them and theirs to per-  
 petual Slavery; and all that afterwards were brought  
 into the same Bondage, were called *Helotes* or *Slaves*.

Q. Whence came the Original of the Word Slave now  
 in use amongst us?

A. From the *Sclavi*, who coming out of *Sarmatia*,  
 now called *Russia*, conquered *Illyria*, and there settled,  
 calling themselves *Slavos*, which signifies in that Lan-  
 guage, *Glorious*; but being driven out thence by the  
*Italians*, and many taken Captive, they were called  
 also *Slaves* by way of Reproach, in which Sense the  
 Word is now current in many Countries.

Q. How did Solomon act on his ascending the Throne  
 of David?

A. He first put to Death his Brother *Adonijah*, and  
 displaced *Abiathar*, who had been of his Party when he  
 attempted to secure the Crown to himself: Thus hav-  
 ing

ing established himself in the Kingdom, he took the Daughter of *Vaphres*, King of *Egypt*, to Wife, and offered a Thousand Sacrifices at *Gibeon*, where God appeared to him in a *Dream*, and bid him demand what he would at his Hands. Anno  
Mun.

*Q. What did Solomon require on this Grant?*

*A. He chose Wisdom, with which Request God was well pleased, and said, Behold I have done according to thy Word. After this, in the 4th Year of his Reign, he made a League with Hiram, King of Tyre, from whom he had many Materials for building the King's Palace and the Temple of God, which he finished in 8 Years.* 2992

*Q. How many Workmen did he employ in these Buildings?*

*A. He had 30,000 Carpenters employed in cutting and squaring the Cedars; he also used 80,000 Masons, and 70,000 Labourers, besides 3300 Masters or Overseers of the Work; so that he paid in all 183,000 Men; in which Number the Artificers which he had from Hiram, King of Tyre, were included.*

*Q. Of what Form was the Temple built, and how situated?* 3000

*A. It stood upon a Mountain, and was built of polish'd white Marble, exactly a Square of 4 Furlongs in Compass, or a Furlong in Length on every Side, and from the Bottom of the Mountain 800 Foot high: It was divided into three Parts; the outer Court was 500 Cubits square; round which were four Galleries, supported by three Rows of carved Pillars, 50 Foot high, each hewn out of one Piece of Marble.*

*Q. How was the second Part contrived?*

*A. It was divided into two Courts, that of the Israelites towards the East, which was 135 Cubits square, and that of the Priests, wherein they offer'd Sacrifices; on the West, which was 135 Cubits broad, and 187 long, encompassed with Halls and Chambers, in which the Princes of the Tribes, &c. assembled, and therein also all the Offices of the Temple were performed.*

*Q. Give*

*Anno* Q. Give a short Description of the most sacred Part  
*Mun.* of the Temple.

A. It stood in the Middle of the third or innermost Court; was an 100 Cubits square, and 120 high, and the Roof within Side was covered with massy Plates of Gold: It had three principal Parts, the Entrance, the Sanctuary, and the Holy of Holies, which was situated towards the West. The Halls or Chambers for the Treasures of the Temple, were in Number 38; and the private Rooms, in which were laid up the Materials of the Tabernacle, took up one third Part of them; under the Temple were the Baths for the Priests. The Number of Persons who watched every Night, was 240, divided into 24 Companies, each consisting of 10 Men, 3 of Priests, and 21 of Levites; who were placed at all the Corners, Gates, and Courts of the Temple round about.

Q. What Number of Vessels and Instruments were used in the Temple?

A. The Golden Vessels were 340,000, the Silver 470,000; the chief of which were for the Ornament of the Temple, and of the Tabernacle, at set Times.

Q. Which of these were the most glorious and valuable?

A. The Ark of the Covenant, which was a small Chest covered with Gold, both within and without, of two Cubits and a half long, one Cubit and a half high, and the same broad.

Q. What was the Covering of the Ark?

A. Over it was the Mercy-Seat, made of solid Gold, and of the Thickness (say the Rabbins) of a Hands Breadth: At the two Ends of this Cover were two Cherubims, looking inward to each other, with Wings expanded, which embracing the whole Circumference of the Mercy-Seat, did meet on each Side in the Middle. Hence the Divine Oracles were given out in an audible Voice, as often as God was consulted in the Behalf of his People.

Q. What

*Q. What was laid up in this Chest?*

*Anno  
Mun.*

*A. The Golden Pot of Manna, Aaron's Rod, and the two Tables of the Covenant, as well the broken ones, as the whole. At that End of it which was on the Right Hand, was placed the Original Copy of the Law, in a Case made on Purpose for it; and at the other End, the Vessel containing the Holy anointing Oil, which was made by Moses, for the anointing and consecrating of the King, the High-Priest, and of all the sacred Vessels, which were used in the House of God.*

*Q. Where was the Ark kept?*

*A. In the Holy of Holies, between which and the Sanctuary, hung the Veil, which was rent in Pieces at our Saviour's Death.*

*Q. Of what Bigness was the Room in which it stood?*

*A. It was exactly 30 Foot square, and 30 Foot high; and its Overlayings were so exceeding curious, vast, and prodigious, that in this Room only they amounted to 600 Talents of Gold.*

*Q. Of what Value was the Hebrew Talent of Gold, and also of Silver?*

*A. Their Talent of Gold was equal to 7200*l.* and their Talent of Silver to 450*l.* of our Sterling Money.*

*Q. Was there any more Furniture, besides what you have mentioned, in this Room?*

*A. Yes; the Ark was placed in the Center of it, on a Stone, or Pedestal, rising three Fingers Breadth above the Floor; and on the two Sides of it, in the Middle between the Center of the Ark and each side Wall, stood two Cherubins, fifteen Foot high, which having their Wings expanded, with two of them they touched the Side Walls, and with the other two met exactly over the Middle of the Ark. Here also the Shecina rested, both in the Tabernacle and in the Temple.*

*Q. What do you mean by the Shecina?*

*A. The Divine Presence which was visibly seen between the two Cherubins, over the Mercy-Seat, or Cover*



*Ann* of the *Ark*: Hence it is, that God is so often said in *Mus.* Scripture to dwell between the *Cheerubims*.

*Q.* With what other extraordinary Marks of the Divine Favour was Solomon's Temple honour'd?

*A.* With the *Urim* and *Thummim*, the Holy Fire upon the Altar, and with the Spirit of Prophecy.

*Q.* What was the *Urim* and *Thummim*?

*A.* It was something which *Moses* put into the Breast-Plate of the High-Priest; and there are many strange Opinions concerning the Meaning of these Words, with which we shall not trouble our Readers, because it is evident they meant only the Divine Power of obtaining an Oracular Answer from God, whenever Counsel was asked of him by the High-Priest with it on, in such a Manner as his Word did direct; and the Words *Urim* and *Thummim* were given hereto, to denote the Clearness and Perfection which these Answers always carried with them; for *Urim* signifieth *Lights*, and *Thummim* *Perfections*.

*Q.* Describe this Breast-Plate of the High-Priest?

*A.* It was a Piece of Cloth doubled, of about a Span square, in which twelve precious Stones were set in Sockets of Gold, having engraven on them the Names of the twelve Tribes of *Israel*: This being fixed to the Ephod, or upper Vestment of the High-Priest's Robes, was worn on his Breast on all Solemn Occasions.

*Q.* What was the chief Use of it?

*A.* To ask Counsel of God in difficult and momentous Cases, relating to the whole State of *Israel*, as for the King, for the President of the Sanhedrim, for the General of the Army, or some other great Prince or Governor, and not for any private Person.

*Q.* How, and in what Place was this Counsel asked?

*A.* The High-Priest having on his Robes and Breast-Plate, presented himself before God in the Sanctuary, without the Veil of the Holy of Holies, and with his Face turned directly towards the *Ark*, and the Mercy-Seat

Seat over it, where the *Divine Presence* rested, proposed the Matter concerning which Counsel was asked. *Anno Mun.*

*Q. Where did the Person stand in whose Behalf he asked Counsel?*

*A. Directly behind him, at the Door without the Sanctuary, (for no Layman could come any farther) and whether it was the King, or any other publick Officer, he waited with all Humility and Devotion for the Answer.*

*Q. How was the Answer given?*

*A. By an audible Voice from the Mercy-Seat, which was within behind the Veil; and for this Reason the Holy of Holies, and the Place where the Ark and Mercy-Seat stood, are so often called in Scripture, The Oracle.*

*Q. Give some Account of the Holy Fire upon the Altar?*

*A. This first descended upon it from Heaven in the Tabernacle, at the Consecration of Aaron and is Sons to the Priesthood; and afterwards it descended anew upon the Altar in the Temple of Solomon, at the Consecration of that Temple.*

*Q. How was this Fire preserved?*

*A. It was constantly fed and maintained by the Priests Day and Night, without suffering it to go out; and with this all the Offerings were offered, that were made by Fire. Some are of Opinion this Fire was extinguished in the Days of Manasseh; others think it continued till the Destruction of the Temple by the Chaldeans.*

*Q. What were the next most valuable Appurtenances?*

*A. The ten Shew-Bread Tables, which were covered with Gold also, and were two Cubits long, one Cubit broad, and a Cubit and a half high; the Gold belonging to these weighed 100 lb.*

*Q. Proceed?*

*A. The Golden Candlestick, which had 7 Branches, and weighed 100 lb. The Altar of Incense was of the same Value: The Altar of Burnt-Offerings was of Brass, 20 Cubits square, and 10 high, weighing 7000 Arobas: The ten Lavers, with their Bases, whereon they were placed, weighed 2000 Talents, each Talent*

*Anno 93 lb.* The *Brazen Sea*, out of which the *Priests* purified themselves, weighed 1800 *Arabas*; and the twelve *Bullocks*, on which the *Brazen Sea* stood, weighed 30,700 *Arabas*: so that it is written, the Abundance of *Brass* was not to be numbered.

Q. How much was an *Aroba*?

A. Twenty-five Pound Weight.

Q. Did *Salomon* build any other public Edifices?

A. When he had finished the *Temple*, he built the King's Palace, and fortified *Jerusalem* with a treble Wall; he built also the City of *Megiddo* in *Manasseh*, *Balab* in *Dan*, and *Thadmor* in *Juda*, with *Pahyra* in the Desarts of *Syria*.

Q. What other Particulars are mentioned of his Court and Grandeur?

A. That he kept in Garrison 14,000 Chariots, and 12,000 Horsemen: That he spent at his Court every Day 30 Measures of fine Flour, 60 Measures of Wheat, and 100 Sheep; besides Venison and Fowls.

Q. Are there any more memorable Things said of him?

A. Only concerning his Writings and the Number of his Wives, who in his Dotage led him into Idolatry. In his Time lived *Androclus*, third Son of *Codrus*, King of the *Athians*; who, with the Assistance of the *Iones*, built *Ephesus* in *Caria*; and after he had adjoin'd the *Ile* of *Samos* to his Dominions, was slain by the *Carians*, whose Country he had usurped.

Q. Where was he buried?

A. In one of the Gates of *Ephesus*, called *Magnetes*, his Statue in Armour being set over him.

Q. What was the City of *Ephesus* famous for?

A. The Temple of *Diana*, which was 425 Foot long, and 220 Foot broad, supported with 127 Pillars of Marble, each 70 Foot high, whereof 27 were curiously engraven, and the rest polish'd; the Work designed by *Ctesiphon Gnossus*. This City was also famous for being the first City that received the Christian Faith, of which *Timothy* was Bishop, to whom, and to the *Ephesians*, *St. Paul* wrote his *Epistles* so called.

Q. Who

*Q. Who succeeded Solomon as King of Juda and Anno Israel?* *Mun.*

*A. Rehoboam* his Son, who was anointed at *Sechem*, where the ten Tribes of *Israel* were assembled and attended. 3029

*Q. In what manner did he behave himself to his Subjects?*

*A.* On his Arrival at *Sechem*, they presented to him a Petition to have an Abatement of the heavy Taxes, which *Solomon* had laid on them towards carrying on the Building of the Temple; on which Request he took three Days Consideration, and then denied to grant it.

*Q. Did not this turn the Hearts of his People against him?*

*A.* Some Time after he sent one of his Officers, named *Adoram* (who was one of the Taxers of the People) amongst them, and they stoned him to Death; which so terrify'd *Rehoboam*, that he immediately left *Sechem*, and fled to *Jerusalem*, and prepared to invade them with 180,000 Men; but *Shemai*, in the Name of God, commanded him to desist.

*Q. Was any Advantage taken of his Flight from Sechem?*

*A. Jeroboam*, whom the *Israelites* had set over them, 3030 and thereby divided the Kingdoms of *Israel* and *Juda*, fortified that City, and also *Penuel*, on the other Side of *Jordan*; then, to make himself more popular, or to curry Favour with the *Egyptians* (whom he afterwards invited to invade *Juda*) introduced their Idolatry, and set up two Golden Calves for the Children of *Israel* to worship; and greatly enriched himself by banishing the *Levites*, and taking into his own Hands the Cities which had been given them by *Moses* and *Joshua*.

*Q. Was not Jeroboam dissuaded by Prophecies and Miracles from laying the Foundation of this lasting Idolatry?*

*A.* Neither the Authority of *Abijah* (who from the Lord had first promised him the Kingdom) the withering

*And* ing of his Hand, the miraculous Cure thereof, the *Mirac.* Cleaving of the Altar asunder, nor many other divine *Signs* and *Threatnings*, given by two *Prophets* against it, could prevail upon him to desist from this Impiety.

*Q. How did Rehoboam manage Matters in Judea on this Occasion?*

*A.* He fortified fifteen Cities of *Judah* and *Benjamin*, by which Precautions he thought he had secured his Kingdom, and now forsook God also, and set up *Images* and *Groves*, on every high Hill, and under every green Tree.

*Q. How did God punish Rehoboam for his Idolatry?*

3034 *A.* In the 5th Year of his Reign, *Sesac* King of *Egypt*, came against him with a vast Army, and took *Jerusalem*, carrying away with him the Riches of the Temple, and of the King's Palace; and from this Time the Kings of *Judah* became *Tributaries* to the Kings of *Egypt*.

*Q. How long did Rehoboam reign after this?*

*A.* Twelve Years; and notwithstanding his Losses, he continued his War against *Jeroboam*, all his Life Time.

*Q. In what Manner were the Judgments of God executed upon Jeroboam, for erecting the Golden Calves in Israel?*

*A.* Both in himself, and his Posterity: His Son *Abijah*, inheriting his Father's Vices, raised an Army of 400,000 Men, and marched against him, and gained an entire Victory over him, and afterwards took *Bethel*, *Jeshanah*, and *Ephraim*; soon after which *Jeroboam* died; as did also *Abijah*, at the End of three Years.

*Q. Who became King on the Decease of Abijah?*

3053 *A.* *Asa*, who for the first 10 Years enjoyed Peace, and in this Interval established the Church of God, by cutting down the Groves, taking away their Images, and destroying their high Places; nor did he spare his own Mother,



*Mother, who was an Idolatress, but deposed her, broke down her Idol, and burnt it.* *Amo Mun.*

*Q. By whom were his First Troubles occasioned?*

*A. Zerach, who commanded all the Arabians which bordered on Judea, invaded him, to whom he gave Battle, with an Army raised only out of the two Tribes of Judah and Benjamin, and overthrew him, and took 3064 the Spoil both of his Cities and Camp.*

*Q. Who reigned in Israel at this Time?*

*A. Baasha, who fearful of Asa on Account of this Victory, invited Benbadad King of Syria, of the Race of Adadexer, to join with him against Asa; and in order to block him up, fortified Rama; a City between Jerusalem and Samaria.*

*Q. How did Asa withstand this Confederacy?*

*A. With the Treasures remaining in the Temple he bribed Benbadad to turn his Forces against Baasha; thereupon he entered Nephthalim without Resistance, and plunder'd many Cities thereof; then obliged Baasha to quit Rama, and leave it, as it was fortified, to Asa: Thus loaden with Spoils he returned to Damascus. It is supposed Nadab, Son of Jeroboam, reigned near one whole Year before Baasha, and was slain by him.*

*Q. Who succeeded Baasha as King of Israel?*

*A. Elab, whom Zimri slew after he had reigned about a Year in luxurious Debauchery, and gave himself the Title of King; but the Soldiers proclaimed him a Traitor, and made Omri, their General, King; then besieged Tirzah, wherein Zimri was, who finding himself too weak to defend the City against them, set his own Palace on Fire, and consumed himself in it.*

*Q. Who was made King of Judah after the Death of Asa?*

*A. Josaphat, a religious and happy Prince; he destroyed all the Places dedicated to Idolatry, and sent Teachers to instruct the People: He also recovered the Tribute due from the Arabians and Philistines; from the former he had Silver, from the other 15,400 Sheep*

*Anno and Goats ; and though the Number of his Forces was Mun. almost incredible, he entered into a Confederacy with Ahab King of Israel, who married that wicked Woman Jezabel.*

*Q. Where had these two Kings their first Interview ?*

*A. At Samaria, where Jehoshaphat caused his Son Joram to marry Athalia, Ahab's Daughter, and was persuaded to assist her Father in his Wars against the 3107 Syrians, who held from him the City of Ramoth-Gilead ; and 400 of his Prophets, or Baalites, had promised him Victory.*

*Q. Had Jehoshaphat any Confidence in their Divinations ?*

*A. No, he resolved to confer with a Prophet of the God of Israel ; on which Ahab told him, he had one called Michaiab, but he hated him, because he always foretold of Evil. However he was sent for.*

*Q. What did Michaiab prophecy of this Matter ?*

*A. Tho' the Messenger who was sent for him, begg'd of him to promise Victory, he would repeat to the King his Vision.*

*Q. What was that ?*

*A. God asked, who shall persuade Ahab that he may go up and fall at Ramoth-Gilead ? to whom a Spirit that stood before the Lord answered, I will enter into his Prophets and delude them.*

*Q. Was not Ahab incensed against the Prophet for this Revelation ?*

*A. Zedekiah, one of Baal's Prophets, struck him ; and Ahab committed him to Prison, till such Time as he should return in Peace.*

*Q. What Reply did Michaiab make to Ahab ?*

*A. He answered, If thou return in Peace, the Lord hath not spoken by me : Nevertheless Ahab carried on the War, and was slain ; but Jehoshaphat returned to Jerusalem, where he was reprehended by Jehu for assisting an Idolatrous Prince. After this the Aramites joining with the Moabites, Ammonites, and Idumeans,*

*in-*

invaded *Judea*, passed *Jordan*, and encamped at *Engaddi*. *Anno Mun.*

*Q. How did Jehoshaphat oppose this Confederacy?*

*A. The Prophet Jahaziel foretold him of Victory without Bloodshed.*

*Q. By what means was this obtained?*

*A. Ammon and Moab quarrelling with the Idumeans, fell upon them; and Jehoshaphat arriving in the Interim, took all the Spoil, without Loss of a Man.*

*Q. What Steps were taken by the King of Judah after this easy Conquest?*

*A. Though he had formerly been reprimanded for assisting an Idolatrous King, he now again joined with Ochazias, the Son of Ahab, to send a Fleet to Ophir; but, as the Prophet Eliezar foretold him, his Ships were all lost; and then he took Part with Jehoram, the Brother of Ochazias, against the Moabites.*

*Q. What was the Issue of this War?*

*A. After the Edomites also had join'd them, they determined to march by the Way of Idumea, when that People misled them, and they were greatly distressed for want of Water: Here Elisba taught them to cut Trenches, and the Water flowed therein. After this they overthrew the Moabites, and the King thereof sacrificed his own Son on the Walls of the City.*

*Q. How long did Jehoshaphat reign?*

*A. Twenty-five Years, and was buried in the Valley 3175 call'd by his Name; and as Brocard says, Part of the Pyramid built over his Grave, is still to be seen.*

## C H A P. IV.

*Of Jehoram ; Prophecy of Isaac fulfilled ; Ahazia ; Jehu ; Jezebel ; Athaliah ; Joas ; Kings of the Albanes, Corinth, Assyria, Egypt ; Tyre ; Dido builds Carthage ; Uzzia ; Ahas ; Rome founded by Romulus ; Sardanapalus ; Dissolution of the Assyrian Empire ; Arbaces ; &c.*

*Anno* **W**HO succeeded Jehoshaphat as King of Judah ?  
*Mus.* *A.* Jehoram his Son, whom his Father had made Partner with him in the Government four Years before.

*Q.* How did he govern the People ?

*A.* He began his Reign in Blood ; first murdered his Brothers, and then many great Men of the Land ; then made Innovations in Religion, and his Subjects Idolaters by Compulsion.

*Q.* Upon whom did he first make War ?

*A.* The Edomites, his Tributaries, who had before been govern'd by a Vice-Roy, rebelled against him, and now set up a King of their own ; and he in Person made an Expedition against them.

*Q.* What Success had he therein ?

*A.* He took with him his Princes, and all his Chariots, with which he beat them, and forced the Rebels to flee into Places of Safety.

*Q.* What Advantage did he make of this Defeat ?

*A.* Contented with the Honour of the Conquest, he returned Home again ; and by this his ill Conduct, the Edomites repair'd their Losses, and recovered their Freedom so far, as they could never after be reclaim'd by the Kings of Judah.

*Q.* What

*Q. What do you remark from hence?*

*Anno*

*A. That the Prophecy of Isaac now began to be fulfilled, wherein he foretold, that Esau, in succeeding Ages, should break the Yoke of Jacob: This Freedom of the Edomites, though purchased somewhat dearly, encouraged the Inhabitants of Libna, a great City, to rebel against Jehoram, and set itself at Liberty also; which they accomplish'd without being either besieged or molested.*

*Mun.*

*Q. What Miseries befell Jehoram, during his Reign, besides these Revolutions?*

*A. A Prophecy in Writing came to him from an unknown Hand, (who it is probable was Elisha) which threatned his People, his Wife, his Children, and his own Body.*

*Q. Was the Accomplishment of this Prophecy as terrible as the Sentence?*

*A. Soon after the Philistines and Arabians invaded Judea, took the King's House, wherein they found all or many of his Wives and Children; all which they slew, and took with them great Spoils: When these Calamities were over-past, he himself was smitten with a grievous Disease in his Bowels, which ceased not till his Guts fell out.*

*Q. Who became King of Judah after the Death of Jehoram?*

*A. Ochozias, or Ahaziah, his Son, who seems to have been young, for he was governed by his Mother and her Ministers, who gave him Counsel by which he perish'd.*

*Q. How did he act in Matters of Religion?*

*A. He altered none of his Father's Courses on that Account; and in Matter of State he likewise upheld the League with the House of Abab.*

*Q. In what Enterprizes did he assist his Cousin the King of Israel, whose Name was also Jehoram?*

*A. He joined with him against Ramoth-Gilead, which they took, and leaving in it a strong Garrison, the King of Israel withdrew to the City of Jezreel, to be cured*



Arise of a Wound he received in the Action; and *Abaziah* *Mun.* returned to *Jerusalem*.

Q. *What was done in the Army, which now lay in Ramoth-Gilead, during the Absence of the two Kings?*

A. A Disciple of *Elisha* the Prophet, came in among the Captains as they were sitting together, and called out *Jehu*, a principal Man, and anointed him King over *Israel*, rehearsing to him the Prophecy of *Elias* against the House of *Abab*; telling him it was the Pleasure of God that he should be the Executioner; and he was immediately proclaimed King.

Q. *Had King Jehoram no Warning of this Revolt?*

A. No; great Care was taken, that the News of it should be kept from him, and *Jehu* marched swiftly away to take the Court, while they were feasting and rejoicing for their late Success against *Ramoth-Gilead*, and for the King's Recovery from his Wounds. And it was on this Occasion, that *Jezebel* the Queen-Mother was dressing herself in all her Bravery, to come down amongst them.

Q. *Were not Jehu and his Company discovered before their Arrival at Jezreel?*

A. A Watchman from a Tower saw them as they were approaching the City; and the King had Advice hereof, and sent out first one, then a second Messenger, to enquire if all was well, but *Jehu* detained them both.

Q. *Did this cause no Suspicion in the King?*

A. He was unwilling to discover any Weakness, and ordered his Chariot to be made ready, and took with him *Abazia*, King of *Juda*, who was then at his Court, and went forth and met *Jehu* in the Field of *Naboth*, and saluted him with Terms of Peace.

Q. *What Answer did he receive from Jehu?*

A. A very bitter one, whereon his Heart failed him, and he fled; but *Jehu* pursuing, struck him dead with an Arrow, and threw his Carcase into that Field, which purchased with the Blood of the rightful Owner, was now manured with the Blood of the unjust Possessor.

Q. *How*

*Q. How did Ahaziah, King of Judah, escape?* *Anno*

*A.* He also received a mortal Wound, which occasioned his Death, in his Flight to *Megiddo*. Then *Jehu* commanded *Jezabel's* Servants to cast her headlong out of the Window, and trampled her Carcase under Foot, as he sat on Horseback, which was afterwards devour'd by Dogs. *Man.*

*Q. How did Jehu proceed to secure his Title?*

*A.* There were Seventy of the Line of *Abab* living in *Samaria*; out of which Number *Jehu*, by Letter, order'd the Citizens to set up one of them for King, and prepare to fight in his Defence; but they, being exceedingly afraid of *Jehu*, offered him their Services, and, in less than one Day's Warning, sent the Heads of all those Princes to him: After this, he surprized and slew all the Priests of *Baal*, and demolished their Monuments of Impiety.

*Q. Did he continue to carry on this Reformation, which he had so zealously began?*

*A.* When he thought himself firmly fixed in his Government, he forsook the God that gave it to him; and drew terrible Vengeance upon all *Israel*.

*Q. Who was made the Executioner of this Divine Justice?*

*A.* *Hazaël*, King of *Damascus*, who smote them in all the Coasts of *Israel*, and destroyed all the Country beyond the River *Jordan*; yet, notwithstanding these Calamities, the People repented not of their Idolatry.

*Q. Who governed in Judah at this Time?*

*A.* On the Death of *Abaziah*, his Mother *Athalia* 3124 usurped the Crown, and, that she might rule in Safety, slew all the Princes of the Blood Royal; then brake into the House of God, and all those Things that were dedicated for his Service, she bestowed upon *Baalim*.

*Q. How long did this wicked Woman reign over them?*

*A.* In this Time of Persecution of the Lord's People, *Jehoiada* was Priest, whose Wife *Jehoshabab* (when *Athalia* determined to destroy all the King's Sons) conveyed

*Anno* veyed *Joas*, an Infant Prince, out of the Nursery into *the Temple*, where he was secretly brought up; and in Process of Time, *Jehoiada* called to him five of the Captains, whom he could best trust, and, having bound them in an Oath, produced the *King's Son* before them, and covenanted with them to advance him to the *Kingdom*.

*Q. By what Means did they accomplish their Design?*

*A. Jehoiada* delivered to the Captains, Arms for themselves and Adherents; set also a Guard of *Levites* 3126 about the Person of *Joas*, and then brought him out openly before the People, and gave unto him the Crown, with all accustomed Ceremonies. On this Rumour, a general Joy appeared in the Countenances of all, and the People, without Apprehension of Danger, were huzzaiing the *new King* under the Windows of the Court.

*Q. Was not Athalia surprized at this Noise, and at the extraordinary Concourse of the People?*

*A. She* imagined something worthy her Care had happened, and determined to use her own Wisdom in looking into the Matter; accordingly going down, she was slain at the *Horse Gate*. Thus died two wicked Queens, *Jezabel* and *Athalia*, one famed for Incontinency, the other for Ambition.

*Q. How did this young Prince manage the Government?*

*A. Under the Guardianship of Jehoiada*, who as faithfully ruled the Kingdom, as he had carefully preserved the King's Life.

*Q. Give some Account of the first Actions of Joas, when he came to Age?*

*A. He* took two Wives, by the Advice of his Guardian, for Repairing the Family of *David*, and then began to repair the *Temple*; afterwards enriched it with Gold and Silver Vessels, and offer'd *Sacrifices* as they had been under godly Kings; and the Service of God 3164 was now magnificently celebrated: But this lasted no longer than the Life of *Jehoiada*.

*Q. Did*

*Q. Did Joas turn Apostate after the Loss of this good Anno-  
Man and worthy Counsellor?*

*Mun.*

*A. His Princes began to flatter him, and drew him to the Worship of Idols, and God, whom he had forsaken, gave him into the Hands of Hazael, King of Aram, who having taken Gath of the Philistines, marched to Jerusalem, and laid Siege to it.*

*Q. How long did Joas defend himself, or how get quit of this Enemy?*

*A. He took all the Gold and hallowed Things that could be found in the Temple, and purchased Peace for the present; and when Hazael was departed, he commanded Zachariah to be stoned to Death for endeavouring to reclaim the People from their Superstition.*

*Q. What Punishment was inflicted upon him by the God of Israel, for this Offence?*

*A. Benbadad, Son of Hazael, King of Damascus, came against him with an Army of Aramites, and gave him a shameful Overthrow, slew all his Princes, and departed out of Judah loaden with great Spoils; and 3165  
Joas, on his Return home, was killed in his Bed.*

*Q. What memorable Persons lived, or Actions are mentioned to be done, in the Reign of Joas?*

*A. Menades and Diognetus lived in Athens; Eudemus and Aristomedes, in Corinth; Agrippa Silvius, and after him Silvius Alladius, were Kings of the Albanes in Italy; Anacyndaraxes in Assyria; Cephrenes in Egypt; Pignation in Tyre; and Dido, in this Age, laid the Foundation of Carthage.*

*Q. Who took Possession of the Kingdom of Judah on the Death of Joas?*

*A. Amasia, who was a Prince well affected to Religion and Justice; and continued in Peace twelve or thirteen Years; and while he gathered Strength by the Blessings of it in Judah, one named Joas, who was now King of Israel, grew as fast in Power, by pursuing the War against the Aramites, over whom he obtained three Victories, and so much weakened the Kings of Damascus, that they were never more terrible to Israel.*

*Q. Did*

*Anno* Q. Did not this happy Success of Joas kindle a Desire  
*Mun.* in Amazia to undertake some Expedition?

3177 A. Yes; and he marched against the Edomites, and overthrew them, killing ten thousand, and taking the like Number Prisoners, whom he caused to be cast from a high Rock. Among other rich Spoils taken in this War, Amazia carried away their Gods, and set them up to be his Gods, and worshipped them, and burnt Incense to them; and being rebuked for it by the Prophet, he threaten'd him, and, in the Pride of his Heart, asked him, Who made him a Counsellor? commanding him to Silence.

Q. What was his Reward for this Apostacy?

A. It caused his Ruin, for soon after he sent a Challenge to Joas; but when the two Armies came in Sight of each other, God, whose Help Amazia had so despised, struck his Forces with such Terror, that they all deserted him, and fled into Judah, and himself was pursued and taken Prisoner.

Q. How did Joas use the King of Judah, now he had him in his Power?

A. He carried him immediately to Jerusalem, and threaten'd him with Death, if he did not cause the City Gates to be open'd to him and his Followers; which were open'd accordingly: But Joas, not content with this, caused four hundred Cubits of the Wall to be thrown down, thro' which he entered the City in his Chariot, carrying Amazia before him in Triumph; and, after having sack'd his Palace, and taken Hostages, gave the poor Creature his Life, and dismissed him.

Q. Was not the Hearts of his Subjects turned against him, by these memorable Examples of his Pride, Folly, and Cowardice?

A. They drove him out of Jerusalem to Lachis for Refuge; for here he found no Favour more than that the People did not kill him with their own Hands; but when the Conspirators pursued after him, he was abandoned to Death, and his Body carried to Jerusalem; 3180 where they buried him with his Fathers, and Uzziah became



became King of *Judab*, when he was about sixteen Years old. *Anno Mun.*

*Q. What Success had he in his Enterprizes?*

*A.* He served the God of his Father *David*, and prospered accordingly, rebuilt *Elatb* on the *Red-Sea*, over-came the *Philistines*, whose Towns he dismantled, and built others in many Parts, and repaired the Wall of *Jerusalem*, and fortified it with Towers, some one hundred and fifty Feet high; then proceeded against the *Arabians* and *Ammonites* with the like Success. In short, his Victories were far more important than any since the Time of *David*.

*Q. What Advantages or Improvements did he make of these Conquests?*

*A.* He repaid the Expence of the War with triple Interest, turned the Lands he had taken to the best Use, by feeding Cattle, keeping Ploughmen, and planting Vineyards: And the State of *Israel* never flourished so well as at this Time, since the Division of the twelve Tribes into two Kingdoms; for he had the Art to use, as well as the Happiness to get.

*Q. Who was the King of the Ten Tribes in Israel at this Time?*

*A.* *Jeroboam*, the Son of *Joas*, who obtained many Victories over the *Syrians*, and won the Royal City of *Damascus* and *Hamath*, carrying his Conquests unto the vast Desarts of *Arabia*, the End whereof was undiscovered.

*Q. How long did Jeroboam reign in Israel?*

*A.* Forty-one Years; and after his Death an Anarchy or *Interregnum* happened, which lasted twenty-three Years, before his Son *Zacharia* ascended the Throne. This was the last King of the House of *Jebu*, and reigned only six Months, being slain by *Sallum*, who reigned after him, the Space of a Month in *Samaria*. To him succeed *Menabem* the Son of *Gaddi*, who paid him the just Reward of his late Treason. 3222

*Q. What Account have you of the Actions of Menabem?*

*A.* The

*Ans.* *A.* The first Thing he set about was, to revenge himself of the *Partizans* of his Predecessor at *Tiphlab*, and the Coast thereof; so great was his Hatred and Cruelty to these People, that he destroyed the Town, and rip'd up all the Women with Child, because they refused to open their Gates. This Year began the first *Olympiad*.

*Q.* Did he wage any War?

*A.* The King of *Affria* came against him, but he purchased his Peace with a thousand Talents of Silver, which he levied upon all the substantial Men in his Kingdom; and ended his Tyranny with his Life, after a Reign of ten Years; and was succeeded by *Pekabiah*, who reigned but two Years before he was slain by *Pekab*, whose Treason procured him the Crown.

*Q.* What further have you recorded of the Life of *Uzzia* King of *Juda*?

*A.* His Heart was lifted up, and he thought to enlarge his Authority, by meddling in the Priest's Office, and went into the Temple of the Lord to burn Incense, upon the Altar of Incense; and when *Azaria* the High Priest interrupted him, he threatened him with Death.

*Q.* How was he punished for this Attempt, which was contrary to the written Law of God?

*A.* While he was wrath with the Priests, the Leprosy rose up in his Forehead before them, which caused him to leave the Place hastily, and live in a House by himself till he died, the Government of the Kingdom being committed to his Son *Jotham*.

*Q.* What Character have you of this Prince?

*A.* He was a Person in whom no Virtue was wanting; he worshipped God religiously, he governed the People righteously, and was provident for the City; and tho' his Reign lasted but 26 Years, he was prosperous and happy in all his Designs.

*Q.* Which were the most famous Actions of this good King?

*A.* He forced the *Ammonites* to pay him Tribute, an 100 Talents of Silver, and 2000 Measures of Wheat and Barley. He built a Gate to the Temple 60 Cubits high,

high, and called it *Ophel*; also many Cities on the Hills, *Anno*  
and Towers in the Forests of *Juda*. *Mun.*

*Q. What Princes were Cotemporaries, and what Revolutions happened in the World, from the Death of Amazia?*

*A.* In his Days lived *Mycerinus* in *Egypt*, *Silvius Aventinus* in *Alba*, *Agamemnon* in *Corinth*, *Atriphron* in *Athens*; *Theoctus* in *Lacedæmon*, in whose Time the *Spartans* took *Gerauthæ*, *Amyle*, and some other Towns from the *Achaians*; but more notable than all these was *Sardanapalus* King of *Assyria*, who succeeded his Father *Anacyndaraxes*, in the twenty-first Year of *Amazia*, according to *Sir Walter Raleigh*.

*Q. What is written so very remarkable of him?*

*A.* That he was a most effeminate Prince, lived always among his Strumpets, and imitated them in both Apparel and Behaviour.

*Q. Did his Subjects ever see him in this Disguise?*

*A.* Sensible of his own Vileness, he kept himself from the Sight of any Man, but *Arbaces*, Governor of *Media*, at length, to satisfy his Curiosity, got a View of him dressed in Women's Attire, and playing the Part of a Harlot; which provoked him so much, that he resolved to free himself from his Subjection to so base a Creature.

*Q. Who did he procure to join with him in this intended Rebellion?*

*A.* He gained the *Medes* and *Persians* over to his Party, and prevailed with *Belesis* a *Chaldean*, to enter into a Confederacy with him, who prevailed with the *Babylonians* and *Arabians*, to venture themselves in the same Cause.

*Q. How did Sardanapalus behave himself against these Rebels?*

*A.* Not in the Manner they expected, for in the Beginning of the War he gained the Advantage over them in three Battles; but an Army out of *Bactria* coming to his Assistance, the *Rebels* found Means, by Promise of *Liberty*, to bring them over to their Side;  
by

*Anno* by whom being strengthened, they forced the Camp of *Mun. Sardanapalus*; whereon he left his Wife's Brother *Salamennus* to keep the Field, and withdrew himself to the City of *Nineveh* till more Forces should arrive.

*Q. What Defence did Sardanapalus make here?*

*A.* It had been prophesied, That *Nineveh* should never be taken till the *River* became an Enemy to the Town; for the *Walls* were 100 Feet high, and so wide, that three Chariots might pass in Front upon them; yet, when *Arbaces* had beat his Army, and slain *Salamennus*, he laid Siege to it; but lay before it two Years, without any Hopes of reducing it.

*Q. How did Arbaces make himself Master of it at last?*

*A.* In the third Year, the River *Tigris*, swol'n with Rain, drowned that Part thro' which it ran, and threw down 20 Furlongs of the Wall; by which Accident, *Sardanapalus*, being terrified, shut himself up in his Palace, with his Wives, Concubines, and Treasure, and then set it on Fire, wherein they were all consumed. He was the last of the Line of *Ninus*.

*Q. When the Empire of Assyria was dissolved, on the Death of Sardanapalus, how was Asia governed?*

*A.* There arose two Empires in its Stead, one founded by *Arbaces*, who is called in Scripture, *Tiglath-Pileser*; and the other by *Belshis*, the same with *Nabonassar*,  
3253 called in Scripture *Baladan*.

*Q. How was it divided?*

*A.* *Belshis* fixed his Royal Seat at *Babylon*, and had *Chaldea* and *Arabia*. *Arbaces* lived at *Nineveh*, and had the rest.

*Q. Who was King of Judah about this Time?*

*A.* *Abaz*; and now *Romulus*, Grandson of *Numitor*, King of *Alba*, having made himself sole Lord of a few Miles round, built the famous City of *Rome* thereon.

*Q. How did Ahaz behave himself?*

3258 *A.* He was a wicked Prince; and God sent *Rezin* King of *Syria*, and *Pekab* King of *Israel*, against him, who shut him up in *Jerusalem*, and there besieged him.

*Q. What*

*Q. What was their Design by this Invasion ?*

*Ans*

*A.* To extirpate the House of *David*, and set up a *Mun.* new King over *Judah*, which was the Son of *Tabaal*, not mentioned in Scripture, but seemeth to be some potent and factious Jew.

*Q. How did they succeed in this mischievous Undertaking ?*

*A.* The Will of God was only to punish *Abaz*, and not the whole Family of *David* : Therefore he sent *Isaiab* unto *Abaz*, to assure him they should not prevail against him ; and he gave him two Signs hereof.

*Q. What were they ?*

*A.* The first was, that the *Prophet* should take to him a Wife, who should immediately conceive a Son, and before that Son arrived at the Age of discerning between Good and Evil, these two Kings should be slain.

*Q. What was the other Sign ?*

*A.* That a *Virgin* should conceive and bear a Son, who should be called *Emanuel*, and that the House of *David* should continue till this Prediction was accomplished.

*Q. Did Ahaz reform on this Promise of Mercy ?*

*A.* No, he grew more wicked thereon, cleaving to the worst Abominations of the Heathens, and made his Sons pass thro' the Fire to *Molec*.

*Q. What was his Punishment for this Perverseness ?*

*A.* God sent the same two confederated Kings against him a second Time, accompanied with one *Zicbri*, a mighty Man of *Ephraim*. 3259

*Q. What was their Success in this second Invasion ?*

*A.* *Resin* loaded his Army with Spoils, and with a vast Number of Captives returned to *Damascus*. *Pekah* gave him Battle, and slew 12,000 of his Men, and *Zicbri* took *Jerusalem*, and killed *Maaseiah* the Son of *Abaz* ; not long after this the *Edemites* and *Philistines* treated him with the same Cruelty.

*Q. Did he still continue hardened in Impiety ?*

*A.* He now pillaged the Temple of all the Gold and Silver, and sent it to *Tiglath-Pileser* ; and moreover promised,



*Aho* promised to become his Servant, and pay Tribute to *Mun.* him, if he would come to his Assistance.

*Q. Was this Present and Offer accepted?*

*A.* The King of *Affyria* having hereby an Opportunity of adding *Syria* and *Palestine* to his Empire, readily came into his Measures, marched against *Rezin*, and slew him, and took *Damascus*, thereby putting an End to the Kingdom of the *Syrians*; then he went against *Pekah*, seized all that belonged to *Israel* beyond *Jordan*, and also all *Galilee*.

*Q. Was this Alliance and these Conquests any Advantage to Ahaz?*

*A.* No, two lasting Mischiefs followed hereon. Instead of two petty Princes, with either of whom he was well able to cope before, he had now this mighty King for a Borderer; and from this Time the *Jews* were excluded all their Traffick in their Southern Seas, which had been the Foundation of all their Riches.

*Q. Did Ahaz endeavour to gain any Satisfaction of the King of Affyria, for this last Injury done him?*

3261 *A.* Instead of that, when he heard of his Return to *Damascus*, he went thither to pay him Tribute and Homage; and, while he was there, caused the Pattern of an idolatrous Altar which pleased him, to be taken, and sent it to *Uriah* the High Priest; to be put up in the Temple, in the room of the Altar of the Lord.

*Q. Whither did Tiglath-Pileser go from Damascus?*

*A.* He return'd into *Affyria*, and carried with him vast Numbers of the People, which he had taken in the Land of *Israel*?

*Q. What Colonies did he plant with these Captives?*

*A.* Those of *Damascus* he planted in *Kir*; those of *Israel* in *Hela*, *Habor*, *Hara*, and on the River *Gozan*, in the Land of the *Medes*.

*Q. What became of Pekah King of Israel, now he was stripped of so large a Part of his Kingdom?*

*A.* After

*A.* After he had reigned in *Samaria* twenty Years, *Anno*  
he was slain by *Hosea* the Son of *Elah*. *Mun.*

*Q.* How long did *Tiglath-Pileser* reign in *Assyria*?

*A.* Nineteen Years, and was succeeded by *Salmaneser* his Son, who in the Book of *Tobit* is called *Enemesar*; and in *Hosea*, *Shalman*: He went into *Syria* and *Palestine*, and subjected *Samaria* to his Dominion; and made *Hoshea* King thereof, to pay him Tribute. In this Expedition he carried away the *Golden Calf*, which *Jeroboam* had set up in *Bethel*, and which had been worshipped by the ten Tribes ever since.

*Q.* What became of the other *Golden Calf*, which was at the same Time set up by *Jeroboam* in *Dan*?

*A.* That was taken away about ten Years before by *Tiglath-Pileser*, when he subdued *Galilee*.

*Q.* How long did *Ahaz* reign?

*A.* About sixteen Years, and *Hezekiah* his Son succeeded him, who opened the *House of God*, which his Father had impiously shut up; then sent to invite all the Tribes of *Israel*, to keep the *Passover*. 3273

*Q.* How did they accept of his Invitation?

*A.* Though many laughed at his Messengers, a great Multitude came; and it was the greatest *Passover* that had been solemnized at *Jerusalem* since the Days of *Solomon*; for, instead of seven, they kept it fourteen Days.

*Q.* Were all the Monuments of Idolatry, both in *Jerusalem* and *Judea*, destroyed at this Time?

*A.* Yes, even the *Brass Serpent*, which *Moses* had set up in the *Wilderness*, having, by many, been made the Object of *Idolatrous Worship*, was destroyed also.

*Q.* Who was it that invaded *Egypt* about this Time?

*A.* *Sabaton*, called in Scripture *So*, who took *Baccharis*, King thereof, Prisoner, and caused him to be burnt alive; and reigned in his Stead. With this new King

*Anno King, (an Ethiopian) Hoshea entered into a Confederacy, Mun. and refused to pay any more Tribute to Salmaneser.*

*Q. What Revenge did the King of Assyria take for this Insolence?*

3279 *A. He came against Samaria, and after three Years Siege took it; put Hoshea in Chains, and made him Prisoner for Life; and carried his People into Captivity.*

*Q. What remarkable Persons were among these Captives?*

*A. Tobit, Anna his Wife, and Tobias his Son; and Tobit soon after became Purveyor to the King.*

*Q. Who was King of Babylon when Samaria was taken?*

*A. Mardoc-Empadur, Son of Belshis; and tho' several other Princes had succeeded before him, there being nothing of these on Record but their Names, we have hitherto taken no Notice of them.*

*Q. Did Hezekiah, King of Judah, make no Advantage of the Quarrel between Salmaneser and Hoshea?*

*A. During the Siege of Samaria he recovered what had been lost from his Kingdom in the Reign of his Father, and refused to pay any more Tribute.*

*Q. Did not this immediately bring Salmaneser upon him also?*

*A. He was diverted by another War; for Eluleus King of Tyre, seeing the Philistines brought low by Hezekiah's War, reduced Gath again to his Obedience, which had revolted from him; whereon the Gittites apply'd to Salmaneser, and engaged him in their Cause.*

*Q. Could the Tyrians withstand this Confederacy?*

*A. Sidon, Achon, and other maritime Towns of Phoenicia, which had till that Time been subject to the Tyrians, revolted; but the confederate Fleet being beaten in a Sea Fight, Salmaneser left his Army to block up Tyre, and returned Home.*

*Q. Was this City taken by the Assyrian Army?*

*A. After*

*A.* After he had held out five Years, the King died, *Anno* and delivered them for this Time. Some time before *Mun.* died *Sabacon* King of *Egypt*, and *Seveebus*, called also *Setbon*, reigned in his Stead. *Isaiah* xxiii. 3259

---

CHAP. V.

*Sennacherib; Hezekiah; Mardoc-Empadus; Sepulchre of David; Regibilus; Esarhad-don; Psammitichus; Deioces; Holofer-nes; Phraortes; Josiah; Chinladanus; Nebopollassar; Nebuchadnezzar; Divi-nation by Arrows; Destruction of Jerusa-lem; &c.*

**W**HO succeeded *Salmaneser* King of *Assyria*? *Anno*  
*A.* *Sennacherib* his Son, called also *Sargon*: *Mun.*  
 He made a fresh Demand upon *Hezekiah* for the Tri-bute-Money; and, on his refusing to pay it, he marched his Army into *Judah*, took several fenced Cities, and laid Siege to *Lachish*, threatening *Jerusalem* itself.

*Q.* What Method did *Hezekiah* take to prevent farther Mischief?

*A.* This Year he fell sick of the *Pestilence*; but, on his hearty Prayer to God, obtained a Promise of Life 15 Years longer, and also Deliverance from the *Assy-rians*, and then made an Alliance with *Mardoc-Empadus* King of *Babylon*.

*Q.* What miraculous Sign did God, at this Time, give unto *Hezekiah*, for Assurance of his Promise?

*A.* At his Request, the Son went back ten Degrees upon the Dial of *Ahaz*.

*Q.* On what Terms was this Quarrel made up?

G

*A.* *Hezekiah*

*Ann.* *A. Henshiab* paid him down 351,000 *l.* and promised that the *Tribute-Money* should be duly rendered for the Future.

*Q. Whither did Sennacherib march his Army from Judah?*

3293 *A. Against Sevechus King of Egypt, and with great Ease over-run the Country; but at length Tirhakah, King of Ethiopia, obliged him to retreat; on which he renewed the War against Hezekiah, and sent Tartan, Rabaris, and Rabshakeh, with that blasphemous Message mentioned, 2 Kings xviii. 19.*

*Q. How far did Tirhakah pursue after Sennacherib, on his Retreat?*

*A. Into Judah; for he was hastening towards Jerusalem; but here Tirhakah was entirely routed; and while the King of Assyria was swelling with this new Victory, and in full March against that City, the Angel of the Lord smote 185,000 of his Men in the Camp; at which being terrified, he returned to Nineveh in Disgrace, and was at last slain by his two eldest Sons Adramelch and Sharezer, who fled into Armenia.*

*Q. Who became King of Assyria after his Death?*

3297 *A. Esarhaddon his third Son; and this Year Sevechus, King of Egypt, died, and was succeeded by Tirhakah, who came with the Ethiopian Army to his Assistance against Sennacherib. He was the third and last of that Race that reigned in Egypt.*

*Q. Who was King of Babylon at this Time?*

3305 *A. Apromadius, who was the third Successor after Mardoc Empadus; and began his Reign the same Year as Henshiab died.*

*Q. Where was Hezekiah buried?*

*A. In the highest Place of the Sepulchres of the Sons of David, because they looked upon him as the best of all that had reigned over them, of that Family, since the Founder of it.*

*Q. Give me some Account of this Burying-place?*

*A. It now lies without the Walls of Jerusalem, but was within them before that City was destroyed by the Romans.*



*Romans*—It consists of a Court one hundred and twenty *Arms* Feet square, with a Gallery on the left Hand, (which *Mun.* Court, Gallery, and Pillars, that support it, are hewn out of the solid *Marble Rock*.) At the End of this Gallery is a narrow *Passage*; thro' which there is an Entrance into a large Room about twenty-four Feet square, within which are several lesser *Rooms* with *stone Doors*, opening into one another. In the Sides of these lesser *Rooms* are Nitches, in which the *Corps* of deceased Kings are deposited in *Stone Coffins*. This remains entire to this Day, and seems to be the Work of King *Solomon*. It is the only true Remains of old *Jerusalem*.

Q. Who became King of Judah after Hezekiah's 3306  
Death?

A. *Manasseh* his Son, who restored all the Idolatry of *Ahaz*, and went beyond him in his Endeavours to suppress the true Worship of God.

Q. We are told, that God sent his Prophets unto him, to exhort him to depart from his Iniquity, did he hearken to their Admonitions?

A. He treated them with Contempt, and put several of them to Death, particularly *Isaiah*, who is said to have suffer'd *Martyrdom* under him, being cruelly *sawn asunder*.

Q. How went on Affairs in Babylon and Egypt in his Reign?

A. *Apornadius*, King of *Babylon*, died after he had 3310  
reigned six Years, and was succeeded by *Regibilus*, who reigned one Year: After him *Meseftmordacus* held it four Years, and sometime after *Tirbakab* the *Ethiopian* died also.

3316

Q. How was Egypt governed after him?

A. The *Egyptians*, not being able to agree about the Succession, continued two Years in a State of *Anarchy*; at length twelve of the principal Nobility governed the Kingdom twelve Years, by a joint Confederacy: The same Year this happened in *Egypt*, the like happened at *Babylon*: *Meseftmordacus* dying, and leaving no Heir,

Anno an *Interregnum* of eight Years followed ; of which *Mun. Esarhaddon* taking the Advantage, seized *Babylon*, and reigned over it fourteen Years ; and then marching into *Syria* and *Palestine*, utterly destroyed the Ten Tribes of *Israel*, which had separated from the House of *David*.

3324 Q. When *Esarhaddon* had possessed himself of the Land of *Israel*, how far did he extend his Conquests that Way ?

A. After this he sent some of his Princes with Part of his Army into *Judea*, who, having vanquish'd *Manasseh*, took him hid in a Thicket, and bound him in Fetters, and carried him to *Babylon*, where he was kept Prisoner for some Time ; but, on a Treaty, was set at Liberty, and sent to *Jerusalem* ; and now, knowing the Lord to be God, he abolished all the Idolatrous Prophanations out of the Temple, and again restored the Reformation of *Hezekiah*.

Q. How did the twelve confederated Sovereigns in Egypt agree in their Government ?

3328 A. After fifteen Years they fell out among themselves, and expelled *Psammitichus*, one of their Number, out of his Share in the Government.

Q. Whither did he fly for Succour ?

A. He hid himself in the Fens near the Sea ; till having gotten together out of the *Arabian Freebooters* and the *Pirates* of *Caria* and *Ionia*, such a Number of Soldiers, as with the *Egyptians* of his Party made a considerable Army ; then marched with it against the other Eleven, beat and slew several of them, and drove the rest out of the Land ; and, seizing the Kingdom, reigned over it 24 Years.

3333 Q. When he was settled, did he enter into no other Wars ?

A. He quarrelled with the King of *Assyria* about the Boundaries of their two Empires, which occasioned a War for many Years : For when the *Assyrians* had conquered *Syria*, *Palestine* only separated their respective Territories, and it became a constant Bone of Contention between

between them, and sometimes one, sometimes the other *Ann*  
possessed himself of it. *Mun:*

*Q. What Success had Psammitichus in Palestine?*

*A.* At his first Entrance, he found *Ashdod* so strong a Barrier against him, that it cost a Blockade of Twenty-nine Years before he could take it.

*Q. Was his whole Force employ'd against this Place for so long a Time?*

*A.* Only Part of his Army, the rest he sent against the other Parts of *Palestine*, and the War continued many Years. In the 31st Year of *Manasseh*, *Asarhaddon* King of *Affyria* died, and *Suofduchinus* his Son, called in the Book of *Judith*, *Nebuchadnefer*, succeed- 3336  
ed him.

*Q. What memorable Exploits have you of this King?*

*A.* In the 12th Year of his Reign he fought a Battle 3350  
with *Deiaces* King of *Media*, who is called in *Judith*, *Arbaxad*, cut him off, and all his Army; and pursuing the Victory, took many Cities of *Media*, with *Ecabatana* the Royal Seat of that Empire, and returned to *Nineveh*, where he and his Army feasted for 120 Days.

*Q. What was done after these Rejoycings ended?*

*A.* He sent *Holofernes* to all his Tributary Provinces, who had refused to go with him to this War, with an Army of 120,000 Foot, and 1200 Horse, and destroy'd a great many of those Nations; but on his laying Siege to *Bethulia* in *Judea*, he and his Army were cut in Pieces. *Judith* i. 2.

*Q. What Changes of Government happened about this Time?*

*A.* *Deiaces* King of *Media* died, and was succeeded by his Son *Phraortes*; *Saofduchinus*, King of *Babylon* and *Affyria*, was succeeded by *Chiniladanus*; and *Manasseh*, in *Judab*, by *Ammon* his Son, after he had 3356  
reigned 55 Years.

*Anno* Q. In what Manner, and how long did Ammon Mun. reign?

3364 A. He gave himself up to all Manner of Wickedness, and was slain by his Servants after he had reigned only two Years; and *Josiah*, being eight Years old, succeeded him.

Q. Did not Phraortes, King of Media, endeavour to revenge himself on the Assyrians for the Death of his Father?

3369 A. He, with this Design, laid Siege to *Nineweb*, but perished before it; and *Cyaxares* his Son became King in his Stead.

Q. How did Josiah govern in Judah during his Nonage?

3371 A. He took the Government of the Kingdom upon himself at the Age of Sixteen, began the Reformation of Religion, and endeavoured to purge it of all the Corruptions which his Father and Grandfather had introduced. In his Days *Jeremiah* was called to the Prophetic Office.

Q. Did *Chiniladanus*, now King of Babylon and Assyria, continue long in his Government?

A. His Effeminacy made him contemptible to his People, and *Nebopallassar* his General seized Babylon, and reigned over it 21 Years.

Q. How far did Josiah carry on the Reformation he had so zealously begun?

3381 A. He collected Money to repair the House of God, and commanded *Hilkiah* the High-Priest to see it expended; and while he was examining every Place, to see what was necessary to be done, he found the Authentic Copy of the Law of *Moses*.

Q. Was not this laid up always on the Side of the Ark of the Covenant, in the most Holy Place?

A. It is conjectured, that it was taken out from thence, and hid elsewhere in the Time of *Manasseh*, that it might not be destroyed by him.

Q. Had neither Josiah, nor the High Priest, seen any Copy of the Law before this was found?

A. It

*A.* It plainly appears they had not; and this shews *Ann* into how corrupt a State the Church of the *Jews* was *Mun*. now sunk, till this good King reformed it. About this Time *Psammetichus* King of *Egypt* died, and *Nechus* his Son, called in Scripture *Pharaoh Necho*, reigned in his Stead.

*Q.* When *Nebopollassar* seized the Kingdom of *Babylon*, did he engage in any War?

*A.* He entered into a Confederacy with *Astyages* Son 3392 of *Cyaxares*, against the *Assyrians*, on Account of the Marriage of his Son *Nebuchadnezzar* with *Amtytis* the Daughter of *Astyages*.

*Q.* What was the first Attempt of this Confederate Army?

*A.* They besieged *Nineveh*, and, having taken it, slew *Saracus* the King, (who was either the Successor of *Chiniladanus*, or he himself) then they utterly demolished that ancient City; and from this Time *Babylon* became the Metropolis of the *Assyrian* Empire.

*Q.* Give some Account of the ancient City of *Nineveh*?

*A.* It was situate on the East Side of the River *Tigris*, and was 60 Miles in Compass; out of its Ruins was erected another City, at this Day called *Mosul*, famous only for being the Seat of the Patriarch of the *Nestorians*; of which Sect are most of the *Christians* in these Parts.

*Q.* Did not the *Babylonians* and *Medes*, who now again had dissolved the *Assyrian* Empire, cause Jealousy among the neighbouring Princes?

*A.* *Necho*, King of *Egypt*, marched with a great 3394 Army towards the *Euphrates* against them, and, in his Way through *Judea*, *Josiah* resolved to oppose him, and gave him Battle in the Valley of *Megiddo*.

*Q.* Who got the better in this Action?

*A.* *Josiah* was vanquished, and received a Wound in the Engagement, of which he died; and *Jehoaiah* his Son was made King of *Judah*.



*Anno* Q. Did Pharaoh-Necho make any further Conquests in  
*Mun.* this Expedition?

~ A. He had the good Fortune to beat the *Babylonians* also at the *Euphrates*, and took *Carchemish*, a great City in those Parts, left in it a good Garrison, and returned to *Egypt*; where having heard that *Jeboabaz* had taken upon him to be King of *Judah* without his Consent, he sent for him, caused him to be put in Chains, and made him Prisoner for Life in *Egypt*; then proceeding to *Jerusalem*, he made *Jehoiakim* King, and put the Land to an annual Tribute of 52,200 l.

3395 Q. How did *Jehoiakim* govern *Judah*?

A. He ran into all Manner of Impiety, whereon *Jeremiah* proclaimed God's Judgments against him, if he did not repent. *Uriah* and *Habbakuk* prophesied also about this Time.

Q. Did all *Syria* and *Palestine* revolt to *Necho* on his taking *Carchemish*?

A. Yes; but *Nebopollasar* having Notice hereof, tho' old and unable to march thither himself, he sent his Son *Nebuchadnezzar*, whom he had taken into Partnership in the Empire, against him, who overthrew the Egyptians at the *Euphrates*, and recovered those Provinces again.

3398

Q. Whither did *Nebuchadnezzar* march his Army from thence?

A. He immediately invaded *Judea*, and laid Siege to *Jerusalem*, took it, and put *Jehoiakim* in Chains; but on his humbling himself, he restored him to his Kingdom, and went against the *Egyptians*.

Q. What Spoils did *Nebuchadnezzar* take from *Jerusalem*?

A. He caused great Numbers of the People to be sent Captive to *Babylon*, and ordered *Aspenax*, the Master of his Eunuchs, to make Choice of the Children of the Royal Family, and of the Nobility, to be made Eunuchs in his Palace; and also carried with him the Vessels of the Temple, to put them into the House of

*Bel,*

*Bel, his God. Here begins the 70 Years of the Baby- Anno  
lonish Captivity. Jer. xxv. 11. xxix. 10. Mnu.*

*Q. Were not Daniel, Hananiah, Michael, and Azariah, also carried away in this Captivity?*

*A. Yes; and they called Daniel, Belteshazzar, and the other three, Shadrac, Mesbac, and Abadnego. This Year the Scythians, who had held all the Upper Asia for Twenty-eight Years, were driven out by the Medes.*

*Q. Did these heavy Chastisements, which God had 3399  
inflicted upon Jehoiakim and his People, bring them to Repentance?*

*A. No; after the Chaldeans were gone, they grew worse.*

*Q. What Success had Nebuchadnezzar against the Egyptians?*

*A. Before the ensuing Winter, he brought under his Subjection all Syria and Palestine; and during this Expedition Nebopolassar died, of which Nebuchadnezzar being informed, he hastened to Babylon, and took the Government of the whole Empire upon himself, which now contained Chaldea, Arabia, Assyria, Syria, and Palestine; and reigned over it, according to Ptolemy, 3400 43 Years.*

*Q. How went on Daniel and his Companions at Babylon?*

*A. It was about this Time Daniel interpreted Nebuchadnezzar's Dream. Dan. ii.*

*Q. How did Jehoiakim act under his present Subjection?*

*A. After he had served the King of Babylon three Years, he refused to pay Tribute, and renewed his Confederacy with Pharaoh-Necho King of Egypt, determining to break the Yoke.*

*Q. Did not Nebuchadnezzar chastise him for this?*

*A. He sent Orders to all his Governors, in those Parts, to attack him on every Side.*

*Q. How long did he withstand these Enemies?*

*Ann* *A.* Three Years, and then they shut him up in *Yer. Mun. rusalem*; and having taken him in some Salley, during the Siege, slew him, and cast his Body into the High-  
 3405 way, out of one of the Gates of that City, *Jer. xxii.*  
 18. *Jehoiachin* his Son succeeded him. The Year before died also *Pharaoh-Necho*, and his Son *Psammetichus* reigned in his Stead.

*Q.* How long did *Jehoiachin*, called also *Jeconiah*, defend *Jerusalem* against the Besiegers?

*A.* After three Months *Nebuchadnezzar* came in Person, with his Royal Army, to their Assistance; and *Jeconiah* went out with his Mother, and his Wives, &c. and delivered himself into his Hands.

*Q.* Did he obtain any Favour by thus surrendering?

3406 *A.* He only saved his Life by it; for he was immediately put in Irons, carried to *Babylon*, and kept Prisoner till the Death of *Nebuchadnezzar*. In this Captivity *Ezekiel* the Prophet, Son of *Buzi*, of the House of *Aaron*, was taken away.

*Q.* Who was made King of *Judah* after *Jehoiachin*?

*A.* *Matanias* his Uncle, after he had taken a solemn Oath to *Nebuchadnezzar*, to be true to him; hereupon his Name was changed into *Zedekiah*, which signifies, *The Justice of the Lord*.

*Q.* Did *Zedekiah* keep this Oath?

3413 *A.* No: he immediately made a League with the neighbouring Princes against him, with Design to prevent his coming any more into those Parts.

*Q.* What was the Consequence of *Zedekiah's* Perjury and Rebellion?

*A.* It was the absolute Ruin both of himself and his Kingdom: Now died *Cyaxares* King of *Media*, and was succeeded by his Son *Assyages*, called in Scripture *Abusurnus*; as did also *Psammetichus* King of *Egypt*, whom *Apries* his Son succeeded, called in Scripture *Pharaoh-Hophra*.

*Q. How*

*Q. How was Nebuchadnezzar revenged on Zedekiah for his Perfidy?*

*A. In the 9th Year of his Reign, having drawn together a vast Army of all Nations under his Dominions, he came against him; but on his March thro' Samaria, finding the Ammonites had also entered into the Confederacy with Egypt against him, he was some Time in doubt which first to fall upon.*

*Q. What was the Method taken in this Case?*

*A. He committed the Decision of the Matter to his Diviners, who consulting by the Entrails of their Sacrifices and their Arrows, determined for carrying on the War against the Jews first.*

*Q. How was the Manner of Divining by Arrows, so usual among those Idolaters?*

*A. They wrote on several Arrows the Names of the Cities they intended to make War against, then putting them altogether in a Quiver, they drew them out, as we draw Lots; and that City, whose Name was upon the Arrow first drawn out, they first assaulted.*

*Q. Did Nebuchadnezzar, upon this Divination, march against the Jews?*

*A. Yes, and in a few Days took all the Cities thereof, and laid Siege to Jerusalem; but Pharaoh Hophra coming out of Egypt with a great Army to the Relief of Zedekiah, he raised the Siege, and went against him; who, on his Approach, retired into his own Country, and left Zedekiah and his People to perish in that War which they had drawn him into.*

*Q. Did Nebuchadnezzar return to Jerusalem after this Retreat of the Egyptians?*

*A. Yes, and took it after the Siege had lasted about a Year.*

*Q. What became of Zedekiah after Jerusalem was taken?*

*A. He fled, and endeavour'd to escape over Jordan; but was pursued, taken, and carried before the King at Riblah in Syria, where he then resided, who having*

*Anno* having caused his Sons, and all his Princes, to be slain before his Face, commanded his Eyes to be put out, and then bound him in Fetters of Brass, and sent him to *Babylon*, where he died in Prison. After this he commanded *Nebuzaradan*, Captain of his Guards, to go to *Jerusalem*, and take all the Vessels out of the House of the Lord, and to gather together all the Riches which could be found, either in the King's House, or in the City; then to set the Temple and City on Fire, to overthrow the Walls, Fortresses, and Towers, and level to the Ground every Building therein; which was done accordingly, and so it continued Fifty-two Years afterwards.

---

## C H A P. VI.

*City of Tyre demolished; Temple of Belus; Walls of Babylon; Nebuchadnezzar's Palace; Hanging Gardens; Artificial Lake and Canal; Evilmerodach; Jehoiachim released; Salathiel; Aftyages; Cyaxares; Neriglissar; Belshazzar; Cræsus; Solon; Cyrus takes Babylon; Daniel preferred; Cyrus's Decree in Favour of the Jews; &c.*

*Anno* **W**HAT was the first Work Nebuchadnezzar set about after his Return from the Jewish War?

*Mun.* **A.** He settled his Affairs in Syria and Palestine, and out of the Spoils he had taken in that Expedition, made the Golden Image, which he dedicated to the Honour of Bel his God, in the Plains of Dura, Dan. iii. Then he came again into Syria, and laid Siege to Tyre.

*Q. Give*



*Q. Give me an Account of this City.*

*Ann.*

*A.* It was built by the *Zidonians* 240 Years before the Building of the Temple at *Jerusalem*; was very rich and in great Fame for its Traffic and Merchandize in those Days, and as yet had never submitted to any foreign Power.

*Q. Did Nebuchadnezzar employ all his Forces in this Siege?*

*A.* No, he sent *Nebuzaradan* again into the Land of *Judea* with Part of his Army, and ordered him to seize all the *Jewish* Race he could meet with, and he compleated the Desolation thereof, as also the Prophecies of *Isaiab*, *Jeremiah*, *Ezekiel*, &c. relating thereto.

*Q. What Wars did Pharoah-Hophra, or Apries, King of Egypt, engage in, after he had left *Judea*?*

*A.* He sent a great Army into *Libia* against the *Cyrenians*, which was almost all cut off, and occasioned a great many of the *Egyptians* to revolt from him.

*Q. What Method did he take to reduce them again to their Duty?*

*A.* Pharoah sent one *Anasis*, an Officer of his Court, to them; and while he was treating about the Affair, they put on his Head the *Ensigns of Royalty*, declared him King, and he staid amongst them.

*Q. Was not Apries incensed at this Action?*

*A.* He sent *Paterhemis*, another Officer of the first Rank, to arrest *Anasis*; which he not being able to effect, *Apries* in his Passion commanded his Ears and Nose to be cut off immediately.

*A. Was not this Indignity offered to a Person of the first Rank, resented by the Egyptians?*

*A.* They joined with the Malecontents in a general Revolt, and *Apries* was forced to flee into upper *Egypt*, towards *Ethiopia*, while *Anasis* held all the other Parts of his Kingdom.

*Q. While*

*Anno* Q. While these Things were doing in Egypt, how  
*Mun.* went on Nebuchadnezzar with the Siege of Tyre?

3434 A. After he had lain before it 13 Years, he took  
 and utterly destroy'd it, so as it never more recover'd  
 the former Glory.

Q. But was there not a famous City in that Place af-  
 terwards called Tyre?

A. There were at this Time two Cities of that Name,  
 one on the Continent, the other on the Island, into the lat-  
 ter of which, during this Siege, the Inhabitants moved  
 their Effects: It was that on the Continent only which  
 was taken by Nebuchadnezzar, the other escaped.

Q. Did Nebuchadnezzar take no Advantage of the  
 intestine Divisions in Egypt, after he had made himself  
 Master of Tyre?

A. He immediately marched his Army thither, and  
 brought all that Land in Subjection to him: and after  
 he had loaded himself and his Army with the rich Plun-  
 der of the Country, he came to an Agreement with  
 Amasis, confirm'd him in the Kingdom as his Deputy,  
 and returned to Babylon.

Q. How long did Amasis govern the Egyptians?

3435 A. When Nebuchadnezzar left Egypt, Apries came  
 out of his hiding Place, hired an Army of Foreigners,  
 and marched against him, gave him Battle near Memphis,  
 conquered him, took him, and carried him Prisoner to  
 Sais, and strangled him there; and without any farther  
 Opposition, held the whole Kingdom of Egypt after the  
 Death of Apries, 44 Years.

Q. How did Nebuchadnezzar employ himself after he  
 returned from the Egyptian Expedition?

A. He now had the Dream of the wonderful great  
 Tree, of which there is a full Account, Dan. chap. iv.  
 being now also at rest from all his Wars, and in full  
 Peace at Home, he applied himself to the finishing  
 his Building at Babylon.

Q. Who first founded this City?

A. Some

*A.* Some say *Semiramis*, others *Belus*; but by whomsoever it was first founded, *Nebuchadnezzar* made it one *Mun.* of the *Wonders of the World*.

*Q.* What were the most famous Works therein?

*A.* (1) The Walls of the City. (2) The Temple of *Belus*. (3) *Nebuchadnezzar's* Palace, and the Hanging Gardens therein. (4) The Banks of the River. (5) The artificial Lake, and the artificial Canal for draining it.

*Q.* Of what Bigness were the Walls?

*A.* They were in Thickness 89 Foot, in Height 350, and in Compass 60 of our Miles: They were also surrounded on the Outside with a large Ditch of Water, lined with Bricks on both Sides, after the manner of a Counterscarpe.

*Q.* Of what Materials were they made?

*A.* They were built of large Bricks, cemented together with a glutinous Slime, arising out of the Earth in that Country, which soon grows harder than the Bricks or Stones themselves.

*Q.* Of what Form were they?

*A.* Exactly square, and 15 Miles long on each Side. In the four Squares were 100 Gates, made of solid Brass, 25 of a Side; between every two of these Gates were three Towers, and four more at the Corners of the great Square, every one of which was 10 Foot higher than the Walls: From the 25 Gates in each Side went 25 Streets, so that the whole Number of Streets were 50, whereof 25 went one Way, and 25 the other, directly crossing each other at Right Angles.

*Q.* Were there any more Streets than these Fifty?

*A.* There were also four half Streets, which were built but one Side, having the Wall on the other; these were 200 Foot broad, the rest 150: The Houses were all built three or four Stories high; the Space within the Middle of each Square was all void Ground, for Yards, Gardens, and other such uses: And a Branch of the River *Euphrates* ran quite cross the City.

*Q.* What

*Ann. Mun.* Q. What was the next great Work of Nebuchadnezzar at Babylon?

*Mun.* A. The Temple of Belus; but the Tower in it was built many Ages before: At the Foundation it was a Square of a Furlong on each Side, that is half a Mile in the whole Compass, and consisted of eight Towers, one built above, over the other.

Q. How high were these Towers?

A. They were each 75 Foot high, and in them were many great Rooms, with arched Roofs, supported by Pillars: These were all made Part of the Temple after the Tower became consecrated to that idolatrous Use: The uppermost Story was the most sacred, and where their chiefest Devotions were performed: On the Top of the Tower, over the whole, was an Observatory, by the Benefit of which the Babylonians advanced their Skill in Astronomy beyond all other Nations.

Q. Who is supposed to have built this Tower?

A. Bochartus asserts it to have been the very same which was built at the Confusion of Tongues; and till the Time of Nebuchadnezzar, the Temple of Belus contained no more than this Tower.

Q. What Additions did he make to it?

A. He enlarged it by vast Buildings erected round it, in a Square of a Mile in Circumference, in which were several Gates leading to the Temple, of solid Brass.

Q. Who was this Bel, the great God of the Babylonians, to whom this Temple was dedicated?

A. He is supposed to be the same with Nimrod, and to have been called Bel from his Dominion, and Nimrod from his Rebellion; for Bel, or Baal, signifies Lord, and Nimrod a Rebel, in the Jewish and Chaldaean Languages.

Q. To what Sum are the Riches of this Temple said to amount, when it was plundered by Xerxes?

A. The Images and sacred Utensils were all of solid Gold, and are supposed to amount to above one and twenty

twenty Millions of our Money, and the Treasure in it *Anno*  
to the Value of as much more. *Mun.*

*Q. Give me some Account of the King's Palace, and of the Hanging Gardens therein?*

*A.* On the East Side of the River stood the old Palace of the Kings of *Babylon*, which was four Miles in Compass; and exactly over-against it, on the West Side, stood the new Palace, which *Nebuchadnezzar* built.

*Q. How large was the new Palace?*

*A.* It was eight Miles in Compass surrounded with three Walls, one within another, and strongly fortify'd according to the Way of those Times.

*Q. Of what Invention were the Hanging Gardens, so celebrated among the Greeks?*

*A.* They contained a Square of 400 Foot on every Side, and were carried up aloft in the Air, in the Manner of several large Terrasses, one above another, the highest of which equal'd the Height of the Walls of the City.

*Q. How was these Terrasses supported?*

*A.* By vast Arches, built upon Arches, one above another, and strengthened by a Wall surrounding them on every Side, of twenty-two Foot Thickness.

*Q. How was the Floorage contrived to keep the Moisture of the Mould from running down through the Arches?*

*A.* On the Top of the Arches were first laid large flat Stones, 16 Foot long, and 4 broad; then a Layer of Reed, mixed with Bitumen; over this two Rows of Bricks, cemented together with Plaister; and then over all were laid thick Sheets of Lead, and lastly the Mould of the Garden.

*Q. How thick was the Mould, or Earth, laid hereon?*

*A.* It was deep enough for the greatest Trees to take Root in, and such were planted all over it, in every Terrass, as were also all other Trees, Plants, and Flowers,



*Anno* Flowers, that were proper for a Garden of Pleasure.

*Q. After what Manner was it water'd?*

*A.* In the upper Terrass there was an Engine, whereby Water was drawn up out of the River to water the whole Garden.

*Q. Now describe the Artificial Lake, and the Artificial Canals, above mentioned?*

*A.* The River *Euphrates* being always observed to overflow its Banks in the Months of *June, July, and August*, for the preventing hereof two artificial Canals were made, to drain off those Overflowings into the *Tigris*. This is said to have been made by *Gobaris*, or *Gobrias*.

*Q. Did Nebuchadnezzar make no Addition to this Work for farther securing the Country?*

*A.* He built also prodigious Banks of Brick and Bitumen on each Side of the River, which were carried from the Head of the said Canals, down to the City; but the most wonderful Part of this Work was within the City itself.

*Q. What was that?*

*A.* On each Side of the River he built from the Bottom of it a great Wall for its Bank, of the same Thickness with the Walls of the City; and over-against every Street that crossed the said River, he made a Brazen Gate on each Side, which Gates were open by Day for the Citizens to pass by Boat from one Side to the other.

*Q. To what Length was this Work carried?*

*A.* It was carried on both Sides the River to the Length of 160 Furlongs, which is Twenty of our Miles.

*Q. Which Way was the River turned while these Banks were building?*

*A.* For this Purpose was made a prodigious artificial Lake, according to the lowest Computation 40 Miles square, and 160 in Compass, and in Depth seventy-five Foot.

*Q. Now*

*Q. Now go on with the History of Nebuchadnezzar?* *Anno Mun.*

*A. About 12 Months after his last Dream, walking in his Gardens, and taking a Prospect of the whole City, he proudly boasted of his great Works, (see Dan. iv. 30.) but there came a Voice from Heaven to rebuke his Pride.*

*Q. What was it that was here told him?*

*A. That his Kingdom was departed from him, and that for seven Years he should have his Dwelling among the wild Beasts of the Field: Hereon he fell distracted, and continued so for seven Years, eating Grass like the Oxen, and taking his Lodging in the open Air, till his Hair was like Eagles Feathers, and his Nails like Birds Claws.*

*Q. Did his Understanding return to him again at the End of this Term?*

*A. Yes, and he was restored to his Kingdom, and to his former Majesty and Honour; and hereon being made fully sensible of the Almighty Power of the God of Heaven, he did, by a public Decree, make Acknowledgement hereof through all the Babylonish Empire: After this he lived only one Year.*

*Q. Who succeeded him?*

*A. Evilmerodach his Son; who as soon as he was settled on the Throne, released Jehoiachin, King of Judah, out of Prison, and promoted him to great Honour, placing him at his Table before all the other Kings and great Men of the Empire. In this Year Cræsus succeeded Alyattes, his Father, in the Kingdom of Lydia.*

*Q. How long did Evilmerodach reign?*

*A. His Lusts and other Wickedness had made him so intolerable, that after two Years his own Relations put him to Death, and Neriglissar, his Sister's Husband, who was at the Head of the Conspiracy, reigned in his stead. It is supposed Jehoiachin, his Favourite, was slain with him, whose Son Salathiel now became nominal Prince of the Jews: Now also Astyages, King of Media,*

*Anno Media*, died; and after him *Cyaxares* the second, his *Mun.* Son, succeeded in the Civil Government of the Kingdom, and *Cyrus*, his Grandson by his Daughter *Mandana*, in the Military.

*Q. How did Neriglissar behave himself in the Government of this mighty Empire?*

*A.* On his coming to the Crown, he made great Preparations for a War against the *Medes*; *Cyaxares* hearing of it, sent for *Cyrus* out of *Persia* to his Assistance; and on his Arrival with 30,000 *Persians*, *Cyaxares* made him General of the *Medes* also, and sent him with the joint Forces of both Nations against the *Babylonians*.

*Q. What Provision did Neriglissar make to oppose this Invasion?*

3446 *A.* He sent Ambassadors to all the neighbouring Nations, to call in their Aid, and drew them all into Confederacy with him for the ensuing War.

*Q. What was the Consequence of these great Preparations?*

*A.* When the Confederates on both Sides were all drawn together, they came to a fierce Battle, in which *Neriglissar* was slain, and the *Affyrian* Army routed.

*Q. Who commanded after Neriglissar was killed?*

*A.* *Craesus*, King of *Lydia*, being in Dignity next to him, took the Command of the vanquished Army, and made as good a Retreat as he could.

*Q. Did not Cyrus pursue them?*

*A.* Yes, and overtook them at a Disadvantage the next Day, and gained a compleat Victory over them, taking their Camp and Baggage: Hereon *Craesus* fled out of *Affyria*, and made the best of his Way into his own Country.

*Q. Who succeeded Neriglissar in the Empire of Affyria?*

*A.* *Laborascarchad*, who was given to all Manner of Wickedness, and slain by his own People, after he had reigned only nine Months.

*Q. What*

*Q. What particular Acts of tyrannical Violence are recorded of him?* Anno Mun.

*A.* There are two particularly mentioned; he slew the only Son of *Gobrias*, one of his principal Nobility, at a Hunting, to which he had invited him, for no other Reason, but that he had thrown his Dart with Success at a wild Beast, when he himself had missed it.

*Q. What is the other?*

*A.* He caused *Gadates* to be castrated, only because one of his Concubines had commended him for an handsome Man: These Wrongs drove those two Noblemen, with the Provinces which they governed, into a Revolt to *Cyrus*; and the whole State of the *Babylonish* Empire suffered by it.

*Q. Who succeeded Laborosoarchad?*

*A.* *Nabonadius*, called in Scripture *Belsazzar*: In the first Year of this King's Reign, *Daniel* had reveal'd to him the Vision of the four Monarchies, and of the Kingdom of the *Messiah*, that was to succeed after them. 3149  
*Daniel*, chap. vii.

*Q. How did the Medes and Persians manage the War against the Babylonians after their late Defeat?*

*A.* *Cyrus*, when he was entered into Winter Quarters, sent for *Cyaxares*, to consult about the Method of carrying on the War for the future.

*Q. What was the Issue of their Consultations?*

*A.* They found, by plundering the Countries in the *Babylonish* Empire, they did not at all enlarge their own, therefore they resolved to apply themselves to the besieging their Fortresses and taking of their Towns, that so they might make themselves Masters of the Country, and *Cyrus* made great Progress herein.

*Q. What Course did the King of Babylon take to put a Stop to this prevailing Power?*

*A.* He took a great Part of his Treasure with him, and went into *Lydia*, to King *Cresus* his Confederatè, and with his Money hired a very numerous Army of all the Nations of *Lesser Asia*, and appointed *Cresus* to be

*Arno* be their General, and sent them to invade *Medea*, then *Mun.* returned to *Babylon*.

Q. Was not *Cyrus* informed of these Proceedings time enough, to make suitable Preparations to withstand the Storm?

A. Yes, and he marched against *Craesus*, gave him Battle, and put all his numerous Army to flight; and taking the Advantage of his Victory, pursued him close into *Lydia*, and there came up with him just as he had dismiss'd his Auxiliaries.

Q. Did *Craesus* surrender here?

A. No, he got all his own Forces together, and stood a Battle against him; but being soon overpower'd he was forced to retreat to *Sardis*, the chief City of his Kingdom, where *Cyrus* immediately shut him up by a close Siege; and while he lay here, he celebrated the Funeral of *Abradates* and *Panthea*, his Wife.

Q. Who was this *Abradates*?

A. He was Prince of *Susban*, under the *Babylonians*, and had revolted to *Cyrus* about two Years before, and happened to be slain in this War: His Wife *Panthea*, out of Grief for his Death, slew herself upon his dead Body; *Cyrus* honourably buried them both together, and a stately Monument was erected over them near the River *Pactolus*, where it remained many Ages after.

Q. How did *Craesus* defend himself in *Sardis*?

A. He sent to all his Allies for Succours, but before any of them could arrive, *Cyrus* took the City.

Q. How was *Craesus* used when he was made Prisoner?

A. He was condemned to be burnt to Death; accordingly a great Pile of Wood was laid together, and he placed on the Top of it; in this Extremity he cry'd out, with a great Sigh, three Times, *Solon! Solon! Solon!*

Q. What was the Meaning of this Out-cry?

A. *Solon* was a wise *Athenian*, and the greatest Philosopher of his Time, who coming to *Sardis*, *Craesus*,  
out



out of the Pride of his Mind, caused all his Riches, *Anno* *Gr.* to be shewn unto him, expecting he should have *Mun.* applauded his Felicity, and have pronounced him of all Men the most happy herein.

*Q. What was Solon's Observation to him on this his Vanity?*

*A.* He told him plainly, that he could pronounce no Man happy as long as he lived, because no one could foresee what might happen unto him before Death, of which Truth *Cresus* being now convinced, he called on the Name of *Solon*.

*Q. Was this Exclamation of any Service to him in preventing his Execution?*

*A.* When the Story was related to *Cyrus*, it excited in him such a Sense of the Uncertainty of human Felicity, that he spared his Life, and made use of him as one of his chief Counsellors all his Days, and at his Death recommended him to his Son *Cambyses*.

*Q. Whither did Cyrus go, after he had made himself Master of Sardis, and subdued the several Nations in Lesser Asia?*

*A.* He went into *Syria* and *Arabia*, and there did the same Thing; then marched into the upper Countries of *Asia*, and there also settled all Things under his Dominion, and now entered *Assyria* again; and having overthrown *Belshazzar* in Battle, shut him up in *Babylon*, and there besieged him.

*Q. Were not the Walls of this City impregnable, and the taking of it by a Siege looked upon as a Thing impracticable?*

*A.* Yes, but *Cyrus*, after he had wasted near two Years before it with little Success, lighted on a Stratagem, which, with little Difficulty, made him Master of the Place.

*Q. What was this Device?*

*A.* Understanding that a great Festival was to be kept at *Babylon* on a Day approaching, he sent up a Party of his Men to the Head of the Canal (above described) which led to the great Lake, with Orders at a Time set,

*Anno* set, to break down the great Bank, which was between  
*Mun.* the River and that Canal, and so turn the whole Current that way into the Lake; and then towards the Evening of the said Feast Day, he opened the Head of the Trenches on both Sides the River above the City, to let the Water of it run into them.

3465 Q. Did he by this Means drain the River which ran through the Town?

A. By the Middle of the same Night it was in a Manner empty, and the Parties on each Side entered the Channel according to their Orders, the one having Gobrias, the other Gadates, for their Guide; and finding the Gates leading down to the River open, thro' Neglect in that Time of Lofeness, they ascended thro' them into the City; and both Parties meeting at the Palace, as had been concerted, they first killed the Guards, then rushed in and took the Palace, where finding the King with his Sword drawn at the Head of his Assistants, they slew him, valiantly fighting for his Life, and all those that were with him.

Q. Did Cyrus put all the Inhabitants of Babylon to the Sword, after he became Master of it?

A. No, but very few; for after the King's Death he made a Proclamation of Safety to all such as should bring in their Arms, and all submitted to the Conqueror without farther Resistance; this concluded all Cyrus's Conquests, after a War of twenty-one Years: In this Feast Belshazzar saw the Hand-writing on the Wall, Dan. v. And now the Babylonish Empire ended, which continued 209 Years.

Q. Who took the Kingdom of Babylon after the Death of Belshazzar?

A. Cyaxares, called in Scripture Darius the Mede; for Cyrus, as long as his Uncle lived, allowed him a joint Title with him in the Empire; but the whole Power of the Army, and the chief Conduct of all Affairs being still in his Hands, he only was looked on as the Supreme Governor of that Empire which he had erected.

Q. After

*Q. After Cyrus had settled his Affairs in Babylon, Anno  
whither did he go?*

*Mun.*

*A.* He went to pay his Father and Mother a Visit, who were still living, and on his Return thro' Media, he married the Daughter of Cyaxares, having for her Dowry that Kingdom in Reversion, after her Father's Death, she being the only Daughter.

*Q. Did Cyaxares accompany his Son and Daughter to Babylon?*

*A.* Yes, and on their Arrival there, they concerted together for settling the whole Empire, and divided it into 120 Provinces; over these were appointed three Presidents, to whom was entrusted the main Government of the Empire; of which Daniel was the first, and at this Time he is thought to have obtained the Decree in Favour of the Jews.

*Q. Did not Cyrus after this make an Expedition into Syria?*

*A.* Yes, and left Cyaxares at Babylon, to govern the Affairs of the Empire, and during that Time happened what is related concerning Daniel's being cast into the Lyons Den, &c.

*Q. What Success had Cyrus in this his last Undertaking?*

*A.* He reduced all under him as far as the Red-Sea and the Confines of Ethiopia; about two Years after Cyaxares died, and Cambyses being also dead in Persia, Cyrus return'd, and took upon him the whole Government of this vast Empire, over which he reigned 7 Years.

## C H A P. III.

*The Jews return from Captivity; Build the second Temple; Description of it; Cambyfes kills Apis, the God of the Egyptians; Smerdis usurps his Crown; Samaritans obstruct the Work of the Temple; Darius ratifies the Decree of Cyrus; Jewish State thoroughly restored; &c.*

*Anno* **W**HAT Number of the Jews were gathered together  
*Mun.* out of the Kingdom of Babylon, on Cyrus's having issued out his Decree for restoring to them their own  
3468 Land, and for rebuilding the Temple at Jerusalem?

*A.* Forty two thousand, three hundred, and sixty Persons, with their Servants, which amounted to seven thousand three hundred, and thirty seven more.

*Q.* Who were their chief Leaders?

*A.* Zerubbabel the Son of Salathiel, and Joshua the Son of Josedack the High-Priest.

*Q.* Did Cyrus assist the Jews in rebuilding the Temple?

*A.* He ordered all the Vessels of Gold and Silver to be restored, which were taken from thence by Nebuchadnezzar.

*Q.* Did only the Tribes of Judah and Benjamin take the Benefit of this Decree, and return again into their own Land?

*A.* Some of them who were carried away by Tiglath-Pileser, Salmaneser, and Esarhaddon, &c. came also to make up the Number above-mentioned.

*Q.* How many Courses of the Priests returned?

*A.* Only four, the rest either tarried behind, or were extinct; however each of these subdivided themselves into six, taking the Names of those that were wanting,

ing, and so the old Number of the *Courses*, as established by King *David*, was still kept up, and also *Mun.* the old *Titles*.

*Q. What was the first Thing done at Jerusalem, on their Return into the Land?*

*A.* All the People which were returned to their several Cities, met there, and celebrated the *Feast of Trumpets*. (This happened on their 7<sup>th</sup> Month, which is called *Tisri*, and began about the 10<sup>th</sup> of our *September*; but before this Time, *Tisri* was reckoned every where to begin the Year; it being the general Opinion of the Ancients, that the World was created, and first began, at the Time of the *Autumnal Equinox*.) On the 10<sup>th</sup> of this Month was the *Great Day of Expiation*, when the *High-Priest* made Attonement for all the People of *Israel*; and on the 15<sup>th</sup> Day began the *Feast of Tabernacles*.

*Q. Did the People stay at Jerusalem during all these Solemnities?*

*A.* They employ'd all this Time to set forward the Restoration of *God's Worship* again in that Place, towards which they all contributed according to their Abilities.

*Q. To what Sum did all the Freewill-Offerings, made on this Occasion, amount?*

*A.* Besides the Vestments for the Priests, which were one Hundred, there was given in the whole 75,500 *l.* of our Money towards building the *Temple*.

*Q. Was this Sum raised by so small a Number of People just returned from Captivity?*

*A.* It is supposed the whole Nation of the *Jews*, those who staid behind, as well as those who returned, made their Offerings also; for every *Jew* paid 18<sup>d.</sup> yearly towards its Repair, and the Support of the Service in it, into what Part soever they were dispersed, through the whole World.

*Q. Did they begin the Work upon this Fund?*

*A.* Yes, and the first Thing they did, was to restore the *Altar of the Lord* for *Burnt-Offerings*.



*Anno* Q. *How was this made?*

*Min.* A. It was a large Pile, built of unhewn Stones, 48 Foot square at the Bottom, and 15 Foot high; on the Top was a Hearth of solid Brass, 36 Foot square; at the four Corners of the Altar were fixed four small Pillars 18 Inches high, in the Form of an exact Cube, and these were the *Horns of the Altar*, so often mentioned in Scripture; in the Middle of these was a Hollow, into which some of the Blood of the Sacrifices was always put.

Q. *When did they lay the Foundation of the Temple?*

A. In the second Month of the second Year, after their Return from Captivity; and it was built exactly of the same Length and Breadth with the first.

Q. *Did the Jews meet with any Obstructions in carrying on this Work?*

A. The Samaritans hearing of it, came thither, and expressed a great Desire to worship God at the same Temple and to join with them in building it; but were refused by Zerubbabel and Joshua, as not being of the House of Israel: Incensed at this, they did what they could to hinder the Work.

Q. *Did they prevail in this Matter?*

A. They could not alter Cyrus's Decree, but they bribed his Ministers and Officers concerned therein, and retarded the Execution of it: This was the Occasion of Daniel's Mourning and Fasting for three Weeks together; (see Chap. i.) and he seems to have died soon after.

Q. *Was not the Death of Daniel a great Loss to the Jews, and did it not give their Enemies great Advantages against them?*

A. They could not with all their underhand Dealings put any Stop to the Work, in which the Jews were much helped by the Tyrians and Zidonians, who not only furnished them with Artificers, but also brought the Cedars which Cyrus had now given them, out of the Forrest of Libanus.

Q. *How*

*Q. How long did Cyrus, their Great Benefactor, Anno live?* *Mun.*

*A.* He died in the 7th Year after the Restoration of the Jews, and was succeeded by his Son Cambyfes, 3475 who is called in Scripture *Abasuerus*.

*Q. How did the Jews proceed in their Building under this new Government?*

*A.* It went on but heavily during the Reign of Cambyfes; and though he would not revoke his Father's Decree, he in a great Measure defeated the Design of it, by the great Discouragement which he gave them.

*Q. What Wars did Cambyfes wage during his Government of the Babylonish Empire?*

*A.* He had not long been King, before he resolved upon a War against *Amasis*, King of Egypt, who had subjected himself to Cyrus, but on his Death had withdrawn his Obedience from him.

*Q. What Opposition did the Egyptians make against him?*

*A.* *Amasis* being newly dead, and succeeded by *Pfammenitus* his Son (after Cambyfes had taken *Pelufium*, 3478 the Key of Egypt on that Side) he resolved to oppose his farther Progress, marched against him, and gave him Battle; but being vanquished, the greatest Part of his Army was cut to Pieces, and the Remainder fled to *Memphis*.

*Q. What Advantage did Cambyfes make of this Victory?*

*A.* He pursued the Enemy to the Walls of *Memphis*, and sent an Herald into the City, to summon them to surrender; but the People in their Rage slew the Herald, and tore all that was with him to Pieces.

*Q. What Revenge did Cambyfes take for this Barbarity?*

*A.* He soon took the Place, and caused ten Egyptians of the first Rank, to be publicly executed for every one of those that were thus slain. The eldest Son of *Pfammenitus* was one of this Number.

*Anno* Q. Was *Plammenitus* himself taken Prisoner at *Mem-*  
*Mun.* phis?

~ A. Yes, and *Cambyfes* gave him his Life, but on his endeavouring to raise new Troubles, he was forced to drink Bull's Blood, and died, after a Reign of six Months: Hereon, all *Egypt* submitted to *Cambyfes*.

Q. Did he extend his Conquests any farther?

3480 A. At his Return Home, he designed three Expeditions for the next Year; the first against the *Carthaginians*, the second against the *Hammonians*, and the third against the *Ethiopians*.

Q. Were these Designs put in Execution?

A. The *Phenicians* refusing to assist him against the *Carthaginians*, who were descended from them, he was forced to drop this Project, but his Heart was intent upon the other two, and he sent Ambassadors into *Ethiopia*, to serve as Spies, to learn the State and Strength of the Country.

Q. How were they treated by the *Ethiopians*?

A. Being apprised of the End of their coming, they were treated with Contempt; at which *Cambyfes* being exceedingly exasperated, in a mad Humour, ordered his Army immediately to march against them, leaving only the *Grecian* Auxiliaries behind, to keep the Country in Awe during his Absence.

Q. What Success had he in this Expedition?

A. On his coming to *Thebes* in upper *Egypt*, he detached 50,000 Men to go against the *Hammonians*, with Orders to destroy their Country, and burn the Temple of *Jupiter Ammon*, and madly marched on with the rest of his Army against the *Ethiopians*; but the former Part perished in a Torrent of Sand, and he was obliged to return to *Thebes* with the Remainder, having lost a great Part of of them for want of Provisions.

Q. Whither did he march from *Thebes*?

A. To *Memphis*, where he dismissed all the *Greeks*, and sent them Home; but finding the City, on his Entrance,

trance, all in Mirth and Jolity, because their God *Amo Apis* had then appeared unto them, he fell into a great *Mun* Rage, and commanded the Beast to be brought to him, and at the Sight of such a God, he drew out his Dagger, and run it into the Thigh.

*Q. What Kind of Beast was this their God?*

*A.* The chief God of the Egyptians was *Osiris*, him they worshipped in the Shape of a *Bull*, with particular Marks, and when he died, buried him with great Solemnity, then sought for another with the same Marks, which sometimes it was many Years before they could find, but they having found such an one on *Cambyfes's* Return to *Memphis*, from his *Ethiopic* Expedition, was the Reason of their Rejoicing at that Time; and the Egyptians say, he was stricken with Madness for this Act of Impiety, soon after.

*Q. Was not Cambyfes supposed to be mad long before this Time?*

*A.* We have divers Instances that he was.

*Q. Mention some of them?*

*A.* He had a Brother, the only Son of *Cyrus*, besides himself, born of the same Mother, whose Name was *Smerdis*, and who accompanied him in his Egyptian Expedition, against whom he contracted such an Envy, on Account of his Strength, that he sent him back into *Persia*; and soon after, dreaming that one told him, *Smerdis* sat on the Throne, he sent *Prexaspes* after him to put him to Death: He also married his own Sister; caused several of the principal of his Followers to be buried alive; and killed *Crasus* for advising him against such Proceedings, &c.

*Q. What Reception did Cambyfes meet with, on his Return to Persia?*

*A.* Coming through *Syria*, he met with a Herald, 3482 who being sent from *Shushan*, came into the Army, and there proclaimed *Smerdis*, the Son of *Cyrus*, King.

*Q. Was not Smerdis slain by his Brother's Order in Persia before this Time?*

H 4

*A.* Yes,

*Anno* *A.* Yes, but *Cambyſes*, when he departed from *Sa-Mun. ſhan*, left *Patixithes* the ſupreme Government of his Affairs, during his Expedition into *Egypt*: This *Patixithes* was one of the chief of the *Magians*, and had a Brother exactly like *Smerdis*, and perhaps called by the ſame Name, and being informed of the Death of that Prince, he placed his Brother on the Throne, giving out that he was the true *Smerdis*.

*Q.* What Method did *Cambyſes* take to ſuppreſs this Uſurper?

*A.* He firſt lamented much, that he had been led by the Identity of Name, to murder his Brother; then ordered his Army to ſet forward to depoſe the *Magian*, but as he mounted his Horſe, his Sword fell out of the Scabbard, and gave him a Wound in the Thigh, of which he died a few Days after.

*Q.* Was not this reckoned by the Egyptians as an eſſential Judgment from Heaven upon him?

*A.* They remarked, that this Wound was in the ſame Part of the Body where he had before wounded the *Apis*, and happened upon him for that Faſt, and perſe- chance they were not much out in it.

*Q.* In what Manner did the Impoſtor *Smerdis*, called in Scripture *Artaxerxes*, act?

*A.* On a Remonſtrance of the *Samaritans*, he iſſued out an Order to prohibit the *Jews* from proceeding any farther in the Work of the Temple: To make himſelf reſpected, he granted to all his Subjects a Freedom from Taxes; and to ſecure himſelf in caſe of a Diſcovery, he married *Atoſſa*, Daughter of *Cyrus*, who had before been the Wiſe of *Cambyſes*.

*Q.* Did theſe Favours and Precautions make him leſs ſuſpected?

*A.* His never appearing in Publick augmented the Suſpicion of his Subjects; and *Otaſes*, a noble *Perſian*, detected the Fraud.

*Q.* By what Means could he fully ſatisfy himſelf in this Matter?

*A.* He



*A.* He had a Daughter named *Phedyma*, who had *Arno* been one of *Cambyses's* Wives, and was now kept by *Mun-* the *Magian* in the same Quality; he sent to her to take an Opportunity, when he should next lye with her, to feel whether he had any Ears or not, for *Cyrus* had caused the Ears of *Smerdis*, the *Magian*, to be cut off, for some Crime which deserved it.

*Q.* Did *Phedyma* make the Tryal as she was directed?

*A.* Yes, and sent Word to her Father, that the Person she lay with had no Ears: Whereupon *Otanes* with six more of the *Persian* Nobility, entered the Palace, slew the Usurper and his Brother *Patixithes*, and bringing out their Heads to the People, declared the whole Imposture.

*Q.* Were not the People enraged at this Cheat?

*A.* They immediately fell on the whole Sect of *Magians*, of which the *Impostor* was, and slew all of them they met with that Day.

*Q.* What were the reigning Religions at this Time?

*A.* All the Idolatry of the World was divided between two Sects, the *Sabians*, who were the Worshipers of *Images*, and the *Magians*, who were the Worshipers of *Fire*; the former first began among the *Chaldeans*, and the latter in *Persia* and *India*, where they remain to this Day.

*Q.* What were the chief Tenets of the *Magians*?

*A.* They worshipped by *Fire*, and abhorred *Images*; *Light* was in the highest Veneration among them, as being, in their Opinion, the true Representative of the Good God; but *Darkness* they hated, being, as they thought, the truest Representative of the Evil God, whom they ever had in the utmost Detestation, as we have the *Devil*; for an Instance hereof, whenever they had Occasion to mention his Name, they always wrote it backwards, and inverted, as thus, *uowizay*

*Q.* When the seven Princes had slain the Usurper, how did they settle the Government?

*Anno* *Mun.* *A.* They agreed that the *Monarchy* should be continued as it had ben established by *Cyrus*, and that for determining which of them should be King, they should all meet next Morning on Horseback, at a Place appointed, against the Rising of the Sun, and he whose Horse should first Neigh, should be placed on the Throne.

*Q.* Which of the seven was elected King?

*A.* *Darius*, whose Father *Hystaspes* had followed *Cyrus* in all his Wars, and was Governor of the Province of *Persia*, in which he continued for many Years after his Son's Advancement to the Throne.

*Q.* Was there no Artifice made use of to secure the Crown to *Darius*?

*A.* His Groom being informed of what was agreed on by the seven Princes, ty'd a Mare to the Place where they were the next Morning to meet, and brought his Master's Horse thither to cover her, which *Darius's* Horse at Sight of the Place remembering, ran thither and neighed, whereon he was chosen King.

*Q.* The Empire of Persia being thus restored, what Steps did *Darius* take to establish himself in it?

*A.* He took to Wife *Atossa* and *Artistana*, who was Daughter of *Cyrus* also, and a Virgin when he 3484 married her, and the most beloved by him of all his Wives: He took also *Pharnys*, the Daughter of the true *Smerdis*, and Sister to *Cambyfes*, and *Phedyma* the Daughter of *Otaner*.

*Q.* What Encouragement did the Jews meet with towards finishing the Temple, during the Reign of *Darius*?

*A.* The *Samaritans* still endeavoured to hinder the Work, and applied themselves to *Tatnai*, *Prefect* of the Provinces of *Syria* and *Palestine*, (one of the twenty *Prefectures* into which *Darius* had now divided the Empire) who sent to the King to know his Pleasure concerning it.

*Q.* What

*Q. What Answer did Tatnai receive to these Letters?*

*A. That the Decree of Cyrus should be fully and effectually put in Execution, and that whoever obstructed the Work should have his House pulled down, a Gallows should be made of the Timber of it, and he be hanged thereon. The publishing this Decree at Jerusalem may be reckoned the thorough Restoration of the Jewish State.*

*Q. How did the Babylonians bear to submit to the Persians, on their having removed the Imperial Seat from Babylon to Shushan?*

*A. They revolted on this Occasion, and gave Darius the Trouble of a Siege, which lasted 20 Months 'ere he reduced them.*

*Q. What Method did the Babylonians take to enable themselves to endure a long Siege?*

*A. The most barbarous that ever any Nation practised; for to make their Provisions last the longer, they cut off all unnecessary Mouths amongst them, excepting only that every Man was allowed to save one of his Wives, and a Maid-Servant to do the Work of the House; therefore drawing together the Women, Children, &c. they strangled them all; and hereby signally fulfilled the Prophecy of *Isaiab*, Chapter *xviii. 9.**

*Q. How did Darius take Babylon at last?*

*A. By the Stratagem of Zopirus, one of his chief Commanders, who cut off his own Nose and Ears, and mangled his Body, then fled in this Condition to the Besieged, where feigning to have suffered all this by the Cruelty of Darius, he was made chief Commander of their Forces, and made Use of this Trust, to deliver the City to his Master, which could scarce have been taken any other Way.*

*Q. How did Darius act when he became Master of the City?*

*Ann.* *A.* He rewarded *Zopirus* with the highest Honour all his Life after; then took away all the Hundred Gates from *Babylon*; beat down the Walls from two hundred Cubits to fifty; gave the Inhabitants for a Spoil to his *Persians*; and having impal'd three thousand of the most guilty, he pardoned all the rest; but by Reason of the Destruction they had made of their Women in the Beginning of the Siege, he was forced to send for fifty thousand of that Sex out of other Provinces, to supply them with Wives, without which the Place must soon have been depopulated, as it was in a little Time after.

*Q.* Was the Temple of Jerusalem finished in the 349<sup>th</sup> Reign of Darius?

*A.* Yes, and the Dedication of it was celebrated by the *Priests* and *Levites*, and all the rest of the Congregation of *Israel*, with great Joy and Solemnity.



CHAP. VIII.

*Of Zerubbabel; Mordecai and Ananias's Embassy to Darius; Aristagoras's Rebellion; War between the Persians and Grecians; Hestiazus; Miltiades; Artaphernes; Cimon; Xerxes; Thucydides; Herodotus; Leonidas; Themistocles beats Xerxes's Fleet, and drives him from Athens; The Battle of Platea and Mycale; &c.*

**T**HE Tribute of Samaria having been first assigned Anno by Cyrus, and afterwards by Darius, for the Reparation of the Temple, &c. did the Samaritans pay it now that Building was finished?

*A.* On their stopping Payment, Zerubbabel the Governor of the Jews, with Mordecai and Ananias, two other principal Men among them, went with a Complaint to Darius, of the Wrong done them.

*Q.* What was the Success of this Embassy?

*A.* They obtained a Royal Order to his Officers at Samaria, strictly commanding them to take effectual Care to observe his Edict, in paying their Tribute as formerly; and after this we hear of no more Opposition concerning this Matter, till the Time of Sennacherib.

*Q.* Where did Darius make his next Expedition after the Reduction of Babylon?

*A.* He marched against the Scythians, who inhabited those Countries which lie between the Danube and the Tanais; and having passed the Thracian Bosphorus, subdued all Thrace, then passed the Danube into their Country.

*Q.* What Defence did these People make against him?

*A.* They



*Anno* *A.* They fled on his Approach, and he having pursued them for three Months through several desert and uncultivated Countries, where they drew him on Purpose to harass and destroy his Army, he was glad to return with the Loss of one Half of his Men; and had not *Hefstius* persuaded the *Ionians*, who had the Care of his Fleet, to stay and afford him a Passage back, he and the Remainder must have perished also.

3492

*Q.* Whilst Darius went against the Scythians, who was left in Thrace to settle that Country under his Obedience?

*A.* *Megabyfus*, one of his chief Commanders, who, on his Master's repassing the *Bosphorus*, returned to him to *Sardis*, and from thence accompanied him back to *Susa*, having appointed *Artaphernes*, one of his Brothers, Governor of *Sardis*, and *Otanes* chief Commander of *Thrace*, &c..

*Q.* Who was this *Otanes*?

*A.* He was the Son of *Sisamnes*, one of the Royal Judges of *Persia*, who having been convicted of Bribery and Corruption by *Cambyfes*, there is related this remarkable Instance of that King's Justice towards him: He caused him to be flea'd alive, and making with his Skin a Covering for the Seat of the Tribunal, made this his Son, whom he appointed to succeed him in his Office; sit thereon, that, being thus put in Mind of his Father's Punishment, he might thereby be admonished to avoid his Crime.

*Q.* What Method did Darius take to enlarge his Dominions Eastward?

*A.* He first built a Fleet of Ships, gave the Command of it to *Scylax* a Grecian, and sent him down the River *Indus*, to make the best Discoveries he could of those Parts; on his Return, *Darius* entered *India* with an Army, and brought all that large Country under him.

*Q.* What was the Tribute he received from thence?

*A.* An Attic Talent of Gold for every Day in the Year, which amounts to 3000 l. of our Money.

*Q.* Did

*Q. Did there not happen a Sedition in Naxos, the chief Anno Island of the Cyclades in the Egean Sea, (now called Mun. the Archipelago) about this Time?*

*A. Yes, and the wealthiest of the Inhabitants being overpowered by the Populace, were expelled the Island; whereon retiring to Miletus, they begged the Assistance of Aristagoras, (who then govern'd that City as Deputy to Hestianus, whose Son-in-Law he was) for the restoring them again to their Country.*

*Q. Where was Hestianus gone, as they solicited his Son-in-Law?*

*A. He being an enterprizing Man, Darius had some Jealousy of him, and sent for him to Susa, pretending he needed such an able Counsellor, and faithful Friend, to be always about him.*

*Q. Did Aristagoras promise the Naxians the Relief and Assistance which they desired?*

*A. He readily came into their Measures, but only with Design to make himself Master of Naxos; and not being strong enough of himself. to accomplish what he intended, he went to Sardis, and communicated the Matter to Artaphernes, who liking the Proposal, sent him next Spring 200 Ships to Miletus, to accomplish this Enterprize, under the Command of Megabatus, a noble Persian of the Royal Family, whose Commission was to obey the Orders of Aristagoras.*

*Q. How did this haughty Persian brook to be under the Command of an Ionian?*

*A. It created a Dissention between the two Generals; and Megabatus, to be revenged on Aristagoras, betray'd his Design to the Naxians, whereon they provided to fully for their Defence, that after the Persians had spent four Months in the Siege of the chief City of the Island, they were forced to retire. for want of Provisions.*

*Q. How did Artaphernes receive the News of this Mischriage?*

*A. He*

*Anno* A. He laid all the Blame upon *Aristagoras*, and  
*Mur.* charged on him all the Expences of the Expedition,  
 ~~~~~ which being more than he was able to pay, he foresaw  
 this must end in the Loss of his Government, and be
 his utter Ruin. To extricate himself out of this Diffi-
 culty, he had some Thoughts of rebelling against the
 King; and at this Juncture there came a Message from
Hesians, who was now grown weary of the *Persian*
 Court, which advised the same Thing.

Q. For what End did *Hesians* encourage this Re-
 bellion?

A. He concluded, if there were any Combinations
 raised in *Ionis*, he could easily prevail with *Darius* to
 send him thither to appease them, and, being very desi-
 rous of living again in his own Country, he thought
 this the likeliest Way to accomplish his Aim.

Q. How did *Aristagoras* carry on this Design?

3502 A. He first abolished his own Authority at *Miletus*,
 and reinstated the People in the Government; by which
 having united them in one common League, and gotten
 himself at the Head of it, he openly declared his Revolt
 from the King, and armed both by Sea and Land to
 make War against him.

Q. What Alliances did the *Ionians* make to carry on
 this War against the *Persians*?

A. Being assisted with 20 Ships from *Athens*, they
 sailed to *Ephesus*, then marched against *Sardis*, and took
 it, where the Houses being most built of Cane, one of
 them accidentally took Fire, which spread the Flame
 to all the rest, and consumed the whole City: The
 Temple of *Cybele*, the Goddess of the Country, was
 also burnt at this Time. After this Accident an Army
 of *Persians* and *Lydians* came against them, and having
 overtaken the *Ionians* before they could reach *Ephesus*,
 overthrew them with a great Slaughter.

Q. Did not the *Athenians* hereon return home, and re-
 fuse to be concerned any farther in the War?

A. Yes, but their having engaged thus far in it, gave
 rise to that War between the *Persians* and *Greeks*, which
 was

was carried on for several Generations after, and ended *Ann*
in the utter Destruction of the *Perſian* Empire. *Mun.*

Q. *What Revenge did Darius take on theſe Re-*
volters?

3434

A. On his hearing of the Burning of *Sardis*, and the Part which the *Athenians* had therein, he cauſed one of his Attendants, every Day when he was at Dinner, to ſay aloud to him three Times, *Remember the Athenians!* And the next Year after, he ſent three of his Sons-in-Law to attack the *Grecians* three ſeveral Ways.

Q. *What Courſe did theſe three Generals take?*

A. *Dauriſes* marched againſt the *Carians*, where, having beaten them in two Battles, he was ſlain in the 3505
third: *Hymeus* was firſt ſent to the *Propontis*, and, after having taken the City of *Cyus*, reduced all the *Ilian* Coaſt, but falling ſick at *Troas*, he there died: *Otanes* with the third Army joined *Artaphernes*, and reſolving to ſtrike at the Heart of the Confederacy, fell into *Ionia* and *Æolia*, took *Miletus*, and afterwards reduced the *Carians*.

Q. *Was Ariſtagoras taken Priſoner in Miletus?*

A. Deſpairing of his Cauſe on the Approach of the *Perſian* Army, and getting together all that were willing to accompany him, he ſailed to *Thrace*, and ſeized the Territory of *Mercinus*; but while he beſieged this City, he was ſlain by the *Thracians*, and his Army cut to Pieces.

Q. *How did Xerxes ſpeed, who led the Ionians into this calamitous Revolt?*

A. He had his Share in it, for after the *Perſians* had brought all again under them, they made all the beautifulleſt of their Youths Eunuchs, ſent all their Virgins into *Perſia*, and burnt all their Cities and Temples; and he was taken Priſoner, carried to *Sardis*, and there crucified by the Order of *Artaphernes*.

Q. *When*

Anno Q. When Artaphernes had subdued all the Islands on Mun. the Asian Coast, did he extend his Conquests any farther?

A. He then sent the Phenician Fleet to reduce the Hellespont, that is, all its Coasts on the European Side.

Q. What Success had he in this Enterprize?

A. Miltiades, Prince of the Thracian Chersonesus, having Advice that the Fleet was come as far as Tenedor, and being too weak to resist their Power, carried all he had on Board five Ships, and set Sail with them for 3509 Athens; but in his Passage, one of them, commanded by Metiochus his eldest Son, was taken by the Phenicians, and he carried to Darius, who was at Susa.

Q. What Usage did Metiochus meet with from Darius?

A. Instead of doing him any Hurt, he generously gave him a House and Lands for his Maintenance, married him to a Persian Lady, with whom he lived honourably all his Life after, and never more returned to Greece.

Q. What became of Miltiades, and the other four Ships?

A. He got safe to Athens, and again settled himself there, for he was a Citizen of that Place before, and was sent to Chersonesus, where he lived, and married a second Wife named Hegesistyla, by whom he had Cimon, the famous General of the Athenians: Thucydides the Historian was also her Son by another Husband.

Q. Did Darius take any Revenge on the Athenians, &c. for the Burning of Sardis?

3510 A. He now recalled all his other Generals, and sent Mardonius Son of Gobrias, who had lately married one of his Daughters, to be chief Commander in all the maritime Parts of Asia, with Orders to invade Greece.

Q. Did

Q. Did he gain any Advantage in this Expedition? Anno
Mun.

A. He had the Misfortune to lose 300 of his Ships in a Storm, and the *Thracians* falling on him in the Night, broke into his Camp, slew a great Number of his Men, and wounded *Mardonius* himself; after which Losses, *Darius* determined to make Trial if any Part of *Greece* would submit to him; accordingly sent *Heralds* to all their Cities to demand *Earth and Water*, which was the Form whereby the *Persians* used to require Submission.

Q. How did the *Heralds*, who were sent with this Commission, succeed?

A. Several of the *Grecian* Cities did as was required of them; but when those, who were sent to *Athens* and *Lacedæmon*, came thither, they flung them, the one into a Well, the other into a deep Pit, and bid them fetch *Earth and Water* thence.

Q. Was it not a Violation of the Law of Nations thus to put *Heralds* to Death?

A. Yes, and *Darius* on this Affront took the Command of his Forces from *Mardonius*, and sent two other Generals in his Stead, *Datis* a *Median*, and *Artaphernes* a *Persian*, who was Nephew to the late Governor of *Sardis*, and gave them particularly in Charge, not to fail of executing his Revenge against the *Athenians*.

Q. How did these two Generals speed in this War?

A. On their Arrival on the Coast of *Ionian*, they drew 3513 together an Army of 300,000 Men, and a Fleet of 600 Ships; then sailed to *Naxos*, and burnt the chief City of the Island, and all the Temples therein, and taking all the other Islands in those Seas, sailed for *Eretria*, and after seven Days Siege took it, and burnt it to the Ground, making all they found in it Captives, then passed over into *Attica*.

Q. How

Anno Q. How did the Athenians withstand this numerous
Mun. Army?

3514 A. Miltiades, who was lately Governor of the Thra-
 cian Chersonesus, met them in the Plain of Marathon
 with only 10,000 Athenians, and 1000 Plateans, and
 there overthrew them with a great Slaughter, and
 forced them to fall back again with Disgrace into
 Asia.

Q. What Course did Darius take on his bearing of the
 unsuccessful Return of these Forces from Attica?

A. He resolved to go in Person, and make an Inva-
 sion upon them with all his Power, and sent Orders
 thro' all the Provinces to arm the whole Empire for it;
 but, after three Years Preparation, a new War broke
 out by the Revolt of the Egyptians.

Q. Did these Rebels divert him from executing his
 Wrath upon the Grecians?

3518 A. It was an ancient Custom among the Persians be-
 fore the King went out to any dangerous War, to de-
 clare his Successor; which being done, he determined
 to send Part of his Army to reduce Egypt, and to go
 in Person with the rest against Greece; and now both
 Armies being ready to set out, Darius fell sick, and
 died.

Q. What remarkable Persons lived in his Reign?

A. Zoroastres, the famous Prophet of the Magians,
 first appeared in Persia then: He was the greatest Im-
 postor, except Mahomet, that ever appear'd in the World,
 had all the Craft of that Arab, but much more Know-
 ledge, and was, as to his Origin, a Jew.

Q. Who succeeded Darius in the Persian Empire?

3520 A. Xerxes his Son, by Atossa the Daughter of
 Cyrus: He confirm'd to the Jews at Jerusalem, all the
 Privileges granted them by his Father, and especially
 that of having the Tribute of Samaria. In his second
 Year he marched against the Egyptians, and subdued
 these Revolters, and made Archemenes, one of his Bro-
 thers, Governor of the Province. This Year Herodotus,
 the famous Historian, was born at Halicarnassus in
 Caria.

Caria. The next Year died *Joshua* the High-Priest of *Anno* the Jews, and *Joiakim* his Son succeeded him in that *Mun.* Office.

Q. Did Xerxes pursue the Grecian War after the Death of his Father?

A. Before he had been long upon the Throne, he ³⁵²² resolved thereon, and entered into a League with the *Carthaginians*; whereby it was agreed, that while the *Persians* invaded *Greece*, the *Carthaginians* should fall on all those who were of the *Grecian* Name in *Sicily* and *Italy*; thus all the then known habitable World was stirred up against the Realm of *Grecia*, *Dan. xi. 2.* all the West under the Command of *Hamilcar*, and all the East under *Xerxes*.

Q. What Number of Persons of all Sorts followed Xerxes in this Expedition?

A. They were at least five Millions, according to *Herodotus's* Account of them, with which he marched through *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Thessaly*, towards *Attica*, ³⁵²⁴ and all yielded to him without Opposition, till he came to *Thermopylae*, where *Leonidas*, King of the *Lacedaemonians*, with a Body of 4000 Men, defended the Pass against him for two Days, but on the third being ready to be surrounded by the *Persians*, all retired saving *Leonides*, and about 300 *Sartians*, who resolutely abiding by the Post they had undertaken to defend, were at length all slain upon the Spot.

Q. How many Men did the Persians lose in this Engagement?

A. They lost in gaining this Victory 20,000 Men, and among them two of the Brothers of *Xerxes*. After this they marched thro' *Boeotia* into *Attica*, when the *Athenians*, not able to defend themselves, (putting all their Men on Board their Fleets, and securing their Wives and Children in neighbouring Cities, which, by the Intervention of the Sea, were out of the Reach of the Enemy) deserted their City, into which *Xerxes* entered without Opposition, ordered his Fleet to come

Anno come hither also, and anchor at *Phalerus*, a Port on *Mun.* that Shore.

Q. *Where did the Grecian Fleet lie at this Time?*

A. They lay in the Streights of *Salamis*, which Place *Themistocles* their General had made Choice of, as the most advantageous for them to fight the numerous Fleet of the Enemy, and hereby the *Grecians* gained the Victory, and dashed all the Aims and Designs of this prodigious Expedition, which was one of the greatest for the Expence and Number of Men, that ever was undertaken.

Q. *What became of the Persian Fleet after this Overthrow?*

A. The *Greeks* having destroyed 200 of their Ships, (besides those which they took) the rest got away to the *Asian Coast*, and never came again into *Greece*.

Q. *Whither did Xerxes go with his Army?*

A. Being afraid the Conquerors should sail to the *Hellepont*, and obstruct his Return, he fled thither with all Haste, and, having left *Mardonius* with 300,000 Men to carry on the War in *Greece*, returned to *Sardis*.

Q. *What Success had his Confederates the Carthaginians, under the Command of Hamilcar?*

A. *Gelo*, King of *Sicily*, having first slain *Hamilcar*, set his Fleet on Fire, and slew 150,000 of his Men in the Field of Battle, and took as many more Prisoners, which he sold for Slaves.

3525 Q. *How long after this did Mardonius, whom Xerxes left behind him, carry on the War against Greece?*

A. He winter'd his Army in *Thessaly* and *Macedonia*, and early the next Spring marched into *Boeotia*; from hence he sent *Alexander*, King of *Macedonia*, into *Athens*, with Proposals of Accommodation, but the *Athenians* would hearken to none; at which being enraged, he came into *Attica* with all his Army, and destroy'd every Thing where he came, and entering *Athens*, burnt and demolished all he there found, then returned into *Boeotia*, and encamped near the River *Æsopus*.

Q. *Did*

Q. Did not the Greeks march after him, to revenge themselves for this Devastation? Anno Mun.

A. They got together the joint Forces of all the Country, under the Command of *Pausanias* King of *Lacedemon*, and *Aristides* General of the *Athenians*, and came to a decisive Battle near the City of *Platen*, in which *Mardonius* was slain, and all the *Persian* Army cut to Pieces. On the same Day the *Grecians* fought this Battle, their naval Forces got as memorable a Victory over the Remainder of the *Persian* Fleet at *Mysale*, a Promontory on the Continent of *Asia*. Here ended all the great Designs of *Xerxes*, and of all that prodigious Army, with which the Year before he marched so proudly over the *Hellepont*, there was scarce any now left.

Q. Whither did Xerxes remove on his having received these two great Defeats?

A. He left *Sardis* with the utmost Precipitation, but gave Orders for the Burning and Demolishing all the Temples in the *Grecian* Cities of *Asia*, and none but that of *Diana* at *Ephesus* escaped this general Devastation.

Q. Was this done out of any particular Displeasure to the Asiatic Greeks?

A. The true Cause of it was his Zeal for the *Magian* Religion, to which he had been made a Proselyte by *Zoroastres*, and that Sect expressed a great Detestation of worshipping God by Images.

Q. Did the Grecians prosecute the War against the Egyptians after these Victories?

A. They equip'd a strong Fleet, of which *Pausanias* and *Aristides* having the Command, sail'd with it to *Cyprus*, and there restored many *Grecian* Cities to their own Liberty again.

Q. How did Xerxes behave himself at Susa after his 3527 Return thither from his Flight out of Greece?

A. He fell in Love with *Masties* his own Brother's Wife, and to engage her to yield to him, married her Daughter

Also Daughter, named *Artayuta*, to *Darius's* eldest Son, whom *Mun.* he intended for his Successor in the Throne.

Q. Could he, by this Kindness, prevail upon her to defile her Husband's Bed?

A. No, but finding the Lady's Virtue impregnable, he turned the Amour from the Mother to the Daughter, and fell in Love with *Artayuta*, where he soon found a ready Compliance to all he desired: While this was a doing, *Hamestris*, *Xerxes's* Queen, having wrought a very curious Mantle, presented it to the King, who, being pleased with it, wore it when he made the next Visit to his Mistress, and, when he had enjoy'd her, bid her ask what she would of him for her Reward, promising upon Oath that he would give it her: Hereon she desired the Mantle, and, as by Way of Trophy, wore it publicly.

Q. Was not Hamestris enraged at this Impudence?

A. Instead of turning her Wrath against the Daughter, she resolved to be revenged on the Mother, as if all the Intrigue had been of her Contrivance, who was wholly innocent of it.

Q. How did she satiate her Revenge on the Mother?

A. She waited till the King's Birth-Day, (when it was the Custom for him to grant his Queen whatsoever she should desire) and then demanded the Wife of *Masistes* to be given unto her, caused her Breasts, her Tongue, Nose, Ears, and Lips, to be cut off, and thrown to the Dogs before her Face, and sent her thus mangled back to her Husband's House.

Q. What Revenge did Masistes meditate on this cruel Tragedy?

A. He hastened to *Bactria*, the Province over which he was Governor, purposing to raise an Army there, and make War upon the King; but he suspecting what was intended, sent a Party after him, and cut him off, with his Wife and Children, and all that belonged to him, though he was his own Brother, had done him great Services in the *Gracian* War, was personally engaged for him at the Battle of *Myscale*, and was

was in Truth the chief Honour of his House. On this *Ann* Occasion Dr. *Pridaux* has the following Remark. *Where Mun.* there is a vicious Prince with an arbitrary Power in the Government, there is nothing that can be sufficient to secure any Man's Safety under him.

Q. Who was appointed Governor of Bactria after the Death of Masistes?

A. Hytaspes his second Son, which gave *Artaxerxes*, his younger Brother, an Opportunity of mounting the Throne after *Xerxes's* Death.

Q. Whither did the Grecian Fleet sail from Cyprus?

A. To the Hellespont, and took *Byzantium*, where several *Persians* of great Note, and some of the Kindred of *Xerxes*, were taken Prisoners; but *Pausanias* treacherously released them all, and, by the Means of some of them entered into a Treaty with *Xerxes* to betray *Greece* unto him, if he would give him one of his Daughters in Marriage. 3528

Q. Was he not recall'd, and put under publick Censure for these Misdeeds, by the Lacedæmonians?

A. Yes, but however, he went again the next Year without the Consent of the State, on Pretence of fighting against the *Persians* as a Volunteer, but in Reality to carry on his treasonable Designs; which being some Time after discovered, they put him to Death. 3529

Q. What was the Occasion of Themistocles's Banishment, about this Time, from Athens?

A. His Wisdom and great Application had much advanced the Power of the *Athenians*, and drawn on him the bitter Enmity of the *Lacedæmonians*; for he was not banished for any Crime, but by the Form of *Ostracisme*, which was a Way whereby, for the better securing of their Liberty, they used to suppress those among them, who were grown to too great a Power and Authority.

Q. Whither did Themistocles flee from the Accusation of the Lacedæmonians?

Anno A. Tho' Xerxes had set a Price of 37,500 *l.* of our
Mun. Money upon his Head, he went to him to *Susa*.

Q. How was he received there?

A. On his being brought into that King's Presence, he told him he owed him 200 Talents; which Sum was due to the Person who brought him his Head, and accordingly commanded it to be paid: After some Time he was sent to live at *Magnesia* on the River *Meander*, on the Borders of *Greece*, allow'd a great Revenue, and there ended his Days.

Q. Which Way did the Athenians extend their Conquests after the Flight of Themistocles into Asia?

A. They set out a Fleet under the Command of Cimon the Son of Miltiades, who conquer'd several Parts of *Thrace*, and took in the Islands of *Seyrus* and *Naxos*, which had revolted from them; then passing over to the Coasts of *Asia*, took all the maritime Parts of *Caria* and *Lycia*, driving the *Peussians* out of all their Cities.

3534 After this he attacked the *Persian* and *Phœnician* Fleets, and gaining two Victories in one Day, destroyed every Ship of them; and all the Men on Board were either drowned or slain in the Fight.

Q. Did Cimon pursue his Victories the next Year?

3535 A. He then sailed to the *Hellepont*, and took the *Thracian Chersonesus*, and subdued the *Thracians*; then landing his Army on the opposite Shore of *Thrace*, seized all the Gold Mines, and brought under him all the Country as far as *Macedon*, and thereby opened a Way for the conquering that Realm, had he pursued it; for this Neglect he was, on his Return, tried for his Life by the *Athenians*, and hardly escaped being condemned for it.

Q. After a continued Series of so many Losses, was the Grecian War carried on any longer by Xerxes?

A. From this Time he sent no more Ships into the *Ægean Sea*, or any of his Forces to the Coasts adjoining to it, all the Remainder of his Reign, but gave himself

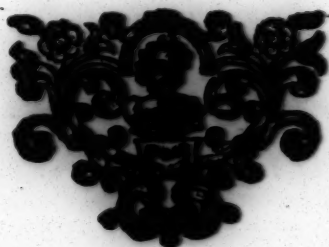
himself wholly up to Luxury and Ease, till he grew into Contempt with the People. *Anno Mun.*

Q. What was the Consequence of this Indolence?

A. Artabannus, the Captain of his Guards, slew him in his Bed; and going to *Artaxerxes*, his third Son, accused *Darius*, his elder Brother, of the Murder; whereon *Artaxerxes*, by the Assistance of *Artabannus*, slew him also, by Way of just Revenge, as he thought, for the Death of his Father.

Q. With what Design did this Traitor impose upon Artaxerxes in this Manner?

A. On the Death of Darius, Hytaspes was next Heir, who being absent in *Bactria*, *Artabannus* set *Artaxerxes* on the Throne, with Design to seize it for himself; but, the Plot being discovered, he was cut off before his Treason was ripe for Execution. This *Artaxerxes*, in Scripture, hath the Name of *Abasuerus*, who had *Esther* for his Queen.



C H A P. IX.

Of Artaxerxes ; Vashti ; Esther ; Archæmenides ; Charitimis ; Haman ; Mordecai ; Ezra ; Megabyzus ; Inarus ; Nehemiah ; Meto ; *Golden Number* ; Peloponnesian War ; Pericles ; Hippocrates ; *Plague of Athens* ; Thucydides ; Socrates ; Plato ; *Punishment of Boating, and throwing into Ashes* ; Mount Gerizim ; Samaritans ; &c.

Anno **W**HEN Artabanus was dead, how did Artaxerxes
 Mun. struggle with the two remaining Obstacles to his
 quiet Possession of the Throne, his Brother Hytaspes in
 3540 Bactria, and Artabanus's Party at Home ?

A. The last gave him the most Trouble, for Artabanus had seven Sons, and many Partisans, who resolved to revenge their Father's Death ; whereon a fierce Conflict ensued, in which many noble Persians were killed, but at length Artaxerxes prevail'd, and cut off all the Conspirators.

Q. What Punishment did he inflict on Mithridates, who was his Father's Chamberlain, and had the chief Hand in his Murder ?

A. He caused him to be boated to Death.

Q. What Manner of Punishment was this ?

A. The Criminal being laid on his Back in a Boat, was stretched out, and tied, to each Side of it, and another Boat was put over him, his Head only being left out through a Hole made fit for it ; in this Posture they fed him, till the Worms, which were bred in his Excrements, eat out his Bowels.

Q. After

Q. After he had master'd the greatest Difficulty, how did he deal with his Brother in Bactria? *Anno Mun.*

A. He sent an Army against him, and overthrew him in a second Battle, and thereby firmly settled himself in the peaceable Possession of the whole Persian Empire. On this Account he appointed a solemn Rejoycing to be celebrated in the City of Shusban, or Susa.

Q. For how long a Term was this Feasting continued?

A. One hundred and eighty Days, after which he made a great Feast for all the Princes and People for seven Days more, and *Vashti* the Queen made a like Feast in her Appartment for the Women.

Q. What memorable Incident happened during this Feast?

A. The King, being merry with Wine, commanded seven of his Chamberlains to bring Queen *Vashti* before him with the Crown Royal on her Head, to shew to the Princes and People her Beauty, for she was exceeding fair; but she would not come.

Q. Was Artaxerxes incensed at her Disobedience in not complying with his Request?

A. He called his seven Counsellors hereon, to take Advice about it, who, fearing she might be of ill Example to other Women, advised that he should put *Vashti* away for ever from him. Accordingly he made a Decree for this Purpose, which was register'd among the Laws of the Medes and Persians, and therefore could never again be altered.

Q. Who was made Queen in her Place?

A. The King ordered a Collection to be made of all the fair Virgins of every Province through the whole Empire, that out of them One might be chosen. At this Time there lived at Susa a Captive Jew, named *Mordecai*: He was one of the King's Porters, and having no Child, bred up *Hadaßab*, his Uncle's Daughter, and adopted her for his own, who, being very fair, was made Choice of on this Occasion, and when her

3544

Anno Turn came to go in unto the King, he was much delighted with her, and called her *Esther*.

Q. Which was the first War waged by Artaxerxes?

A. Hearing the Egyptians had revolted, and made *Inarus*, Prince of the *Lybians*, their King, and had also called in the *Athenians* to their Assistance; he sent
3545 *Archæmenides*, one of his Brothers, to suppress them, with an Army of 300,000 Men, with which he encamped on the River *Nile*.

Q. How did the Egyptians stop the Progress of this numerous Army?

A. The *Athenians* having beaten the *Persians* at Sea, sailed up the *Nile*, and, having landed their Forces under the Command of *Charitimus* their General, joined *Inarus*, and, falling on *Archæmenides*, killed 100,000 of his Men, and among them himself: The Remainder fled to *Memphis*, and there valiantly defended themselves, till they were succour'd by those who came to their Relief.

Q. How did Artaxerxes revenge himself on the Athenians?

3546 A. He endeavoured first to divert their Forces, by sending great Sums of Money to induce the *Lacedæmonians* to make War against them; but, not succeeding in this, he sent an Army into *Attica*, and ordered *Themistocles* to command it; but he also, abhorring the bringing of a War upon his own Country, sacrificed a Bull, and drank a large Draught of his Blood, and died.

Q. Who was at this Time ordered to carry on the Egyptian War, and to relieve Memphis?

A. *Artabaxus*, Governor of *Cilicia*, and *Megabizus*, Governor of *Syria*, were appointed to get ready an Army for this Expedition.

Q. What Encouragement did the Jews meet with under this new Government?

A. *Ezra*,

A. Ezra, in the Beginning of this Year, obtained a Commission for his Return to Jerusalem, with all of his Mun: Nation that would accompany him, and which gave him full Authority to settle the State of the Jews, and reform the Church according to the Law of Moses. And now having got together as many Copies of the Sacred Writings as he could, out of them all he set forth a correct Edition of the Scriptures.

Q. By whose Means was this extraordinary Favour obtained?

A. It seems to be granted at the Solicitation of Esther, who was now become the best beloved of all the King's Concubines, tho' not yet advanced to the Dignity of a Queen.

Q. Who was this Ezra, who was invested with so great Power?

A. He was one of the Descendants of Seraiah the High Priest, who was slain by Nebuchadnezzar when he burnt the Temple and City of Jerusalem; and after having spent four Months in his Journey from Babylon thither, on his Arrival he opened his Commission, and executed the Contents of it faithfully for thirteen Years. From Ezra's Entrance upon this Work, the Beginning of the Seventy Weeks, of the famous Prophecy of Daniel, Chap. ix. ver. 24, to 28, concerning the Coming of the Messiah, are to be computed.

Q. To what particular People, and to what particular Place did this Prophecy relate?

A. To the People of Daniel, that is, the Jews; and to the Holy City, that is, Jerusalem. For at the Expiration of this Term, an End was put to the Mosaic Oeconomy, and the Jews were no longer God's peculiar People,

Q. What Space of Time is comprehended within the Seventy Weeks mentioned in this Prophecy?

A. As the Jews had their Sabbatical Days, whereby their Days were divided into Weeks; so they had their Sabbatical Years, whereby their Years were divided into Weeks of Years: And every one of the Weeks, men-

Anno tioned in this Prophecy, contains seven Years, and the *Mun.* whole Number of Seventy Weeks contain four hundred and ninety Years; at the End of which this determined Time expired.

Q. At what Period was this Prophecy fulfilled?

A. At the Death of *Christ*; for thenceforth his Kingdom began; and, instead of the *Jews*, all Nations in the World were called thereunto; and, instead of *Jerusalem*, every Place thro' the whole Earth, where God was worshipped in Spirit and in Truth, was made *Holy* to him.

Q. Did Esther still continue in Favour with Artaxerxes?

A. She gain'd his Affection beyond all his other Women; and about the End of this Year he put the *Royal Diadem* upon her Head, and declared her *Queen* instead of *Vashti*; which gave *Exra* greater Encouragement to complete the good Work he had began.

3547 *Q. When was it that Bigthan and Teresh, two Eunuchs of the Palace, entered into a Conspiracy against the Life of Artaxerxes?*

A. About this Time, and the Plot was found out by *Mordecai*, who made Discovery of it to *Esther*, and she in his Name to the King, who ordered the two Traytors to be crucified.

Q. What Success had Artabazus and Megabyzus, in the Egyptian War?

3548 *A.* Having now got the Army and Fleet ready, *Artabazus* took the Command of the latter, and set Sail for the *Nile*, while *Megabyzus* marched the Army over Land to *Memphis*.

Q. Did he raise the Siege on his Arrival there?

A. Yes, and also gained a great Victory over *Inarus*, who was himself wounded in the Battle by *Megabyzus*, and made his Retreat with as many of his Forces as would follow him, to *Biblus*, where they endured a Siege of a Year and an half.

Q. Where was this City of Biblus situated?

A. In

A. In the Island *Protopitis*, which being surrounded by *Anno* the Nile, and the Branches of that River being navigable, the *Athenians* drew up their Fleet into one of them, where it was safe from the Enemy.

Q. How did the Persians become Masters of it at last?

A. They having made many Channels, drained that Branch of the Nile in which the *Athenian* Fleet had its Station, and laid it on dry Ground, then made a Passage open for all their Army to march into the Island, and took the City; after which, all *Egypt* was again reduced under the *Persian* Yoke.

Q. What Alterations happened at Jerusalem about this Time?

A. *Joachim* the High-Priest died, and was succeeded by *Eliashib* his Son.

Q. Was not *Haman* the Amalekite now also grown the chief Favourite of *Artaxerxes*?

A. Yes, and on *Mordcai's* not paying him Reverence, he resolved, in Revenge of this Affront, to destroy not only him, but the whole Nation of the *Jews*, and obtained a Decree for that Purpose; *Ester* iii.

Q. How was this Design of *Haman* prevented?

A. *Mordcai* acquainted Queen *Ester* with the whole State of the Case, and, on her Petition, her People were saved, *Mordcai* preferred, and *Haman*, then present, the wicked Author of this Plot, was hang'd, *Ester* vi, vii, &c.

Q. After the Loss of their Fleet in *Egypt*, did the *Athenians* provide another to carry on the War against the Persians?

A. They sent *Cimon* with two hundred Sail again into *Cyprus*, where he took *Citium* and *Malum*, and several other Cities, and, on his Return from *Egypt*, fell on *Artabazus*, took an hundred of his Ships, and destroyed several others. He then landed upon *Magabyrus* in *Cilicia*, and overthrew him also, and sailed back to *Cyprus* again with a double Triumph.

Q. Did not these great Losses, which *Artaxerxes* sustained, make him weary of so destructive a War?

Anno A. To put an End to the Calamities of it, he ordered
Mun. his Generals *Megabyzus* and *Artabazus*, who had the
 Charge of the *Cyprian War*, to make Peace with the
Athenians on the best Terms they could.

Q. *How did they treat with the Enemy?*

A. They sent Ambassadors to *Athens* to make the Proposal, and Plenipotentiaries were appointed on both Sides to draw up Articles of Peace; which being ratified and sworn to, this War ended after it had continued fifty-one Years.

Q. *For what Cause did Megabyzus, after his Return from this War, rebel against the King his Master?*

A. He having brought King *Inarus*, and some *Athenians* which he had taken Prisoners in *Egypt*, to *Susa*, *Artaxerxes's* Mother prevailed upon him to deliver them to her, that she might revenge on them the Death of her Son *Archæmenides*: And tho' the Public Faith had been plighted for their Safety, she caused *Inarus* to be crucified, and the rest to have their Heads struck off.

Q. *How was this Rebellion suppressed?*

A. After two Battles were fought between them, in both which *Megabyzus* gained the Victory, *Artaxerxes* sent *Artarius* his Brother, and *Anytis* his Sister, who was
 3558 Wife to *Megabyzus*, to make up the Difference; and the King granted him his Pardon. About this Time *Ezra* died.

Q. *Who succeeded Ezra in the Government of Judah?*
 3559 and *Jerusalem*?

A. *Nehemiah*, who had in his Commission which he obtained of *Artaxerxes*, an express Clause inserted to repair the Walls of *Babylon*, and set up the Gates of the City, and to fortify it again as before it was destroyed by the *Babylonians*.

Q. *Who was this Nehemiah?*

A. A Jew, whose Ancestors had been formerly Citizens of *Jerusalem*; but he was an Inhabitant of *Shushan*, and one of the Cup-bearers to King *Artaxerxes*.

Q. *How*

*Q. How long did he stay there the first Time before he Anno
returned to Persia?* Mun.

A. Till he had executed the main End for which he first obtained that Favour of the King, and then went to the *Persian* Court; but soon came back again with a new Commission to extend his Authority still farther; and now the Walls were finished, he was to carry on the Reformation of the Church and State.

Q. Did he go any more from Jerusalem after this?

A. He was recalled when he had held the Govern- 3571.
ment 12 Years, as it is supposed, to execute his former Office.

Q. How did Nehemiah live and support the Dignity of his Office at Jerusalem, through the twelve Years of his Government?

A. He lived hospitably and splendidly, for there sat at his Table, every Day, 150 of the *Jews* and Rulers, besides Strangers.

Q. How much was provided for him every Day to keep up this Hospitality?

A. One Ox, six Sheep, Fowls, and Wine, &c. in Proportion: Which Expence he bore through these whole Twelve Years, out of his own private Purse, without burdening the Province at all. Now lived *Meto*, the famous *Armenian* Astronomer.

3572

Q. What is he said to have invented?

A. The Cycle of Nineteen Years, which we call the Cycle of the Moon, the Numbers whereof being, by Reason of the Excellency of their Use, written in the ancient Kalendars in *Golden Letters*; from thence, that Number of the Cycle, which accords with the Year, for which our present Almanacks are made, is called the *Golden Number*.

Q. For what End did Meto invent this?

A. For ascertaining the Times of the ancient *Greecian* Festivals; and it is still of as great Use to the *Christians* for the finding out *Easter*, and also to the *Jews* for the fixing of their three great Festivals.

Q. What

Anno Q. *What was the Peloponnesian War, of which Thucydides and Xenophon have written the History, and when did it begin?*

3573 A. The War, so called, was between the *Athenians* and *Lacedaemonians*, and begun about this Time; as soon as they had entered upon it, both Parties sent Ambassadors to *Artaxerxes*, to engage him on their Side, and pray his Aid.

Q. *Where did that grievous Pestilence, which began about the Beginning of this War, first break out?*

A. In *Ethiopia*, from thence it came into *Lybia* and *Egypt*, *Judea*, *Phoenicia*, and *Syria*, and through the whole *Persian* Empire: Then it passed into *Greece*, and destroyed great Numbers of the *Athenians*, among whom died *Pericles*, the chiefest and eminentest Man of that City, who maintained himself in full Credit for Forty Years together in a popular Government.

Q. *Did not Hippocrates, that great Master of the Art of Physic, live at Athens during this Plague?*

A. Yes, and *Artaxerxes* invited him to come into *Persia*, with Promise of great Rewards, but he would not be prevail'd upon to leave the *Grecians* his Countrymen in Distress.

3576 Q. *What Accounts have you of this Disease?*

A. *Thucydides*, who had it himself, hath written of it as an Historian, *Lucretius* as a Poet, and *Hippocrates* as a Physician.

Q. *When did Nehemiah return again to Jerusalem?*

A. In about five Years; and, when he returned, finding many Things had gone wrong among the *Jews* during his Absence, he apply'd himself with his usual Zeal and Diligence, to correct and again set to Rights whatsoever was amiss. In this Year was born *Plato*, the famous *Athenian* Philosopher.

3578 Q. *For what Reason was that new Law made at Athens, which allow'd every Man there to marry two Wives?*

A. The

A. The Plague abovementioned broke out again this *Ann* Year in that City, and having much exhausted the In-*Mun.* habitants, this Law was made for the better replenishing of it again.

Q. Who was the first Person which made use of this Privilege?

A. Socrates the Philosopher, who was then 43 Years old, and to *Xantippe*, his former Wife, added another, called *Myrto*, and all the Benefit he got by it, was to have two Scolds instead of one, the more to exercise his Patience.

Q. Which Side did Artaxerxes take in the Peloponnesian War?

A. He this Year sent an Ambassador, called *Artaphernes*, to the *Lacedaemonians*, to tell them, that the *349* Messages he had received from them were so different that he could not learn what they would have, and desired them to explain themselves: But this Ambassador was taken in his Passage by the *Athenian Fleet*, and sent to *Athens*.

Q. How was he treated there?

A. With much Kindness and Respect, and sent back in a Ship of their own, with some of their Citizens, at the publick Charge; but *Artaxerxes* being dead before they reached *Susa*, they dismissed the Ambassador, and returned Home.

Q. What Children had King Artaxerxes?

A. He had but one Son by his Queen, who was named *Xerxes*, and succeeded him; but by his Concubines he had seventeen others, among whom were *Sogdianus*, *Ochus*, and *Arsites*. *Sogdianus* killed *Xerxes* after he had reigned only 45 Days; and soon after this, *Ochus* having got *Sogdianus* in his Power, cast him into Ashes.

Q. In what manner was this done?

A. It was one of the Punishments of the *Persians*, whereby great Criminals were put to Death. A high Tower being filled a great Way up with Ashes, the Criminal was thrown headlong into them, and there had

Anno had the Ashes by a Wheel continually raised about him, *Mun.* till he was suffocated.

Q. *How long did Ochus continue his Reign?*

3581 A. Nineteen Years, and as soon as he had settled himself on the Throne, he changed his Name to *Darius*, and is the same whom Historians call *Darius Nothus*.

Q. *Did he sit quietly on the Throne?*

A. No, many Troubles were raised against him; first his Brother *Artabazus* rebell'd, but he soon surrendering, was thrown into Ashes: The next was the Rebellion of *Pisutbnes*, which was the most dangerous, for he was Governor of *Lydia*, and there set up for himself, and cast off his Obedience to the King.

Q. *What Method did the King take to suppress this Revolt?*

3590 A. He sent against him *Tissaphernes*, who being an insidious Man, found Means to corrupt his mercenary *Greeks*, and their General, to desert and come over to his Side: Thus *Pisutbnes* was obliged to surrender. But the greatest Misfortune that befel *Darius*, was the Revolt of *Egypt*, which he could never master. *Eliashib* the High-Priest of the *Jews*, died in the 11th Year of this Reign, and was succeeded by *Joiada* his Son.

Q. *Which Part did Darius take in the Peloponnesian War?*

3594 A. Neither; but that War had now been carried on to the 20th Year, and at this Time *Tissaphernes* was Governor of *Lydia* and *Ionia*, and *Pharnabaxus* of the *Hellefpont* for King *Darius*, and these two being Men of great Craft, entered into it for the Interest of their Prince.

Q. *What was the Policy practised herein by the two Persians?*

A. They continued either openly or covertly to help sometimes the *Lacedaemonians*, and sometimes the *Athenians*, in order to weaken them both, till *Cyrus* came to be the chief Governor of the *Asian* Provinces.

Q. *Did*

Q. Did not Darius endeavour to reduce Amyrtæus, Anno who had before revolted, and now settled himself in the Mun. Kingdom of Egypt, by a total Expulsion of the Persians?

A. A War was carried on between them, each contending to enlarge and strengthen their Barrier on the Borders; on which Occasion *Darius* came in Person to *Phœnicia*, and *Sanballat* attending him, obtained a Grant to build on Mount *Gerizim* near *Samaria*, a Temple like that at *Jerusalem*, and to make *Manasseh* his Son High-Priest of it.

Q. In what Particulars did the Jews and these Samaritans differ from one another in Religion?

A. (1) The Samaritans received none other Scriptures than the five Books of *Moses*, rejecting all the rest which are in the Jewish Canon. (2) The Samaritans rejected all Traditions (by which the Jews often make the Law of none Effect) and adher'd only to the written Word itself. (3) They differed also about the Place of Worship, for the Woman of *Samaria*, in Discourse with our Saviour, says to him, *Our Fathers worshipped in this Mountain, but ye (meaning the Jews) say Jerusalem is the Place where Men ought to worship.*

Q. What Sort of People were these Samaritans originally?

A. They were of a mongrel Kind, the first of them *Cutheans*, and such others of the Eastern Nations as *Esarhaddon* planted there after the Deportation of the *Israelites*; but after some Time the greatest Part of that People were made up of the Apostate Jews and their Descendants, which were expelled *Jerusalem*, &c. by the last Act of *Nehemiah's* Reformation. Here ends 3595 the first Period of *Daniel's* 70 Weeks, and also the History of the Old Testament.

C H A P. X.

Battle of the Goats River ; Athenian State subverted ; Battle of Cunaxa ; Famous Retreat of the Greeks under the Conduct of Xenophon ; Agesilaus ; Conon ; Battle of Cnidus ; Battle of Leuctra ; Epaminondas ; Battle of Mantinea ; Agesilaus ; Mausolus ; Ochus ; Philip of Macedon ; Aristotle ; Cattle of Chæroneia ; Alexander the Great ; Battle of Granicus ; Darius ; Battle of Issus ; Tyre taken by Alexander ; His Behaviour to Jaddua ; Goes to the Temple of Jupiter Ammon ; Builds Alexandria ; First Invention of Paper, &c.

Anno **H**OW long did Nehemiah live at Jerusalem after he
Mun. made the last Reformation ?

~ **A.** He lived there till he died, but how long that was is no where said.

Q. Who governed Judea after him ?

3596 **A.** This Government being added to the Prefecture of Syria, was thenceforth subjected to the Governor of that Province, and under him the High-Prinſ had the Trust of regulating all Affairs therein.

Q. What Success had Darius in the Egyptian War ?

3597 **A.** Amyrtaeus being dead, and perchance slain in Battle, Pausiris succeeded him by the Favour of the Persians, and all Egypt was again reduced under Darius, who sent Cyrus his younger Son to be Commander in chief of all the Lesser Asia.

Q. What

Q. What was the chiefest Charge in this Commission Anno given him by his Father ? *Mun.*

A. That he should assist the *Lacedemonians* against the *Athenians*, which discovered the Weakness of his Politicks.

Q. How so ?

A. By the Help which *Cyrus* gave them, they soon overpowered the *Athenians*, and sent *Agefilas* their King to invade the Provinces of *Asia*.

Q. How did the Persians prevent the Mischief of this Invasion ?

A. They found Means by Bribery to rekindle the War again in *Greece*, which necessitated the *Lacedemonians* to recall their Forces.

Q. How long was Cyrus Lord Paramount of Lesser Asia ?

A. Not long, for soon after his taking that Government he was recalled by his Father for an Inadvertency, but before he set out upon that Journey, he ordered such large Subsidies to *Lysander* General of the *Lacedemonians*, as enabled him to gain that memorable Victory over the *Athenians* at the *Goats River* in the *Hellaspont*, whereby he absolutely overthrew the *Athenian* State ; and here ended the *Peloponnesian* War. Soon after this *Darius* died.

Q. Who succeeded him in the Kingdom of Persia ?

A. *Artaxerxes*, Brother to *Cyrus*, being his eldest Son by *3600 Parysatis* : He on his ascending the Throne took the Name of *Artaxerxes*, and is the same to whom the *Greeks* for his extraordinary Memory gave the Name of *Mnemou*, i. e. the Rememberer.

Q. How did Cyrus behave himself towards his Brother ?

A. *Darius* having bequeathed to him the Government of those Provinces he had before, he was sent again into *Lesser Asia*, where he raised an Army, and having obtained from the *Lacedemonians* 13000 *Greeks* under the Command of *Clearchus*, he marched directly against him.

Q. What

Anno Q. *What Success had Cyrus in this Expedition?*

Mun. A. *Artaxerxes* meeting him on the Plains of *Cunaxa*, in the Province of *Babylon*, with an Army of 900,000 Men, it there came to a decisive Battle between them, in which *Cyrus*, venturing his Person too far into the Heat of it, was unfortunately slain, after his Auxiliary Greeks had, in a Manner, gotten the Victory for him.

Q. *Did these Greeks, now at so great a Distance, and in the Heart of the Persian Empire, get safe into their own Country again?*

A. They made a Retreat of 2325 Miles, which was the longest and most memorable that ever was made through an Enemy's Country, under the Conduct of *Xenophon*, to whose Valour and Wisdom it was principally owing, that they at length got safe to Greece.

Q. *Who was made Governor of Lesser Asia after the Death of Cyrus?*

3605 A. *Tissaphernes*, who to enlarge his Power, set hard upon the Grecian Cities in those Parts, whereon they sent to the Lacedæmonians to pray their Protection.

Q. *Did the Lacedæmonians come in to their Assistance?*

A. They gladly laid hold of this Occasion to break again with the Persians, and sent an Army against them under the Command of *Dercyllidas*, who having reduced *Atarna*, marched into *Caria*, where *Tissaphernes* had the chief Seat of his Residence; but here he had like to have lost all his Army.

Q. *How did Dercyllidas escape this Ruin?*

A. By the Cowardice of his Enemy; for *Pharnabazus* having joined *Tissaphernes*, was very earnest for falling on him immediately, when they could not have failed of cutting him, and all his Forces, to Pieces; but *Tissaphernes* having experienced the Valour of the Grecian Troops at the Battle of *Cunaxa*, dreaded all
3607
Grecians in Arms ever since, and so sent Heralds to
Dw-

Dercyllidas to invite him to a Parley, and a Truce was *Anno* agreed on between them. Soon after this *Agefilaus Mun.* was sent with a great Augmentation of Forces into *Asia*, to take upon him the Command which *Dercyllidas* then had.

Q. What Success had Agefilaus in his new Command?

A. He bore all before him, and marching into *Phrygia*, over-run a great Part of that Province without Opposition, and then marched back by the Sea Coast into *Ionia*, carrying with him vast Spoils, and wintered at *Ephesus*.

Q. Who reigned over the Egyptians after the Death 3609 of Psamirris?

A. *Psammitichus*, and after him *Nephereus*, to whom the *Lacedæmonians* sent to solicit his Aid against the *Persians*, who thereon presented them with 100 Gallies for their Sea War, and 600,000 Bushels of Corn for the Subsistence of their Forces; but these Ships putting in at *Rhodes*, were all seized by *Conon*.

Q. Whither did Agefilaus march his Forces after he came out of these Winter Quarters?

A. He went into *Lydia* towards *Sardis*, where meeting with *Tissaphernes*, he obtained a great Victory over him, and enriched both himself and all his Army with the Spoils.

Q. How was the Loss of this Battle taken by Artaxerxes?

A. It very much incensed him against *Tissaphernes*, and completed his Ruin; for the King sent *Tithraustes* with Orders to put him to Death, and succeed him in his Government, which he accordingly executed.

Q. How did Tithraustes manage the War against Agefilaus?

A. He soon made Peace with him, and for the Price of thirty Talents paid, *Agefilaus* ordered his Army to leave his Provinces, and march into *Phrygia*; and while he was making ready for this War, a new Commission

Anno mission came to him from *Lacedæmon*, whereby he was *Mun.* made *Generalissimo* of their Fleet, of which he made *Pisander*, his Wife's Brother, Admiral.

Q. *After this did he pursue his Designs against Phrygia?*

3610 A. Having taken several Cities, and made great Depredations in that Province, he passed into *Paphlagonia*, thence returned and took the City of *Dascylium*, there he wintered in the Palace of *Pharnabazus*; soon after this a Peace was concluded between them, and *Agesslaus* was recalled.

Q. *Where did Pisander sail with the Lacedæmonian Fleet?*

A. To *Cnidus*, where being attacked by *Conon* the *Persian* Admiral, who having *Pharnabazus* on board, they gained a compleat Victory, and having slain *Pisander*, and taken fifty of his Ships, put an End to the Empire of the *Lacedæmonians* in those Parts. On this *Pharnabazus* returning into his Province, *Conon* obtained of him eighty Ships, and fifty Talents of Money, to rebuild the Walls of *Athens*, with which he restored that City to its pristine State, and may be reckoned the second Founder of it.

Q. *Were not the Lacedæmonians exceedingly moved at this?*

A. Yes, and sent *Antalcidas*, a Citizen of theirs, forthwith to *Tirribaxus*, then Governor of *Sardis*, for the King of *Persia*, to propose Terms of Peace, and they accused *Conon* of purloining the King's Money in carrying on that Work, for which he was put in Chains, and afterwards sent to *Susa*, and there put to Death by the King's Command.

Q. *How long did the Lacedæmonians pursue this War against the Persians?*

A. All their Doings in *Asia*, after the Battle of *Cnidus*, were only as faint Struggles of a dying Power, and ended in a Peace which was very disadvantageous, as well as dishonourable, to all that were of the *Grecian* Name; therefore *Artaxerxes* being now almost wholly

wholly eased of that War, turned all his Power against *Anno*
Evagoras, King of Cyprus. *Mun.*

Q. How did Evagoras manage against them?

*A. Achoris succeeding Psammitichus in the Kingdom of Egypt, he drew him, the Athenians, and also the Barceans, a People of Lybia, into a Confederacy against the Persians, and this War cost Artaxerxes ten 3615
Millions of our Money, before Peace was made between them.*

Q. The King of Persia being now free from all other Wars, did he not endeavour to reduce the Egyptians, who had stood out now in Revolt against him thirty-six Years?

*A. He made great Preparations for it, but before the 3628
War commenced, Achoris, and two of his Successors died, and Nectanabis, the first of the Sebennite Race, reigned in Egypt, who forced the Persians to return back again into Phœnicia, with the Loss of a great Part of their Army, and so this Expedition came to nothing.*

Q. How long did Evagoras remain in Cyprus after the late Peace was concluded?

A. The same Year the Persians invaded Egypt, he was murdered by one of his Eunuchs, and Nicocles reigned in his Stead.

Q. Who was this Nicocles?

A. He was Son of Evagoras, and the same for whose Sake two of Isocrates's Orations were composed, and they still bear the Title of his Name, for which Nicocles gave him.

*Q. Who was the High-Priest of the Jews at this 3631
Time?*

A. Jeboiada being dead, Joanan his Son, called also Jonathan, succeeded in that Office, and held it 32 Years.

Q. Were not the States and Cities of Greece at War with each other about this Time?

A. Yes,

Anno Mun. *A.* Yes, and *Artaxerxes* sent Ambassadors to exhort them to lay down their Arms upon the Terms of the Peace which he had made with *Antalcidas*.

Q. Did they come into these Measures?

A. All but the *Thebans*, and their dissenting from it produced the Battle of *Leuctra*, in which the *Lacedæmonians* were overthrown, and with Difficulty saved their Capital from falling into the Hand of the Enemy.

Q. How did the *Lacedæmonians* act in this great Distress?

A. They sent *Agésilas* into *Egypt*, and *Antalcidas* to the *Persian* Court, to solicit Succours.

Q. How far did this Embassy prevail?

3635 *A.* *Artaxerxes* sent *Philiscus* of *Abydos*, the next Year into *Greece*, to endeavour the composing of the Wars which were there risen, but without any Effect at this Time.

Q. For what Cause did the Grecian Cities refuse to come into his Measures?

3636 *A.* The *Thebans*, being elevated with their late Success, and much confiding in their two Generals *Pelopidas* and *Epaminondas*, (the latter of which was one of the greatest Men that ever *Greece* produced) aim'd now at nothing less than the Empire of *Greece*, and were taking proper Measures for the obtaining of it; but about two Years after *Artaxerxes* proposed to them another Scheme, which prevailed so far, that all laid down their Arms.

3641 *Q.* How long did this Truce continue?

A. Soon after it a new War broke out in *Greece* between the *Arcadians* and the *Elians*, in which one Party called in the *Thebans* to their Assistance, and the other Party the *Lacedæmonians* and *Athenians*, which produced the famous Battle of *Mantineæ*.

Q. Which Side had the Better in this Engagement?

A. The

A. The Lacedæmonians lost the Victory, and the *Anno* Thebans their General Epaminondas, which was the *Mun.* greater Loss of the two, for with him all the Vigour of the Theban State expired, and now all the Grecian States came into a general Peace, according as had been decreed by the King of Persia.

Q. Did Artaxerxes, after the late unsuccessful Expedition into Egypt, still pursue his Designs of recovering that Kingdom again to his Empire?

A. Tachos, who was now King of Egypt, fearing a second Invasion from the Persians, sent into Greece to raise Mercenaries, and prevailed with the Lacedæmonians to aid him with a good Number of Forces, under the Command of Agesilaus; but he, on the Egyptians revolting against their King in Phœnicia, join'd with them, and drove Tachos from his Kingdom, and settled Nectanebus therein.

Q. Of what Age was Artaxerxes, King of Persia, at this Time?

A. He was now 94 Years old, and great Contentions arose amongst his Sons, in making Interest with the Nobility about the Succession.

Q. How many Sons had he?

A. He had 115 by his Concubines, and three by his Queen, the Names of the latter were Darius, Ariaspes, and Ochus, and to put an End to all these Commotions, he declared Darius, the eldest of them, to be his Successor.

Q. After this did not Darius form a Design against his Father's Life?

A. Yes, and drew 50 of his Brothers into the Con- 3645 spiracy, but the whole being discovered, Darius was cut off, and all his Accomplices with him; not long after Ariaspes poisoned himself, Artaxerxes died, and Ochus took Possession of the Throne.

Q. How did Ochus govern the Persian Empire?

A. He

Anno A. He was the cruellest and the worst of all that had
Man. reigned of that Race in *Persia*. He caused *Ocha*,
 3646 his own Sister, to be buried alive; and having shut up
 one of his Uncles, with an 100 of his Sons and
 Grandsons, in an empty Yard, he there caused them
 by his Archers to be all shot to Death, &c. In the
 third Year of his Reign *Alexander the Great* was born
 at *Pella* in *Macedonia*; and on the same Day in which
 he was born, the famous Temple of *Diana* at *Ephesus*
 was designedly burnt by one *Erostratus*, that he might
 thereby perpetuate his Name.

Q. Was not *Artabazus*, Governor of one of the Asian
 Provinces, now in Rebellion against the King?

A. Yes, and by the Assistance of the *Thebans*, under
 the Command of *Pammenes*, he gained two great
 Victories over the King's Forces. At the same Time
 happened the Death of *Mausolus*, King of *Caria*.

3518 Q. For what Cause was his Death rendered fa-
 mous?

A. *Artemisia* (his Wife and Sister) having gathered
 together his Ashes, and beaten his Bones to Powder,
 took a Potion of them every Day in her Drink, till
 she had drank them all, aiming hereby to make her
 Body the Sepulchre of her dead Husband, and in two
 Years Time she died of Grief for him, and was suc-
 ceeded by *Idrieus* her Brother.

Q. Who erected that famous Monument for this King at
Halicarnassus, which was reckoned among the seven
 Wonders of the World?

A. *Artemissia*; and from hence all Monuments of
 more than ordinary Magnificence, are called *Mauso-*
leums.

3653 Q. How came she to be his Wife and Sister?

A. It was usual for the *Carian* Kings to marry their
 Sisters, and for those Sisters on the Death of their
 Husbands to succeed them.

Q. Did *Ochus* carry on the War against *Nectanebus*
 King of Egypt?

A. He

A. He was now preparing a great Army to invade *Anno* him; but the *Phœnicians* and *Cyprians* having joined in *Mun.* the same Confederacy with the *Egyptians*, they drove the *Persians* again wholly out of *Phœnicia*, and thereby made it a Barrier to *Egypt*.

Q. How did the King of Persia act on this Defeat?

A. He marched with a great Army into *Phœnicia*, where *Temnes*, King of *Sidon*, having delivered that City into his Hands, the *Sidonians* retired into their own Houses, and set Fire to them over their Heads, whereby 40,000 Men, besides Women and Children, were consumed. After the terrible Destruction of this City, all *Cyprus*, as well as *Phœnicia*, submitted again to *Ochus*.

Q. Do not the Jews seem to have been engaged in this War of the Phœnicians against Ochus?

A. Yes, for after he had taken *Sidon* he marched into *Judea*, took *Jericho*, and making many of the Jews Captives, he led Part of them with him into *Egypt*, and sent a great Number into *Hyrcania*.

Q. What Success had Ochus in his next Attempt against the Egyptians?

A. After several Engagements, *Nectanebus*, being no longer able to defend himself, got together all his Treasure, fled into *Ethiopia*, and never again returned. This was the last *Egyptian* that ever reigned in that Country, it having ever since been enslaved to Strangers, according to the Prophecy of *Ezekiel* xxix.

14, 15.

Q. To whom was the Success of this last Expedition chiefly owing.

A. To *Mentor* the *Rhodian*, whom *Ochus* nobly rewarded, for he gave him a hundred Talents, with many other valuable Gifts, made him Governor of the *Asiatic* Coasts, and Generalissimo of all his Forces in those Parts. In the 11th Year of *Ochus* died *Plato*, the famous *Athenian* Philosopher.

3655

K

Q. Who

Ann. Q. Which was the most eminent of his Scholars?

Mun. A. Aristotle, who was the first Founder of the Peripatetic Philosophy, and afterwards became Praeceptor to Alexander the Great, with whom he continued eight Years.

Q. After Ochus had again reduced all the revolted Provinces, in what Manner did he spend the rest of his Life?

A. In Luxury, Laziness, and Pleasure, and left the Administration of his Affairs to Bagoas his favourite Eunuch, and Mento the Rhodian. In the eighth Year 3657 of his Reign died Tobanan, High-Priest of the Jews, and was succeeded by Jaddua his Son, who held it twenty Years.

Q. How long did Ochus live after this?

3667 A. He was poisoned in the 21st Year of his Reign by Bagoas, who made Arses, the youngest of his Sons, King in his Stead. Philip King of Macedon, having now overthrown the Thebans and Athenians in a great Battle at Cheronea, caused himself to be chosen Captain General of all Greece.

Q. What was his Design in this?

A. To carry on the War against the Persians; and the next Year he sent Parmenio, Amyntas, and Attalus, three of his chiefest Captains, to begin Hostilities in Asia.

Q. Did he follow in Person after them?

A. When he was just ready to set forward, he was slain at home while he was celebrating the Marriage of his Daughter Cleopatra with Alexander King of Epirus.

Q. By whom was he slain, and who succeeded him?

3668 A. He was slain by Pausanias, a young noble Macedonian, and succeeded by Alexander his Son, being then 20 Years old. About the same Time Bagoas had made the Throne of Persia vacant also by the Murder of Arses, and placed Darius upon it, who was the third of that Name.

Q. War

Q. Was this Darius of the Royal Family?

A. He was not the Son of any King that reigned before him, but he was of the Royal Seed, as descended from *Darius Nothus*, and his true Name was *Cod-
mannus*. 3669

Q. Did the States and free Cities of Greece give Alexander, Successor to Philip, the same general Command which they had conferred on his Father?

A. All, excepting the *Lacedaemonians*, consented thereto: But a War, which *Alexander* had with the *Illyrians* and *Triballians*, calling him North as far as the *Danube*, in his Absence, the *Athenians*, *Thebans*, and some other Cities, agreed to revoke the Decree made in his Favour, and joined in Confederacy against him.

Q. How did he gain his Point with the Grecian Cities?

A. Returning Conqueror from his Northern War, he passed the Streights of *Thermopylae* with his victorious Army, and terrified the *Athenians*, with several other Cities, into a Submission, and now the *Thebans* only stood out; on which he besieged and took their City by Storm, absolutely destroyed it, slew 90,000 of the Inhabitants, and sold 30,000 more into Slavery. Which Cruelty spread such a Terror of his Arms over all *Greece*, that he was again, in a second Council which he held at *Corinth*, chosen Captain-General of all *Greece* against the *Persians*. 3670

Q. When did Alexander march against the Persians?

A. The next Spring he passed the *Hellepont* into *Asia*.

Q. How large was the Army which he led thither?

A. According to the highest Account it amounted to no more than 30,000 Foot, and 5000 Horse.

Q. Did he with so small an Army attempt and accomplish the Conquest of the Persian Empire?

A. Yes, and added *India* also to his Acquisitions. But what was more remarkable in this Undertaking, he set out only with seventy Talents, a Sum scarce sufficient to furnish his Army with Necessaries for thirty Days.

Q. Where did he gain the first Victory over the Persians?

Ann. *A.* At the River *Granicus*, which put him in Possession not only of *Darius's* Treasure at *Sardis*, but also of all the Provinces of the *Lesser Asia*.

Q. What farther Progress did he make in his Conquests the next Campaign?

3671 *A.* He next Spring reduced under his Obedience *Phrygia*, *Lycia*, *Pisidia*, *Pamphylia*, *Paphlagonia*, and *Capadocia*; and, having settled all these Provinces under the Government of such of his Followers as he thought fit to appoint, he marched to *Iffus* in *Cilicia*, and gained a second Victory over *Darius*.

Q. How many Persians were slain in this Battle?

A. A hundred thousand were left dead on the Spot, and the immediate Consequence of this Victory to the Advantage of *Alexander* was, that it added *Syria* to his Acquisitions, the Capital of which was *Damascus*, where *Darius* had sent his Treasure; and *Parmenio* was sent to take Possession of the Place.

Q. What valuable Moveables did *Parmenio* find in *Damascus*?

A. A vast Treasure in Money and Plate; also 329 of *Darius's* Concubines, and a great many other captive Ladies, among whom was *Barsena*, the Wife of *Memnon*, who, as soon as she came into the Sight of *Alexander*, made a Captive of him, for he fell in Love with her, and, taking her into his Bed, had a Son by her called *Hercules*, who, at the Age of eighteen Years, was called by the *Macedonians* to be their King, but murdered by the Treachery of *Cassander* and *Polypercon*, to prevent it.

Q. Whither did *Alexander* go while *Parmenio* took in *Damascus* and *Cæle-Syria*?

A. He marched with the Main of his Army along the Sea-Coasts towards *Phœnicia*.

Q. What Opposition did he meet with there?

A. As he advanced, all yielded to him till he came to *Tyre*; but the *Tyrians* refused him Admittance into their City, which *Alexander* was not able to bear, and resolved to force them to it by Siege.

Q. How

Q. How was this City fortified?

Anno

Q. It was surrounded with a strong Wall 150 Feet in Height, which was built on the Bank of the Sea, and stood on an Island half a Mile from the Shore.

Mun.

367²

Q. By what Means did he get over these Difficulties, and make himself Master of it?

A. The old Town stood on the Continent, and had been demolished by Nebuchadnezzar; Alexander, with unwearied Labour, got Timber from Mount Libanus, and with these Ruins made a Causey from the Continent to the Island, then stormed the Town, and took it after a Siege of seven Months. The Causeway is remaining even to this Day, and of the same Length as anciently described.

Q. How did he treat the Inhabitants of Tyre after he had taken it?

A. He burnt the Town down to the Ground, 8000 of the Inhabitants he slew in the Sackage, and 2000 of those which he took Prisoners, he caused to be crucified; the rest, to the Number of 30,000, were sold for Slaves.

Q. Was there not a brazen Statue, or Colossus of Apollo, of a great Height in this City, which the Carthaginians having taken from Gela in Sicily, had made them a Present of?

*A. Yes, and during this Siege some Person had dreamed, that Apollo was about to leave them, and to go over to Alexander; for preventing whereto, they chained this Statue with a golden Chain to the Altar of Hercules, thinking thereby forcibly to detain this their false God from going from them, tho' the Oracles of the true God had destinated them to Destruction, *Isai. xliii. Ezek. xvi. 27.**

Q. Which Way did Alexander extend his Conquests after he had taken Tyre?

A. He unchained Apollo, render'd Thanks to him for his Intention of coming over to him, sacrificed to Hercules, and did a great many other superstitious Follies; then marched towards Jerusalem.

Anno Q. Did the Jews submit to him immediately?

Mun. A. They pleaded their Oath to *Darius*, thinking themselves obliged by it, not to own any new Master so long as he lived. This exceedingly angered *Alexander*, and he marched against them, with Intention to punish them as severely as he had the *Tyrians*.

Q. How did *Jaddua* the High-Priest, (who had then the immediate Government of that People under the *Persians*) act in this Distress?

A. God directed him in a Vision of the Night, to meet the Conqueror in his Pontifical Robes, with the Priests attending him in their proper Habits, and all the People in white Garments.

Q. Did *Jaddua* go out in the Manner directed?

A. He advanced to an Eminence without *Jerusalem*, which commanded a Prospect of all the Country round, and seeing *Alexander* coming, went to meet him in this pompous and solemn Manner.

Q. How was he received by *Alexander*?

A. The King was struck with a profound Awe at the Spectacle, and bowed down to him with a religious Veneration, to the great Surprise of all that attended him.

Q. How came it to pass, that he, whom all adored, should pay such Adoration to the High-Priest?

A. On *Parmenio's* asking him this Question, he answered, He did not pay that Adoration to him, but to the God whose Priest he was: For when he was at *Dio* in *Macedonia*, deliberating how to carry on the War against the *Persians*, this very Person, and in this very Habit, appeared to him in a Dream, promising, that God would be his Guide in this Expedition, and give him the Empire of the *Persians*, and that he should conquer *Darius*. Hereon he turned again to *Jaddua*, kindly embraced him, and enter'd into *Jerusalem* with him.

Q. How did *Alexander* behave himself in the Temple?

A. He offer'd Sacrifices to God there; and *Jaddua* having shewn him the Prophecies of *Daniel*, chap. viii. and

and ix. concerning the *Ram* and *Hi-goat*, he bid him *ask* what he had to desire of him.

Q. What was the High-Priest's Request?

A. That they might enjoy the Freedom of their Country, Laws, and Religion, and be exempted every seventh Year from paying Tribute; and this their Petition was granted by *Alexander*, who marched thence to *Gaza*.

Q. Who was Governor of that City?

A. *Betis*, one of *Darius's* Eunuchs, a very valiant Man, who defended it to the utmost for two Months, and *Alexander* received two dangerous Wounds in the Siege, which provoked his Anger to such a Degree, that, on taking the Place, he treated the Commander, and all else he found in it, with inexcusable Cruelty.

Q. Where did Alexander remove, after he had finished the Siege of Gaza, and settled a Garrison therein?

A. He marched directly to *Memphis*, which *Mazæus* the Governor immediately surrendered, and there finding the *Egyptians*, out of Hatred to the *Persians*, universally disposed to receive him with open Arms, he became Master forthwith of the whole Country. From *Memphis* he projected a Journey to the Temple of *Jupiter Ammon*.

Q. Where was this Temple situated?

A. In the Deserts of *Lybia*, about 200 Miles from *Egypt*. *Ham*, the Son of *Noah*, as he was the first Planter of *Egypt* and *Lybia* after the Flood, so he became the Great God of those Countries: Him the *Greeks* called *Jupiter*, and the *Egyptians*, *Ammon*. *Alexander*, in his Way thither, built a new City over-against the Island of *Pharus*, on the Sea-Coast, and called it *Alexandria*.

Q. What was Alexander's Design in going to this Temple?

Anno A. It was foolish, vain-glorious, and, according to
Mun. the Religion of those Times, as impious; for find-
 ing in *Homer*, (which Book he always carried about
 him, and laid under his Pillow while he slept) that
 most of his Heroes were the Sons of some God, he
 chose *Jupiter Ammon* to be his Father, and sent Mes-
 sengers before to corrupt the Priests, to declare him
 the Son of that God by their Oracle, and he follow-
 ed after to receive the Honour of that Declaration;
 and henceforth, in all his Letters, Orders, and De-
 crees, he stiled himself, *King Alexander, Son of Jupiter*
Ammon.

Q. It is remarked by Varro, that about the Time of
 the Building of Alexandria, the Use of the Papyrus for
 Writing upon, was first found out in that Country; give
 some Account of it?

A. This Papyrus, in its proper Signification, was a
 Sort of a great Bullrush, growing in the Marshes of
 Egypt near the Nile, which ran up in a triangular
 Stalk, and when flak'd from the Stalk, (which was
 fifteen Foot in Height, and about eighteen Inches in
 Circumference) and the outer Skin was taken off, there
 were several inner Skins, partable naturally from each
 other, these made the Paper which the Ancients used,
 and from this Papyrus, what we now make use of to
 write upon, has the Name of Paper.

Q. What other Devices were used in former Times for
 this Purpose?

A. Pliny tells us, the ancientest Way of Writing was
 on the Leaves of the Palm-Tree, afterwards they made
 use of the Bark of a Tree for this Purpose; hence a
 Book is called in Latin, *Liber*. Another Way practised
 among the Greeks and Romans, was to write on Tables
 of Wood covered with Wax; hence such Epistles are
 in Latin called *Tabella*, and the Carriers of them *Tabellarii*.

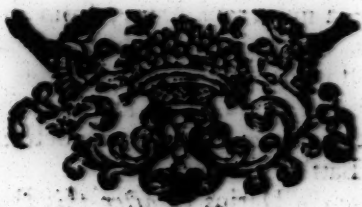
Q. How did they write on these Tables?

A. With

A. They engraved their Letters on the Wax with *Ann*
a Bodkin or *Style* of Iron; hence it is that the dif- *Mun.*
ferent Ways of Men's Writing are called *different*
Styles; but it must be acknowledged, that the authen-
tic Copy of the Law, which *Hilkiah* found in the
Temple, and sent to King *Josiah*, was wrote on
Parchment.

Q. Whence came the Invention of our Paper, which is
made of the Paste of Rags?

A. This Invention seems to be brought out of the
East, for most of the old Manuscripts in *Arabic* are
written in this Sort of Paper; and it is most likely the
Saracens of *Spain* first brought it out of the East into
that Country, of which *Gallicia* being a Province, it
might from thence, according to Mr. *Ray*, have
been brought into *Germany*, *Anno Dom.* 1476, but it
must have been in Use much earlier than that Time..



C H A P. XI.

*Battle of Arbela; Persepolis burnt at the
Instigation of Lais; Darius murdered by
Bessus and Nabarzanes; Alexander's Be-
haviour on Sight of his Corpse; Sisygam-
bis; Roxana; Clitus and Calisthenes
slain; Porus; Statira; Hephestion;
Eumenes; Perdiccas; Antipater; Lyfa-
machus; Cassander; Philipean Æra;
Æra of the Seleucidae; Battle of Ipsus;
Grove of Daphne; &c.*

Ann. **W**HILE Alexander was disposing of all Matters
Mun. in Egypt, whither did Darius retire to save
himself?

3673

A. He hastened towards the East, got together
about Babylon a numerous Army, from thence took the
Field with it, and marched towards Ninveh; thither
Alexander following after him, it came to a decisive
Battle between them, in which Darius being vanquish'd,
the Fate of the Persian Empire was determined. This
is called the Battle of Arbela.

Q. Whither did Darius go after this Defeat?

A. He fled into Media, intending from thence, and
the rest of the Northern Provinces in his Empire, to
raise more Forces for the farther Tryal of his Fortune
in another Battle.

Q. What Success had he in this Design?

A. Alexander having pursued him as far as Arbela,
about twelve Miles from the Field of Battle, there he
took his Treasure, Royal Equipage, and Furniture,
which was of vast Value, and then marched towards
Babylon.

Babylon, for Darius himself, by the Quickness of his Flight, had got out of his Reach.

Q. Who was Governor of Babylon at this Time?

A. Mazæus, who, on Alexander's Approach, surrendered himself and the City to him; and Bagabanes, the Governor of the Castle where the greatest Part of Darius's Treasure was kept, did the same Thing.

Q. How long did Alexander tarry in that City?

A. About thirty Days, and for a Reward of his Treachery, he gave Mazæus the Government of the Province, but took Bagabanes along with him to Susa. From thence, after the taking of that City, he marched to Persæpolis, the Metropolis of the Persian Empire, which he gave to be sack'd by his Army.

Q. Who did he leave in this Place while he reduced the neighbouring Countries to Submission?

A. Parmenio and Craterus; but he having soon completed his Design, returned again in about 30 Days, and took up his Winter Quarters there.

Q. What have you remarkable during his Stay at Persæpolis?

A. He gave himself much to Feasting and Drinking; and in one of his Feasts, wherein he entertained his chief Commanders, he invited also their Misses to accompany them.

Q. What was the Consequence of this Invitation?

A. Thais, a famous Athenian Strumpet, and then 3674. Miss to Ptolemy, who was afterwards King of Egypt, proposed the burning down of this City and Palace, in Revenge for the Burning of Athens by Xerxes.

Q. Was this Proposal received with general Applause?

A. Yes, and the whole Company being drunk, Alexander himself, in the Heat of his Wine, took a Torch, and all the rest of the Company doing the same, they set Fire to the City and Palace, and burnt both to the Ground. Thus at the Motion of a drunken Strumpet,

Also was destroy'd by this drunken King, one of the finest *Mun.* Palaces in the World.

Q. *Where did the unfortunate Prince Darius travel during these mad Exploits?*

A. He fled to *Ecbatana*, and there rallying together his broken Forces, and raising as many others to add to them as he could, he resolved to stand the Brunt of another Battle; but while he was preparing for it, *Bessus* Governor of *Bactria*, and *Nabarzanes* a *Persian* Nobleman, seized him, and, shutting him up in a close Cart, fled with him towards *Bactria*.

Q. *How did Alexander act, when he received Intelligence of Darius's Case, and of the Danger he was in?*

A. He pursued the Traytors, but, on his near Approach, they gave *Darius* several mortal Wounds, and left him expiring in the Cart, and escaped themselves.

Q. *Was he dead before Alexander came to him?*

A. Yes, and when he saw his Corpse he could not forbear shedding Tears at the Spectacle, and having cast his Cloak over him, commanded him to be carried to *Sisygambis* his Mother, at *Susa*, and to be buried by her with a Royal Funeral, in the Burying-place of the Kings. Soon after *Bessus* was delivered bound to *Alexander*, who gave him to *Oxatres* Brother of *Darius*, to die such a Death as his Treason deserved. This Year 3675 *Alexander*, in a drunken Fury, murdered *Clitus*, one of his best Friends. The next he married *Roxana*, a Captive *Persian* Lady, while he was in Winter Quarters at *Nautica*; and also killed *Calisthenes*, for advising him not to require *Divine Honours*.

Q. *Who was this Calisthenes?*

A. He was a Philosopher, and a Kinsman of *Aristotle's*, *Alexander's* Master, and sent by him to attend this young Conqueror in the *Persian* War, and to direct him against those Excesses, which the Heat of his Youth might carry him into.

Q. *Where*

Q. Where did Alexander first project his Expedition Anno into India. Mun.

A. While he lay at *Nautica*, but he was obliged to reduce many Nations on this Side the River *Indus* first, which were then reckoned Part of *India*; among these were the *Affacans*; but *Cleopbis*, Queen of that Nation, being a beautiful Woman, redeem'd her Kingdom by prostituting her Body to his Lust, whereby she incur'd such Infamy among the *Indians*, as they call'd her ever afterwards the *Royal Whore*.

Q. Had she any Child by this Concubinage?

A. She had a Son, who from the Name of his Father was called *Alexander*, and who afterwards reigned in those Parts.

Q. What Opposition did Alexander meet with on the other Side the River Indus?

A. The Kingdom of *Taxiles*, which was the first on the other Side, submitted to him; but on his passing the River *Hydaspes*, *Porus* King of that Country rais'd an Army to impede his farther Progress, and gave him Battle; but was vanquished and taken Prisoner.

Q. How was Porus treated by Alexander after he was made his Prisoner?

A. The Magnanimity and Generosity of his Character so took with him, that he restored his Kingdom, and also augmented it. 3677

Q. How long did Alexander stay in India?

A. His Soldiers, being weary of such *Knight-Errantry*, forced him to put an End to the War; and after he had erected twelve Altars for a Memorial of his having been there, he repass'd the *Hydaspes*, and having at the Place where he vanquished *Porus* built a City called *Nicæa*, and another not far off, which he called *Bucephala*, in Memory of his Horse *Bucephalus*, which died there, he ordered his Fleet to be drawn down thither, purposing to carry his Conquests that Way as far as the Ocean, and then return to *Babylon*.

Q. Who

Ans. Q. Who was Admiral of his Fleet at this Time?

Mun. A. Nearchus, who having coasted along all the Countries from the *Indus* to the Mouth of the *Persian Gulph*, arrived at the *Isle of Ormus*, where hearing that *Alexander* was within five Days Journey of the Place, he went to him, and gave him an Account of his Voyage.

3679

Q. Was *Alexander* delighted with the Observations and Discoveries which *Nearchus* had made?

A. Yes, and sent him from thence to sail round *Arabia* and *Africa*, and return by the Mouth of the Straights (then called *Hercules Pillars*, but now *Gibraltar*) into the *Mediterranean Sea*; a Voyage which had been several Times attempted, but never but once performed, and that at the Command of *Necho King of Egypt*.

Q. Did *Nearchus* proceed on this Voyage?

A. In order hereto *Alexander* sent Orders to all his Lieutenants in *Misopotamia* and *Syria*, for a Fleet of Ships fit for such an Undertaking: This shews the Greatness of his Designs, but this, as well as others of them, were quash'd by his Death.

Q. Where did *Alexander* go from *Carmania*?

A. To *Pasargada*, and from thence to *Susa*, where he had left all the Captive Ladies at his last being there, and he now took to Wife *Statira*, eldest Daughter of *Darius*, and gave *Drypetis* the younger to *Hephestion* his chief Favourite, who died soon after, and *Alexander* solemnized his Funeral with extravagant Honours, and with as extravagant Cruelty.

Q. How did *Alexander* divert his Grief for the Loss of this Favourite?

A. He led his Army against the *Cassians*, a warlike Nation in the Mountains of *Media*, which none of the Kings of *Persia* could ever bring in Subjection to them, but he in forty Days wholly subdued them, and passed the *Tygris* towards *Babylon*.

Q. What

Q. What great Works did he project here?

Ans.

A. He chiefly set his Heart upon Repairing the Temple of *Belus*, and also to remedy the Damage that Place, as well as the Country about it, had suffered by *Cyrus's* breaking down the Banks of the *Euphrates*; but failed of effecting either; for gratifying himself in the Pleasures and Luxuries of the Place, especially in drinking to the utmost Excess, he threw himself into a Fever, which killed him. Here ended all the Designs of this great, fortunate, and vain-glorious Prince.

Q. After his Death did there arise any great Confusions among his Followers about the Succession?

A. After seven Days Contest they came to this Agreement, that *Arideus*, a Bastard Brother of *Alexander's*, should be declared King; and if *Roxana*, who was then gone eight Months with Child, should bring forth a Son, that Son should be joined with him in the Throne, and *Perdiccas* should have the Guardianship of both. When *Arideus* was thus placed on the Throne, they changed his Name to *Philip*, and from hence the *Philipæan Era* has its Original.

Q. What Occasion was there for Perdiccas to have the Guardianship of Philip, and to direct for him the Affairs of the whole Empire?

A. He being an Idiot, needed a Guardian as much as the Infant.

Q. How were the Governments of the Empire divided?

A. Among the chief Commanders of the Army, who were now sent to take Possession of them; but as soon as they were settled in their respective Provinces, they fell to leaguings and making War one against another, till hereby they were after some Years all destroyed to four.

Q. Who were these that remained?

A. (1) *Cassander*, who had now *Macedon* and *Greece*.
(2) *Lysimachus*, who had *Thrace* and those Parts of *Asia* that lay upon the *Hellepont* and the *Bosphorus*. (3)
Ptolemy,

Anno Ptolemy, who had Egypt, Lybia, Arabia, Palestine, and Mun. Cale-Syria. And, (4) Seleucus, who had all the rest.

Q. What became of Syfigambis, the Mother of Darius, after the Death of Alexander?

A. She famished herself out of Grief for it, and her Death was accompanied with the Deaths of her two Grandaughters, Statira the Widow of Alexander, and Drypetis the Widow of Hephestion.

Q. Who occasioned the Murder of these two Widows?

A. Roxana craftily got them into her Power by the Concurrence of Perdicas, and caused them both to be flung into a Well.

Q. Did Roxana bring forth a Son?

A. Yes, and he was called Alexander, and his Name, with that of Philip, was afterwards joined in the Government of the Empire, though neither of them had any more than a Name in it, for the Authority was wholly usurped by those who had divided the Provinces among them.

Q. Give me a short Account of the Wars between the Successors of Alexander?

3682 *A. In the Division of the Provinces, Cappadocia and Paphlagonia were assigned to Eumenes, but Ariarathes, King of Cappadocia, refused to let him take Possession of this Government, till by the Assistance of Perdicas he was cut off, and Eumenes quietly settled therein.*

Q. Where did Perdicas go after this?

A. He went into Cilicia for Winter Quarters, and while he lay there he projected the Divorcing of Nicaea, the Daughter of Antipater, whom he had lately taken to Wife, and the Marrying of Cleopatra, the Sister of Alexander the Great, in her stead, with Design, in her Right, to seize the whole Empire.

3683 *Q. How was this Plot discovered?*

A. Antigonus getting Knowledge of it, fled into Greece to Antipater and Craterus, who were then making War against the Aolians, and told them of it; where-

whereupon they clapped up a Peace, got *Ptolemy*, Governor of *Egypt*, into a Confederacy with them, and *Mun.* marched to the *Hellepont* to watch his Designs.

Q. In what Manner did Perdiccas act against this Confederacy?

A. He marched into *Egypt* against *Ptolemy*, and *Eumenes* was left to guard the *Asian* Provinces against the other. On this *Antipater* marched to the Assistance of *Ptolemy*, and the other two coming to a Battle, *Eumenes* gained an entire Victory, and *Craterus* was slain.

Q. What Success had Perdiccas in Egypt against Ptolemy?

A. Having unfortunately endeavoured to pass a Branch of the *Nile*, he had 1000 of his Men drowned in the Attempt, and many more devoured by the Crocodiles of that River, which provoked the *Macedonians* that followed him, and they rose in a Mutiny, and slew him in his Camp.

Q. Who succeeded Perdiccas in the Guardianship of Philip?

A. *Antipater*, who made a new Partition of the Provinces of the Empire, and *Selenus* had the Government of *Babylon* conferred on him. This Year *Jaddus* the High-Priest of the *Jews* being dead, *Onias* his Son succeeded in that Office.

Q. How did Antipater carry on the War against Eumenes?

A. He sent against him *Antigenus*, who gave him Battle in *Cappadocia*, in which *Eumenes* lost the Victory, with 8000 of his Men, and was shut up in the Castle 3684 of *Nora*, where he endured a whole Year's Siege.

Q. Which Way did Ptolemy take to enlarge his Power?

A. He resolved to invade *Syria*, *Phenicia*, and *Judea*, which in the first Partition were granted to *Laomedon*, one of *Alexander's* Captains, and having vanquish'd and taken him Prisoner, he made himself Master of all those Provinces.

Q. In

Ann Q. In what Manner did Ptolemy deal with the
Mur. Jews?

W A. He did at first deal very hardly with them, and carried 100,000 of them Captives into Egypt; but having brought Cyrene and Lybia under him, he placed several of them there, from whom were descended the Cyrenian Jews, of whom was Simon, that bore Christ's Cross at his Crucifixion.

Q. How long did Antipater hold his Guardianship of the Kings?

3685 A. Being worn out with Age, he died at Macedonia, and appointed Polyperchon, the eldest of Alexander's Captains then remaining, to take his Trust, which Cassander his Son resenting, seized as many Places as he could within the Verge of his Government, both in Greece and Macedon, and purposed no less than the dispossessing him of all the rest, and sent to Ptolemy and Antigonus, to engage on his Side in this Design.

Q. Did these two come into his Measures?

A. With a View only to their own Interest, for the Aim of Antigonus was to possess himself of all Asia; accordingly he drove Ariides out of his Government of the Lesser Phrygia and the Hellespont, and Clitus out of that of Lydia; but his greatest Difficulty was to make Eumenes, who had made his Escape from the Castle of Mura, and received a Commission from Polyperchon, constituting him Captain General of all Lesser Asia, and commanding him to make War against Antigonus.

Q. What other Changes happened in Macedonia on the Death of Antipater?

3688 A. Olympias, the Mother of Alexander, having formerly fled out of Macedonia with Alexander her Grandson, and Roxana his Mother, for fear of Antipater, now after his Death were returned, and having gotten the Power of the Kingdom into her Hands, put Philip the Nominal King to Death, and Roxana's Son alone bore the Title of King.

Q. How

Q. How went on the War between Antigonus and Antiochus?

A. This Year they had several Encounters, and the Campaign ended in Eumenes's Favour; the next they came to a decisive Battle, wherein Eumenes had the Victory, but Antigonus the Advantage.

Q. How came that to pass?

A. The Battle being fought in a sandy Field, they raised such a Dust as there was no seeing any Thing at the least Distance, of which Antigonus taking the Advantage, sent out a Party of Horse, which carried off all the Baggage of Eumenes, before they could be perceived.

Q. What great Advantage was gain'd by this?

A. When Eumenes's Soldiers were returned from the Pursuit of the Enemy, finding all their Baggage with their Wives and Children carried off, they turned all their Rage upon the General, seized and bound him, and sold him to Antigonus, who caused him to be put to Death in Prison, and then all went over to him. This absolutely determined the War, and thus perished the wisest and the gallantest Man of the Age in which he lived.

Q. Did the War of Antigonus end on Eumenes's Death?

A. No; Seleucus, who had fled from Babylon, being got safe into Egypt, so effectually represented the formidable Power of Antigonus to Ptolemy, as he did also to Lysimachus and Cassander, by Messengers, that he drew them all Three into a League against him.

Q. What Success had Antigonus against this Confederacy?

A. He soon dispossessed Ptolemy of Syria, Phœnicia, and Judea; but finding, while he was intent upon these Affairs, Cassander grew upon him in Lesser Asia, he marched thither with one Part of his Army, and left Demetrius his Son to defend Syria, &c. with the other Part against Ptolemy.

Q. What

Anno Q. *What Advantages did Ptolemy gain over Demetrius in the Absence of Antigonus?*

A. He reduced the Island of *Cyprus*, gained a great Victory over him at *Gaza*; after which he recovered the Countries he had been dispossessed of, but he lost them all again soon after by the Defeat of *Cilles* one of his Generals, and then retreated into *Egypt*, carrying with him most of the Riches, and a great Number of the Inhabitants of the Country.

Q. *What Part did Seleucus act in this War against Antigonus?*

A. During the late Successes of *Ptolemy*, he obtain'd of him 1000 Foot and 300 Horses, and marched with them to recover *Babylon*: with so small a Force did he undertake so great an Enterprize, and succeeded in it.

3693 From this retaking of *Babylon* by *Seleucus*, began the famous *Æra* of the *Seleucide*, made use of all over the East by *Heathens*, *Jews*, *Christians*, and *Mahometans*.

Q. *Did not Antigonus endeavour to drive Seleucus from Babylon?*

A. He sent *Demetrius* thither with an Army to recover that Province, but he returned without Success, for the Hearts of the People were firmly united to

3694 *Seleucus* and his Interest. This Year *Cassander* slew *Alexander Ægeus* and *Roxana* his Mother; but *Ptolemy* continues to reckon the Year of his Reign as if he was alive, till those who had divided the Empire of *Alexander* among them, declared themselves Kings. This Year also *Epictetus* began to publish his impious Philosophy.

Q. *Did Ptolemy renew the War against Antigonus?*

A. Yes, and divested him of several Cities which he before held in the maritime Parts of *Asia*, and recovered the Provinces of *Lybia* and *Cyrene* on the Death of *Ophellus*, who was slain by *Agathocles*, King of *Sicily*.

Q. *Where*

Q. Where was Demetrius during these Successes of Antiochus?

A. He was gone to Athens to expel thence the Garrison of Cassander, and depress his Power in those Parts, which having fully effected by driving Demetrius Phalareus out of that City, he returned again to his Father, who immediately sent him with a great Fleet and Army to dispossess Ptolemy of the Island of Cyprus.

Q. How long had Demetrius Phalareus governed Athens under Cassander?

A. Ten Years; and never were the Athenians under a more just Government, of which being now dispossessed, he returned to Cassander, and after his Death went into Egypt to Ptolemy.

Q. What Success had Demetrius in his Descent upon Cyprus?

A. It brought on a Fight at Sea between the contending Princes, in which Demetrius having obtained the Victory, Ptolemy was forced to take his Flight back into Egypt with eight Ships only; whereon the whole Island of Cyprus, with all the Forces, Shipping, and Magazines, Ptolemy had therein, fell into his Hands. Antigonus, on the News of this Victory, assumed the Title of King, and wore a Crown.

Q. How did the Egyptians behave towards Ptolemy, after his losing the Island of Cyprus?

A. When they heard what Antigonus had done on that Occasion, because Ptolemy, to whom they bore great Affection, might not be lessened by his Misfortunes, they gave him the like Title; and Lyfimachus, Cassander, and Seleucus, followed the same Example.

Q. How did Seleucus go on in the Province of Babylon?

A. He was now grown very great in the East, having slain Nicanor in Battle, who was sent against him by Antigonus, and not only secured unto himself Media, Assyria, and Babylon, but reduced under him also Persia, Bactria, Hyrcania, and all the other Provinces

on

Anno on this Side the *Indus*, which *Alexander* had before made himself Master of.

Q. Did *Antigonus* pursue the Blow which *Demetrius* had given *Ptolemy* by invading *Egypt*?

A. Yes, and could gain no Advantage of him, but was forced to return back into *Syria* with Disgrace, having lost great Numbers of his Men at Land, and many of his Ships at Sea, in this unsuccessful Expedition. Hereon *Ptolemy* wrote to *Lyfimachus*, *Cassander*, and *Seleucus*, of his Success, and they all entered into a League with him against this their common Enemy.

Q. From whence had *Ptolemy* King of *Egypt* the Name of *Soter*?

A. He having saved the City of *Rhodes* from being taken by *Demetrius*, after the *Egyptian* Expedition, they consecrated to him a Grove, and from his Name called it *Ptolemaum*, and paid Divine Honours unto him, and gave him the additional Name of *Soter*, i. e. The Saviour.

Q. How was the War carried on by the four confederated Kings against *Antigonus*?

A. The first Operations of it began on the *Hellestet*, for *Cassander* staying in *Europe* to make a Stand against *Demetrius* in those Parts, *Lyfimachus* passed the *Hellestet* with a great Army, and reduced *Phrygia*, *Lydia*, *Lyconia*, and most of the Countries of the *Propontis* to the River *Meander*, under his Power.

Q. Where was *Antigonus* at this Time?

A. At *Antigonia*, a new City he had built in *Upper Syria*, but on hearing the News of *Lyfimachus*'s Success, he hastened to meet him, and ordered *Demetrius* out of *Greece* to come to his Assistance.

Q. How did *Ptolemy* act on *Antigonus*'s leaving *Syria*?

A. He recovered again all *Phenicia*, *Judea*, and *Cale-Syria*; in the mean Time the Forces of the confederated Princes being got together, under the Command of *Seleucus* and *Lyfimachus* on one Side, and

Demetrius having joined *Antigonus* on the other, *Anna* the Controversy was soon brought to a decisive *Mun.* Issue.

Q. Where was this Battle fought?

A. Near a City in *Phrygia* called *Ipsus*, in which *Antigonus* was slain, and *Demetrius* hardly escaped to *Ephesus*.

Q. What followed on the Death of Antigonus?

A. The four confederated Princes divided his Dominions between them, and hereby the whole Empire of *Alexander* became parted, and settled into four Kingdoms, and these were the four Horns of the *He-Goat*, *Dan. viii.* which grew up after the breaking off the first Horn, which was *Alexander, ib.* This Year *Onias*, first of that Name, High-Priest of the *Jews*, being dead, was succeeded by *Simon* his Son, called the *Just*. 3704

Q. What did Seleucus set about after this Victory over Antigonus?

A. He built several Cities in *Upper Syria*, (*viz.*) *Antioch* and *Antigonia*; and on the River *Orontes*, *Selucia*, *Apamia*, and *Laodicea*, &c. To the City of *Antioch*, *Daphne* was reckoned a Suburb about 4 or 5 Miles from it; here *Seleucus* planted a Grove, which was ten Miles in Compass, and in the Middle of it built a Temple, and consecrated them both to *Apollo* and *Diana*. This was a Place where the Inhabitants resorted to for their Pleasures, for it had in it delicious Fountains, and Rivulets of the best Water, most pleasant Walks of *Cypus* Trees, and the purest Air, and every thing else that Nature, improved by all the Arts of Luxury, could afford; for whatsoever could any Way administer to a voluptuous Enjoyment, was here to be had in the utmost Excess, which made it so infamous, that *Daphnicis moribus vivere*, grew into a Proverb, to express any immodest and dissolute Life.

Q. How did Lyfimachus strengthen himself in his Kingdom?

A. He

Anno A. He made a strict Alliance with *Ptolemy*, took
Mun. *Arfnoe* one of his Daughters to Wife, and married a-
 nother of them to *Agathocles* his Son; *Seleucus* follow-
 3701 ing his Example, contracted the like Alliance with *De-*
metrius, and married his Daughter *Stratonice*, Niece to
Cassander.

Q. How long did *Cassander* govern *Macedon*?

A. Nineteen Years; on his Death a great Contest a-
 rising between *Antipater* and *Alexander*, his two Sons,
 3707 about the Succession, the former slew his Mother *Strat-*
onice on the Occasion, and the latter called in *Demetrius*
 to his Assistance, to be revenged on him for this horrid
 Fact; but he fled into *Thrace*, and soon after perished
 3710 in Banishment.

Q. How did *Demetrius* and *Alexander* agree after
 this?

A. *Demetrius* slew him at an Entertainment, where
Alexander intended to have slain him, and thereon got
 the Kingdom of *Macedon* in his Stead. By the Death
 of *Theffalonice* and her two Sons, the Royal Family of
Philip King of *Macedon* was utterly extirpated. About
 3711 this Time *Seleucus* built *Seleucia* on the *Tygris*, forty
 Miles distant from *Babylon*; he built many other
 Cities in *Greater* and *Lesser Asia*, 16 of which he call'd
Antioch, 9 *Seleucia*, 6 *Laodicea*, 3 *Apamea*, and 1
Stratonicea, in all which he planted the *Jews*, giving
 them equal Privileges and Immunities with the *Greeks*
 and *Macedonians*. *Simon the Just*, High-Priest of the
Jews, dying after he had been nine Years in that Of-
 fice, left behind him a Son called *Onias*, but he being
 an Infant and incapable of succeeding, *Eleezer* the
 Brother of *Simon* was substituted in his Stead. This
Simon the Just finished the Canon of the Old Testament
 after *Ezra*, by adding the two Books of *Chronicles*,
Ezra, *Nehemiah*, *Esther*, and *Malachi*.

CHAP. XII.

Demetrius driven out of Macedonia, taken Prisoner by Seleucus; Ptolemy Ceraunus, his Ingratitude; Serapis, a new God of the Egyptians; Antiochus Soter; Zipætes; Nicomedes; Pyrrhus; The Gauls enter Asia, Hungary, Thrace, and Macedonia; Origin of the Galatians; Of the Septuagint Version of the Scriptures; &c.

WHEN Demetrius had settled his Affairs in Greece and Macedon, did he endeavour to recover his Father's Empire in Asia? Anne Mun.

A. He made great Preparations for that Purpose both by Sea and Land, which alarmed Ptolemy, Seleucus, and Lyfimachus, who all entered into a Confederacy against him, and drew in Pyrrhus King of Epyrus to join with them; then invaded Macedonia in two Places, while Demetrius was absent in Greece, providing for his Asian Expedition. 3717

Q. Did this News draw him back again into Macedonia?

A. Before he could arrive, Pyrrhus had taken Beræa, a great City there, where many of Demetrius's Soldiers had their Families. This News no sooner got into the Army, but they declaring they would return Home to defend their Friends, revolted to Pyrrhus, and made him their King, on which Demetrius fled in the Disguise of a private Soldier into Greece.

Q. What Course did he take on his Return into Greece?

A. He left the Care of all he had in those Parts to Antigonus his Son, and with about 11000 Men went on

L

Board

And Board his Fleet, and sailed into *Asia* in a desperate *Manner* to try his Fortune.

Q. What was the Event of this bold Enterprize?

A. On his Arrival at *Miletus* he took that City, and there married *Ptolemais*, the Daughter of *Ptolemy*, who was brought to him thither by her Mother *Euridice*: Of this Marriage was born *Demetrius*, who afterwards reigned in *Cyrene*.

Q. Whither did Demetrius the Father, march from Miletus?

A. He invaded *Caria* and *Lydia*, and took many Cities from *Lyfmachus* in those Provinces, much augmented his Forces with new Recruits, and at length made himself Master of *Sardis*; but on the coming of *Agathocles* the Son of *Lyfmachus* against him, he was forced to quit all again, and flee to *Tarfsis*, a Town belonging to *Seleucus*, and pray Relief of that Prince.

Q. Did Seleucus commiserate his Condition, or take any Compassion of him?

A. At first he ordered him and his Forces to be furnished with all Things necessary, but afterwards being put in Mind of his Valour and undaunted Boldness, he resolved to crush him, and accordingly marched his Army against him, obliged him to surrender, and carried him to the *Syrian Chersonesus* near *Laodicea*, where he kept him Prisoner till he died.

Q. How long did Demetrius live in Confinement?

A. Above three Years, during which Time *Seleucus* often assured him, that as soon as *Antiochus* and *Stratonice* returned to Court, the Articles of his Restoration should be settled by them to his Content.

Q. Who was this Stratonice?

A. She was Daughter of *Demetrius*, and had been first married to *Seleucus*, but by an unparalell'd Example became the Wife of *Antiochus* his Son.

Q. By what Means did this come to pass?

A. *Stratonice* being a very beautiful Lady, *Antiochus* fell in Love with her, but not daring to own his Passion, grew desperately sick; *Erasistratus*, an eminent Greek Physician,

Physician, had the care of him, who soon found out *Antiochus* his Distemper; and the next Time *Seleucus* enquired of *Min.* his Health, told him his Disease was Love, and because he could not have the Person beloved, he must die. The King surprized, asked why he could not? Because, said the Physician, she is my Wife, and I cannot part with her. How, reply'd the King, not part with your Wife to save my beloved Son's Life? How then can you be my Friend? Sir, said the Physician, make it your own Case; would you part with *Stratonice*, was the Safety of your Son put upon that Issue? To which he answered, I would gladly part with any Thing for his Recovery. On this the whole Secret was discovered, and *Stratonice* easily prevailed upon to take the young Prince for her Husband instead of the old King, who was given him to Wife after she had born Children to his Father. They were crowned thereon King and Queen of *Upper Asia*, and sent thither when *Demetrius* was in Confinement. From this incestuous Marriage sprung all that Race of *Syrian Kings*, which so grievously persecuted God's People in *Judab* and *Jerusalem*. Soon after this *Ptolemy Soter* died.

Q. Who was his next Successor?

A. *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, one of his Sons by *Berenice*, but he had several other Sons, one of which was *Ptolemy* surnamed *Ceraunus*, i. e. *Thunderer*, who being 3719 born to him by *Euridice* the Daughter of *Antigater*, was the eldest of the two, and expected the Crown as due to him by vertue of his Birth-right.

Q. How did he behave himself on the Preference of his younger Brother before him?

A. He fled first to *Lyfimachus*, whose Son *Agathocles* had married his Sister *Lyfandra*; but after his Death he went to *Seleucus*, who received him with great Kindness, which he repaid with the most villainous Treachery. About this Time the Image of *Serapis* was brought out of *Pontus* to *Alexandria*.

Annos Q. What are you told concerning this new God of the
Mun. Egyptians being first introduced?

A. *Ptolemy Soter* busying himself in fortifying and adorning the City of *Alexandria*, there appeared to him in a Vision of the Night, a young Man of great Beauty, and more than human Shape, who commanded him to send to *Pontus* to fetch from thence his Image to *Alexandria*, promising him, that his doing this should make that City famous and happy; and on his saying this ascended up into Heaven in a bright Flame of Fire out of his Sight.

Q. What Advice did *Ptolemy* first take about this Matter?

A. He called together the *Egyptian* Priests, but they being wholly ignorant of *Pontus*, could give him no Answer concerning it; whereon consulting *Timotheus* an *Athenian*, then at *Alexandria*, he learnt from him, that in *Pontus* there was a City call'd *Sinope*, not far from which was a Temple of *Jupiter*, which had his Image in it, with another of a Woman standing by him, which was taken to be *Proserpina*. But other Matters putting this out of *Ptolemy's* Head, he thought no more of it, till the Vision appeared to him again in a more terrible Manner, threatening Destruction to him and his Kingdom, if his Commands were not obey'd.

Q. What was done on the Appearance of this second Vision?

A. *Ptolemy* being exceedingly terrified, sent immediately Ambassadors to the King of *Sinope* to obtain the Image: They being ordered in their Way to consult *Apollo* at *Delphos*, were commanded by him to bring away the Image of his Father, but leave that of his Sister. When they came to *Sinope*, they were not able to obtain what they were sent hither for; but after some Time these People being grievously oppressed by a Famine, were content, on *Ptolemy's* relieving them with a Fleet of Corn, to part with their God for it: Thus the Image was brought to *Alexandria*, and set up in one of the Suburbs of that City, where it was worshipped by

by the Name of *Serapis*, and a while after a very famous Temple was erected to it, called the *Serapeum*, *Mun.* which did, in the Magnificence and Ornaments of its Building, exceed all other Edifices in the World.

Q. The Tower or Light-house of Pharos being finished in this Year, give some Account of it?

3720.

A. It has been reckoned one of the seven Wonders of the World, and was a large four square Pile, built of white Marble of a great Height, which had always Fires maintained on the Top of it for the Use of Seamen, with this Inscription, **KING PTOLEMY TO THE GODS, THE SAVIOURS, FOR THE BENEFIT OF THOSE WHO PASS BY SEA.**

Q. Where was this Tower built?

A. In the Island of *Pharus*, over-against *Alexandria*.

Q. How much is it said to have cost building?

A. Eight hundred *Talets*, which Sum, if computed by *Aitic* Talents, amounts to 165,000*l.* of our Sterling Money; but if by *Alexandrian* Talents, to as much more.

Q. Was not Ptolemy Soter the Founder of the Museum, or College of learned Men, for the improving of Philosophy, and other useful Arts; as also of the Library at Alexandria, which grew afterwards to such a vast Bulk?

A. Yes, for at his Death he left in it 100,000 Volumes; and those that reigned after him added still more to them, till at length they amounted to 700,000 Volumes.

Q. What was their Method in collecting these Books?

A. They seized all the Books that were by any Greek or other Foreigner brought into *Egypt*, and sending them to the *Museum*, caused them to be transcrib'd, then sent the Copies to the Owners, but kept the Originals to be laid up in the Library.

Q. How long did this Library continue in its great Fame and Use at Alexandria?

L 3

A. Till

Anno A. Till the Year of our Lord 642, when it was finally destroyed by the Saracens, on their making themselves Masters of that City.

Q. Who was the President of this Museum, and had the Government of the Library?

A. Demetrius the Phalerian.

Q. Ptolemy Soter being dead, and only two of Alexander's Captains, Lyfimachus and Seleucus, surviving, did they make War upon each other?

3721 A. Yes, and thereby opened a Way to both their Destructions.

Q. What was the Occasion of their Quarrel?

A. After Lyfimachus had married his Son Agathocles to Cassandra Ptolemy's Daughter, he took another of them, called Arsione, to Wife himself, and had several Children by her: Hereon great Emulation happened between the two Sisters, to secure to themselves the Succession at the Death of Lyfimachus.

Q. Were these two Sisters by the same Parents?

3723 A. They had different Mothers, which conduced to heighten the Contention between them, for Lyfandra was born of Eurydice and Arsione of Beronice: On Ptolemy Ceraunus coming to the Court of Lyfimachus, who was own Brother to Lyfandra, Arsione feared his Conjunction with Agathocles and his Sister might overpower her, therefore accused Agathocles to the King, and had him put to Death. Hereon Lyfandra with her Children and Brother Ceraunus went over to Seleucus, and persuaded him to this War, wherein Lyfimachus was vanquished and slain.

Q. In what Manner did Ptolemy Ceraunus behave himself to Seleucus after this and all his former Favours?

A. The wicked Traiter having no Sense of Gratitude, conspired against his Benefactor, and basely murdered him as he was going to restore him to his Father's Kingdom; and after this killed Arsione's two Son, and sent her into Banishment.

Q. Here

*Q. How long did Ptolemy Ceraunus reign in Macedon ~~Ann~~
after all these Wickednesses?* *Mun.*

*A. The next Year after, waging War against the
Gauls, who had invaded Macedonia, he was taken Pri-
soner in Battle, and torn by them in Pieces, which was 3725
a Death he justly deserved.*

*Q. Whither did Arfinoe go after the Death of
Ceraunus?*

*A. To her Brother Ptolemy Philadelphus, King of
Egypt, who falling in Love with her, took her to
Wife.*

Q. Who succeeded Seleucus in the Empire of Asia?

*A. Antiochus, surnamed Soter, his Son by ~~wpama~~
Daughter of Artabazus, a Persian Lady.*

Q. What Wars did he engage in?

*A. As soon as he had settled his Affairs in the East,
he sent Patrocles, one of his Generals, with an Army
into Lesser Asia against the Heracleans, a Colony of
the Greeks, but Matters between them being made up,
he turned all his Forces against the Bithynians, by whom
he and all his Army were cut off.*

Q. Who was King of Bithynia at this Time?

*A. Zipates, who died with the Joy of this Victory,
and was succeeded by his eldest Son Nicomedes, from
whom were descended the Bithynian Kings, of whom
we have so frequent Mention in the Roman Histories.*

*Q. What Method did Nicomedes take to secure himself
in his Kingdom?*

*A. He had three Brothers, two of which he caused
to be cut off, but the youngest called Zipates escaped,
and maintained a long War with him.*

*Q. Did not Antiochus endeavour to be revenged on
him for the Death of Patrocles and the Loss of his
Army?*

*A. Yes, and called in the Gauls to his Assistance, and
it was on this Occasion that the Gauls first passed into
Asia?*

*Q. Relate the History of this Expedition of those bar-
barous People.*

Anno A. The next Year after *Pyrrhus's* first passing into *Mun. Italy*, the *Gauls* being over-stock'd at Home, sent out a vast Number of their People to seek for new Habitations.

Q. How did they divide themselves?

A. Into three Companies, under three Commanders; the first Company under *Brennus* and *Acichorius* marched into *Pannonia*, now called *Hungary*; the second under the Command of *Cerethrius*, went into *Thrace*; the third under *Belgius*, invaded *Illyrium* and *Macedonia*.

Q. By which of these was *Ptolemy Ceraunus* slain?

A. By the last, who after this Victory having separated themselves to plunder the Country, *Sosthenes* a *Macedonian* cut a vast Number of them off, and forced the rest to retreat; whereon *Brennus* and his Company came thither in his Stead.

Q. What Success had *Brennus* in his Expedition against *Sosthenes*?

A. Tho' 20,000 of his Men deserted on his March from *Pannonia* into *Macedonia* and *Greece*, he proceeded directly forwards, and having received new Recruits from *Gallia*, and raised others among the *Illyrians*, he over-powered *Sosthenes* with his Numbers, ravaged the whole Country, then passed on to the Streights of *Thermopylae* to enter into *Greece*.

Q. Was he not opposed here by the *Grecians*?

A. Yes, for some Time, till he was shewn the Way over the Mountains where *Xerxes* had passed before, and then the *Grecians* retired, and *Brennus* marched the Gros of his Army towards *Delphos*, to plunder the Temple of that City; but here he met with a wonderful Defeat.

Q. In what Manner was that?

3726 A. On his approaching the Place, there happened a terrible Storm of Thunder, Lightning, and Hail, and at the same Time a terrible Earthquake, which overwhelmed his Men by Hundreds; the *Greeks* also who were now come together from all Parts to defend their Temple, slew great Numbers, till at length by Famine, Cold,

Cold, Sickness, and the Sword of their Enemies, not *Ann* so much as one Man escaped. *Mun.*

Q. What became of that Part of Brennus's Army which deserted?

A. They marched into *Thrace* under *Leonorius* and *Lutarius*, two prime Leaders, and joined those whom *Cerethrius* had led thither before, seized *Byzantium* and the Western Coasts of the *Propontis*, and made all the adjacent Parts tributary to them.

Q. Where did they settle at last?

A. Having returned into *Asia*, they entered themselves into the Service of *Nicomedes*, who having by their Assistance conquered *Zipates* his Brother, he assigned them that Part of *Lesser Asia* to dwell in, which *3727* from them was afterwards called by some *Gallo-Græcia*, by others *Galatia*; and from these People were descended those *Galatians* to whom *St. Paul* wrote one of his *Canonical Epistles*.

Q. How long did those Gauls under Cerethrius remain in Thrace?

A. Afterwards making War upon *Antigonus Gonatus*, who on the Death of *Sosthenes* reigned in *Macedonia*, they were all cut off and destroyed by him. Thus ended this terrible Inundation of barbarous People which threatned *Macedonia* and all *Greece* with no less than an absolute Destruction. Within the Compass of this Year that *Greek Translation* of the *Hebrew Scriptures*, which we call the *Septuagint*, was made.

Q. Why is that Version called the Septuagint?

A. From a fabulous History written concerning it under the Name of *Aristæas*.

Q. Who was this Person?

A. He is said to have been a prime Officer in the Guards of *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, at the Time when this Affair was transacted.

Q. What Account did Aristæas give of this Work?

A. He says, *Ptolemy Philadelphus* King of *Egypt* being intent on making a great Library at *Alexandria*, committed the Care of this Matter to *Demetrius Phalaræus*, a noble *Athenian*, then living at his Court, directing him to

And procure from all Nations whatsoever Books were of *Mun.* Name among them. *Demetrius* in the Search being informed of the Book of the *Law of Moses* among the *Jews*, acquainted the King hereof, whereon he signified his Pleasure that the Book should be sent for from *Jerusalem*, with Interpreters from the same Place to render it into *Greek*; on this Occasion King *Ptolemy* published a Decree for the Release of all the *Jewish* Captives in *Egypt*, and sent *Andreas* and *Aristeus*, the pretended Author of this History, with vast Presents, and a Letter written to *Elaazar*, the *High-Priest* of the *Jews* at *Jerusalem*, to send from thence a true Copy of the *Hebrew* Original, and with it six out of each of the 12 Tribes of *Israel*, to translate it. On their coming to *Jerusalem* they were received with great Respects, and having received from the *High-Priest* a true Copy of the *Law of Moses*, all written in *Golden Letters*, and six Elders out of every Tribe, in all Seventy-two Persons, to make a Version of it into the *Greek* Language, they returned to *Alexandria*, and in 72 Days performed the whole Work; and according to *Aristeus*, *Demetrius* wrote it down.

Q. Has this Story been any farther improv'd since his Time?

A. Josephus has added to it, by making distinct Cells for the Interpreters, in which each being shut up by himself, they made distinct Versions, but all agreed together to a Word, on comparing what each had done; but the Contradictions, Uncertainties, and various Accounts of this Story, plainly prove that what has been delivered to us on this Matter by *Aristeus*, *Philo*, *Justin Martyr*, and their Followers, is all Fiction and Romance.

Q. Thus far having given an Account of what is related by some of the Ancients concerning this Version, now lay down what appears to be the Truth of the whole Matter?

A. Alexander on his building *Alexandria* brought a great Many *Jews* thither to plant that City, and *Ptolemy Soter* on his Death having fixed the Seat of his Government in that Place, brought thither many more of this Nation, where having granted unto them the same Pri-

Privileges with the *Macedonians* and other *Greeks*, their *Ann* daily Intercourse necessitated them to learn, and con- *Mun.* stantly use the *Greek Language*, which accustoming themselves to, soon made them forget their own; and therefore not understanding the *Hebrew* nor the *Chalde* Language, they had the *Law of Moses* translated into *Greek*, that this Version might serve for the same Purpose in *Alexandria* and *Egypt*, as the *Chalde* Paraphrase afterwards did in *Jerusalem* and *Judea*; and this was the true Cause of the making of that *Greek Version* which hath from the Fable of *Aristeus* been called the *Septuagint*.

C H A P. XIV.

The Rise of the Roman Grandeur; King of Egypt sends Ambassadors to Rome; Romans return the Compliment; Behaviour of those Ambassadors; Antigonus Gonatas takes Athens; Kingdom of Pergamus erected; Of the Sadduces; Berosus; Apame; Coma Berenices; Ptolemy Philadelphus; His magnificent Buildings; Library; Immense Wealth; Antiochus Hierax; Parthian Empire founded; Colossus of Rhodes; Ptolemy Evergetes; Ptolemy Philopater; Battle of Raphia; Battle of Hannibal at the Lake of Thrasimenus; &c.

HOW long did Pyrrhus King of Epirus continue the *Ann* War in Italy? *Mun.*

A. Six Years; but now the Romans having forced him to return Home with Disappointment, their Names *3730* began.

Anno began to grow of great Fame among foreign Nations, *Mun.* and *Ptolemy Philadelphus* sent Ambassadors to desire their Friendship.

Q. How did the Romans accept of this kind Message from so great a King?

373¹ *A. They returned the like Respects the next Year after, and sent a solemn Embassy into Egypt.*

Q. Who were these Ambassadors?

A. Fabius Gurges, Cn. Fabius Pictor, and Q. Ogulnius.

Q. What was their Conduct in this Employment?

A. They put off every Thing from themselves that might tend to their own proper Interest.

Q. What Examples have they left of this Self-Denial?

A. King Ptolemy having invited them to Supper with him, presented them with Crowns of Gold, which they accepted of for the Sake of the Honour done them; but next Morning they crowned with them the Statues of the King which stood in the publick Places of the City.

Q. Have you any more Instances of this Nature?

A. Yes, on their taking Leave the King presented them with very valuable Gifts, which they accepted, that they might not disgust him by the Refusal; but as soon as they were returned to Rome, they delivered them all into the publick Treasury before they appeared in the Senate to give an Account of their Embassy.

Q. How long did Pyrrhus reign in Epirus?

373⁶ *A. He was killed this Year in an Attempt he made upon the City of Argus. After his Death Antigonus Genatas King of Macedon took Athens.*

Q. Who was King of Pergamus at this Time?

374¹ *A. Philetarus, an Eunuch, who died this Year; he served Docimus one of the Captains of Antigonus, and on his Revolt from that Prince to Lyfmachus, passed with him in the same Service; Lyfmachus finding him*

a Person of great Capacity, made him his Treasurer, *Anno* and put the City of *Pergamus* into his Hands, which he *Mun.* secured to himself, and founded that Kingdom.

Q. Who succeeded Philatærus?

A. Eumenes his Brother's Son.

Q. What other remarkable Occurrences happened this Year?

A. The first Punic War began therein between the Romans and Carthaginians, which lasted 40 Years; and towards the End of the same Year died Antigonus Socho, who was President of the Sanhedrim at Jerusalem, and had been Preacher of the Jewish Law in the prime Divinity School, from the Death of Simon the Just, who was the last of those that were called the Men of the Great Synagogue.

Q. What was the Difference between the Presidents of the Sanhedrim, and the Men of the Great Synagogue?

A. These taught the Scriptures only to the People; those who succeeded after them added the Traditions of the Elders to the Holy Scriptures, and taught them both to their Scholars, and obliged the Observance of one as well as the other, as if both had equally proceeded from Mount Zion.

Q. What were these last called?

A. The Tanaim, or Mishnical Doctors, the first of whom was Antigonus Socho: He was succeeded by Joseph the Son of Joazer, and Joseph the Son of John; the first of these was President of the Sanhedrim, and the other Vice-President. In the Time of this Antigonus began the Sect of the Sadduces.

Q. Why were they called Sadduces, and what were their Tenets?

A. They had their Name from Sado, the first Founder of them, who was one of the Scholars of Antigonus: He taught, that there was no Resurrection, nor future State; but that all the Rewards, which God gave to those that served Him, were in his Life only.

Q. What

Ann. Q. *What have you of Nicomedes, King of Bithynia?*

~ A. This Year he built a new City where *Assacus* before stood, and called it *Nicomedia*, of which frequent Mention is made in the Histories of the latter Roman Empire.

3742 Q. *How did Eumenes secure himself in the Kingdom of Pergamus, after the Death of Philetærus?*

3743 A. *Antiochus Soter* thought to possess himself of his Territories; but *Eumenes* overthrew him in Battle near *Sardis*, and thereby not only secured himself in the Possession of what his Uncle had left him, but also augmented it.

Q. *Where did Antiochus go after this Defeat?*

A. He returned back to *Antioch*, and there put to Death one of his Sons who had raised some Disturbance in his Absence, made the other, who was named *Antiochus*, King, and died soon after.

Q. *Of whom was this his Son Antiochus born?*

A. Of *Stratonice*, who had been first his Mother-in-Law, and afterwards his Wife, as hath been above related. On his coming to the Crown, he took to Wife *Laodice*, his Sister by the same Father, and afterwards took the Name of *Theus*, i. e. *Divine*.

Q. *Who first gave him this Name?*

A. The *Milyrians*, on his delivering them from the Tyranny of *Timarchus*, whom he afterwards slew, and for this Reason he was honour'd by them as a God; for the *Lamnians* had before consecrated his Father and Grandfather to be Gods, and built Temples to them; and the *Smyrnians* did the same for *Stratonice* his Mother. In this Reign lived *Berosus* the famous *Babylonian* Historian.

Q. *How did Ptolemy employ himself during his Cessation from War?*

A. He was very intent to advance the Riches of his Kingdom, and contriving how to bring all the Trade of the East that was by Sea into it.

Q. By

Q. By what Method did he manage this Project?

A. He built a City on the Western Side of the Red-Sea, as far down as the Confines of Ethiopia, from whence he could set out his Shipping for the better carrying on of this profitable Trade.

Q. What was this City called?

A. *Berenice*, from the Name of his Mother, but not having a good Harbour, *Myos-Hormos*, in the Neighbourhood, was found to be more convenient; and by the Situation of this Port the *Tyrians* were deprived, and this Trade became fixed at *Alexandria*, where it continued 1700 Years, as above related.

Q. Did not Magus, King of Cyrene and Lybia, propose to marry his only Daughter Berenice to King Ptolemy his Brother's eldest Son, and to give with her the Reversion of his Kingdoms, about this Time?

A. Yes, and Peace was made between them on these Terms; but *Magas* dying before the Treaty was executed, *Apame* his Wife sent into *Macedon* to *Demetrius*, half Brother of King *Antigonus Gonatas*, making him the same Proposals. 3747

Q. Did Demetrius accept of this Offer and Invitation?

A. Yes, but on his Arrival there, *Apame* fell in Love with him herself; which *Demetrius* complying with, occasioned the Ministers and Soldiers to conspire against him; and *Berenice* having led them to the Door of her Mother's Bed-chamber, they slew him in her Bed.

Q. What became of Apame and Berenice after this?

A. *Apame* was sent into *Syria* to King *Antiochus Theus* her Brother, and *Berenice* went into *Egypt*, and married the Son of King *Ptolemy*.

Q. Was not the Death of Demetrius, and the Return of Apame, attended with a War between Ptolemy and Antiochus?

A. There was certainly a War commenced on this Occasion between these two Kings, but the Successes of it

Anno it on either Side are not recorded in History; only it is *Mun.* said, that while *Antiochus* was engaged in it, many Com-
 motions and Revolts happened in the East, and Peace
 was made between them.

Q. What were the Terms of this Peace?

A. That *Antiochus*, divorcing *Leodice* his former Wife, should marry *Berenice* the Daughter of *Ptolemy*, and make her his Queen instead of the other. This Agreement being ratified on both Sides, *Ptolemy* sailed with his Daughter to *Seleucia*, where, having met *Antiochus*, the Marriage was celebrated with great Solemnity, according to the Prophecy of *Daniel*, chap. xi. ver. 56.

Q. Did Ptolemy collect any Books, Statues, or Pictures, while he was in Asia?

375 *A.* He saw there a Statue of *Diana* in one of her Temples, which pleased him, and, desiring it of *Antiochus*, carried it with him into *Egypt*.

Q. Was not this Statue sent back again into Syria at the Request of Arsinoe?

A. She, falling sick soon after, dreamt, that *Diana* appeared to her, and told her, the Cause of her Illness was, *Ptolemy's* taking away her Statue from the Temple where it had been consecrated to her: Hence it was replaced in that Temple again, and many Gifts and Oblations were offered to appease the Wrath of the Goddess.

Q. Did this help the sick Queen?

A. No, she died soon after, to the great Grief of *Ptolemy*, who had built Cities of her Name; and erected Obelisks to her Memory.

Q. Which was the most remarkable Project he formed on this Occasion?

A. His attempting to erect a Temple at *Alexandria*, in which it was projected to build a Dome, whose Vault being all arched with Loadstones, should cause an Image of her's, made with Steel, there to hang in the Air in the Middle of the Dome, by virtue of their attractive Quality.

Q. Who

Q. *Who had the contriving of this wonderful Design?* *Ann*
A. *Dinocrates*, a famous Architect of those Times. *Mun.*

Q. *Did he finish it?*

A. *Ptolemy* and he both dying, put an End to the Work, so that no Experiment was made what the Loadstone would do in this Case.

Q. *How many Children did Ptolemy Philadelphus leave behind him?*

A. Two Sons and a Daughter, by his Wife *Arfinoe*, Daughter of *Lyfimachus*.

Q. *How were these Children disposed of?*

A. *Ptolemy Euergetes* his eldest Son reign'd after him; 3755 the other Son, called *Lyfimachus*, was put to Death by his Brother, by some Insurrection raised against him. The Daughter, named *Berenice*, was married to *Antiochus Theus* King of Syria.

Q. *As Ptolemy Philadelphus was a great Collector of Books, was he also a Patron of Learning?*

A. Those, who were eminent for any Sort of Literature, resorted to him from all Parts, and partook of his Bounty.

Q. *What celebrated Authors are particularly said to have lived at his Court?*

A. *Manetho* the Egyptian Historian, who dedicated his History to him. *Theocritus*, *Callimachus*, *Lycophron*, and *Aratus*, four Poets of this Age, whose Works are still remaining, were much in his Favour, and *Zelus* the snarling Critic came to his Court; but he hated him for his ill Nature.

Q. *What other great Actions are remarked of this Prince?*

A. He had been a great Builder of Cities, Temples, and other publick Edifices, and left behind him so many Monuments of Magnificence, that it afterwards grew into a Proverb, when any Work was erected with more than ordinary Sumptuousness, to call it *Philadelphian*.

Q. *Are any of these Cities in Being?*

A. Only one, which he built on the West Side of the Country of *Palestine*, has recover'd its old Name, and

Arno and is called *Acon*, but by the *Turks* at present *Arr. Mun.* On the East Side of this Country was that ancient City, so often mentioned in Scripture by the Name of *Rabbab of the Children of Ammon*.

Q. Did he die possessed of much Riches, after the great Expences he must have been at?

A. Tho' he had two Fleets in the *Mediterranean*, and one in the *Red-Sea*, and constantly maintained in Pay an Army of 300,000 Foot, 40,000 Horse, 300 Elephants, and 2000 armed Chariots, and had Arms, &c. for 300,000 more; he left in his Treasury 740,000 Talents of *Egypt* in ready Money; a prodigious Sum!

Q. How did his Son Euergetes, and his Brother-in-Law Antiochus Theus, agree after his Death?

3756 *A.* As soon as the King of *Syria* heard of his Father-in-Law's Death, he removed *Berenice* from his Bed, and recalled *Laodice* and her Children.

Q. Did Laodice accept of this Invitation?

A. She came, but knowing the fickle Temper of her Husband, only made use of this Opportunity to secure the Succession of the Crown to her Son, her Children being disinherited by the Articles of Marriage between *Antiochus* and *Berenice*.

Q. How did she bring this Design to bear?

A. She first procured *Antiochus* to be poison'd, then put one *Artemon*, that was very much like him, into his Bed, to personate him as sick, concealing his Death till, by Orders forged in his Name, her eldest Son *Seleucus Callinicus* was secured of the Succession.

Q. What became of Berenice and her Son, after this wicked Scheme had taken Effect?

A. She being inform'd, that Designs were laying to take them both off, fled with her Son to *Daphne*, and shut herself up in the *Asylum* built there by *Seleucus Nicator*.

Q. How long did she secure herself and Son in this Place?

A. Not long, for *Laodice* fraudulently circumvented them, and they were soon after both villainously slain, which was foretold by the Prophet *Daniel*, ch. xi. 6.

Q. Was

Q. Was not the Death of this Queen and her Son revenged by Ptolemy ? Anno Mun.

A. He, jointly with the Cities of Lesser Asia, went with an Army towards Antioch for their Relief, but not arriving till after they were murder'd, he turn'd his Rage against Seleucus Callinicus, pass'd the Euphrates, brought all under him as far as Babylon, and the River Tigris, then march'd back into Egypt, to suppress a Sedition rais'd there, carrying with him vast Treasures.

Q. To how much did this Plunder amount ?

A. To 40,000 Talents, besides Gold and Silver Vessels and Images to the Number of 2500, among these were many of the Egyptian Idols, which Cambyses, on his conquering Egypt, had carried into Persia.

Q. Did Ptolemy restore these to their former Temples ?

A. Yes; and hence he had the Name of Euergetes, i. e. the Benefactor. This also was foretold by Daniel, ch. ix. 7, 8, 9.

Q. On Ptolemy's going on this Expedition, what was done at Home ?

A. Berenice his Queen made a Vow to consecrate her Hair, (in the Fineness of which her chief Beauty consisted) in Case he came safe back.

Q. Was she suffer'd to fulfil this Vow on his Return ?

A. She would cut it off, and offer'd it up in the Temple which Ptolemy Philadelphus had built on the Promontory of Zephyrum in Cyprus, to his beloved Wife Arsinoe, which was called the Zephyrian Venus.

Q. How long did this Hair continue there ?

A. Soon after it was stolen or lost, and Ptolemy was much offended at it.

Q. In what Manner was his Anger appeas'd ?

A. Conon of Samos, a flattering Mathematician, being then at Alexandria, gave out, that this Hair was catch'd up into Heaven, and shew'd him the Seven Stars near the Tail of the Lyon, which, he said, was the consecrated Hair. Hence Coma Berenices, i. e. The Hair of Berenice became one of the Constellations, and is so to this Day.

Q. By

Anno Q. By which Road did Ptolemy return to Egypt from
Mun. the late Expedition?

~ A. He made Jerusalem in his Way, and there offer'd many Sacrifices to the God of Israel, for the Victories he had obtain'd over the King of Syria.

Q. How did Seleucus carry on the War against Ptolemy?

3760 A. He prepared a great Fleet to reduce the revolted Cities of Asia, but lost it in a Storm; soon after he put to Sea again, and then ran the Hazard of a Battle; in which, being overthrown, he lost great Part of his Army.

Q. What Course did he now take for the Restoration of his broken Affairs?

A. He invited Antiochus his Brother (who, from his rapacious Disposition, was called Hierax, i. e. the Hawk) to join him, promising him all the Provinces in Lesser Asia, that belonged to the Syrian Empire.

Q. Did this Offer prevail with his Brother to come into an Alliance with him?

A. He was then at the Head of an Army in those Provinces, and accepted of the Proposal, with Design only of getting the whole Empire to himself.

Q. After Seleucus had received this second Blow from Ptolemy, did not the Cities of Smyrna and Magnesia also enter into a League with him to support his Interest, and Royal Majesty?

A. Yes, and this League engraven, on a Marble Column, is now standing in the Theatre Yard at Oxford. It was brought out of Asia by Thomas Earl of Arundel, in the Reign of Charles I. and given to the University by Henry Duke of Norfolk in the Reign of Charles II. The Greek capital Letters on it are still very legible.

3761 Q. What was done on this Confederacy?

A. The two contending Kings made a Peace for ten Years, but Seleucus having promised his Brother all the Provinces of Lesser Asia, he persisted in his Demand, and the other in the Refusal; which occasioned a Battle between them.

Q. Which got the Victory?

A. Antio-

A. Antiochus Hierax; and Seleucus narrowly escaped Anno with his Life; but the Battle being got chiefly by the Mun. Assistance of the Galatians, which Antiochus had hired; on a Rumour that Seleucus was slain, they plotted his Brother's Death also, reckoning, in Case he was cut off, all Asia would be theirs.

Q. How did Antiochus escape this Danger?

A. He gave them all the Treasure he had, for the 3762 Ransom of his Life?

Q. Was no Advantage made by the neighbouring Princes of this Contention between the two Brothers?

A. Eumenes King of Pergamus, during this War, over-ran all the Lesser Asia, on the West Side of the Syrian Empire; but soon after died of excessive Drinking.

Q. Who reigned King of Pergamus after him?

A. His Cousin German Attalus; yet, notwithstanding the Conquests which Eumenes had made in the Western Parts of Lesser Asia, and what Theodotus and Arses had curtailed from it on the East, the two Brothers still pursued the War even into Mesopotamia, where, most likely happened the Battle in Babylonia, which Judas Maccabeus mentions, 2 Macc. viii. 20. For by this, or some other Victory, Antiochus was routed and forced to fly to Egypt.

Q. How was he there used by Ptolemy, the professed 3764 Enemy of his Family?

A. He kept him confin'd several Years; but at length he made his Escape, and falling in his Way among Thieves was slain. The next Year Zenodotus, Library-keeper at Alexander, dying, was succeeded by Eratosthenes.

Q. Who was this Eratosthenes?

A. The King invited him from Athens; he was by Birth a Cyrenian, and had been Scholar to Callimachus, and is often quoted as a Person of universal Knowledge by Pliny, Strabo, and others. He left behind him a Catalogue of the Kings from the Reign of Minraim to the

Anno the Time of the Trojan War, which is still extant in Mun. Syncellus.

Q. Antiochus being dead, did Seleucus endeavour to reduce those Provinces, which had revolted from him in Lesser Asia?

A. He marched Eastward, but, being overthrown by Arsaces, was taken Prisoner. From this Time Arsaces took upon him the Title of King, and founded the Parthian Empire.

Q. Did all the Parthian Kings, that succeeded him, take the Name of Arsaces?

A. Yes; in the same Manner as all the Kings of Egypt took the Name of Ptolemy after Ptolemy Sotor, so long as his Race continued.

Q. How went Affairs at Jerusalem at this Time?

3778 A. Onias the High-Priest growing old and covetous, having neglected to pay the annual Tribute to Ptolemy, he sent Athenion, one of his Court, to demand an immediate Payment of all Arrears, threatening, in Case this Message was not comply'd with, to send his Army to dispossess the Jews of their Country.

Q. What Method did Onias take to deliver the People from the Danger which threaten'd them?

A. Joseph, a young Man of great Reputation, and Nephew to Onias, undertook to go to Alexandria, and set all right again.

Q. What Success had he in this Embassy?

A. He soon appeased the Wrath of Ptolemy, and was taken into his Favour, and made Receiver-General of the Provinces of Coele-Syria and Palestine, Phœnicia, Judæa, and Samaria.

3779 Q. How long did Seleucus continue Prisoner in Parthia?

A. He this Year died: His Wife was Laodice, Sister of Andromachus, one of his Generals. By her he had two Sons and a Daughter; the Daughter was married to Mithridates King of Pontus, who had with her Phrygia in Dower; Seleucus his eldest Son succeeded him; but being a very weak Prince, he was soon cut off, and An-
tiachus

Antiochus his Brother ascended the Throne, though but *Antiochus* fifteen Years old. *Mun.*

Q. How did this minor Prince settle the broken Affairs of his Father's Kingdom?

A. He first made *Molon* and *Alexander*, two Brothers, his Governors of *Media* and *Persia*: All the Provinces of *Lesser Asia* he committed to the Charge of *Achaus*, who was his Kinsman and the Son of *Andromachus*.

Q. How did these Governors behave themselves in their respective Provinces, under their young Sovereign?

A. The two Brothers rebelled against him; and *Achaus*, after he had recovered all that *Attalus* King of *Pergamus* had wrested from the *Syrian* Empire, declared himself King of *Asia*. While these Things were doing, a violent Earthquake happened in the East, which threw down the Walls of *Rhodes*, and also the great *Colossus*, which was one of the Seven Wonders of the World.

Q. Give an Account of this Colossus?

A. It was a prodigious Statue of Brass, erected to the *Sun*, 100 Feet in Height, and every Thing else proportionable. Toward the End of this Year died *Ptolemy* *Euergetes*, and was succeeded by his Sons *Ptolemy* *Philopater*, a most profligate and vicious young Prince. 3782

Q. By what Means did Antiochus suppress the Rebellion of Molon and Alexander?

A. He first sent two of his Generals against them with Part of his Army, and marched himself with the other Part into *Cele-Syria*, to attempt the Recovery of those Provinces, taking the Advantage of *Ptolemy's* Death, and of the Succession of so profligate a Prince. 3783

Q. What remarkable Occurrences happened to him in this Expedition?

A. While he was on this March, there was brought to him to *Seleucia* near *Zugma*, *Laodice*, the Daughter of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, to be his Wife; which caused his Stay there for some Time, to celebrate the Nuptials; but this Joy was soon interrupted by ill News from his two Generals, who had been defeated by the

Arco two Rebels, *Molon* and *Alexander*, and were forced to *Mun.* retire.

Q. *What was he advised to do on this Occasion?*

A. To march directly to their Assistance, and force the Rebels to a Battle before they grew to any greater Head.

Q. *Was this Advice followed by the King?*

A. Yes; and he gain'd a complete Victory over them. Whereon the two Brothers first slew their Mother, then their Wives and Children, and afterwards themselves.

Q. *Did Antiochus renew his Design upon Cæle-Syria, after he had suppressed these Traitors?*

A. He first laid Siege to *Seleucia*, which lay on the Mouth of the River *Orontes*, and was the Sea-port to *Antioch*; and, having carried it by a general Assault, drove the *Egyptians* out; then hastened into *Cæle-Syria*, being invited thither by *Theodotus*, *Ptolemy's* Governor of that Province, with Offer of putting the whole Country into his Hands.

Q. *What were the Advantages he made of this Invitation?*

3785 A. It enabled him to carry on the War with great Success during this Year's Campaign; but the next Spring these two Kings came to a decisive Battle, and each of them rid before the Front of their respective Armies, to encourage their Men to fight.

Q. *What was the Event of this Engagement?*

A. *Ptolemy* gain'd a compleat Victory; and *Antiochus* was forced to quit those Parts, and return to *Antioch*, with the Loss of 10,000 Men slain, and 4000 taken Prisoners.

Q. *Was there any bold Adventures made by particular Persons, before or at the Time of this Action?*

A. Yes; *Theodotus* the *Ætolian*, who invited *Antiochus* thither, being well acquainted with the Usage of the *Egyptians*, took with him two Companions, and, in a dusky Evening, went into the Enemies Camp, thence proceeded into *Ptolemy's* Tent with Design to kill him, and with that one Stroke put an End to the War.

Q. *How did he succeed in this desperate Design?*

A. Not

A. Not finding the King there, he slew his chief Physician instead of him, with two others; then with *Mun.* his two Friends escaped safe back again into his own Camp.

Q. What Actions are particularly recorded of this Nature on the other Side?

A. *Arfinoe*, Sister and Wife to *Ptolemy*, continued with him, encouraging the Soldiers thro' all the Heat and Danger of the Battle.

Q. Where was this Battle fought?

A. At *Raphia*, in the Deserts that parted *Egypt* and *Palestine*, a Town lying between *Rhinscorura* and *Gaza*. It is remarked, that this Battle was fought at the same Time as *Hannibal* vanquished *Flaminius* the Roman Consul, at the Lake of *Thrasimenus* in *Hetruria*. 3787

Q. Where did *Ptolemy* go after this Victory?

A. He made a Progress thro' the Provinces he had thereby regain'd, and visited *Jerusalem*.

Q. Did he there offer any Sacrifices to the God of Israel?

A. Yes, and made many Oblations to the Temple, and gave several Donations to it: But not being content with a View of it from the outer Court, he pressed into the inner, and, on his passing farther to go into the *Holy of Holies*, he was smitten from God, and carried out half dead; whereby being filled with Wrath against the whole Nation of the *Jews*, he vented many Threatnings against them.

Q. Who was the High-Priest that withstood *Ptolemy* when he made this Attempt?

A. *Simon* the Son of *Onias*; for his Brother dying towards the latter End of the former Year, he succeeded in that Office.

Q. How did *Antiochus* act after his late Defeat?

A. He made Peace with *Ptolemy* to march against *Atchæus*, who had now made himself absolute Matter of all the *Lesser Asia*.

Q. In what Manner did *Ptolemy* revenge himself on the *Jews*, when he returned to *Alexandria*?

M

A. The

Ann *A.* The Inhabitants of *Alexandria* were divided into *Mun.* three Ranks; and the *Jews*, by the Favour of *Alexander the Great*, and *Ptolemy Soter*, were enrolled among the first Rank: Of this Right, he now was resolved to deprive them.

Q. What Method did he take to do this?

3787 *A.* He made a Decree, that all of the *Jewish* Nation, who lived there, should be enrolled in the third Rank among the common People; and, at the Time of their Enrollment, should have the Mark of an *Ivy Leaf*, the Badge of his God *Bacchus*, impressed upon them with an hot Iron.

Q. Was there no Proviso's made in this Decree?

A. Yes; that those who would be initiated into the Heathen Religion, should retain their former Privileges.

Q. Did any of the *Jews* accept of this Condition?

A. Out of the many Thousands then in *Alexandria*, only three Hundred came into it.

Q. For what Reason did he mark them with the Badge of his God *Bacchus*?

A. Not only in that by his Drunkenness he had made himself a great Devotee of his; but most especially in that the *Ptolemy*s pretended to derive their Pedigrees from him, and he himself was marked with this Badge, and therefore had the Nick-Name of *Gallus*.

Q. Why was this Name given him?

A. Because the Priests, who officiated in all the *Bacchanalian* Solemnities, were called *Gali*, and crowned with *Ivy*.

Q. Did his Resentment against the *Jews* stop here?

A. No, he took a farther Resolution to destroy the whole Race of them; accordingly ordered all of that Profession, who lived in *Egypt*, to be brought in Chains to *Alexandria*, and shut them up in the *Hippodrome*, to be exposed for a Spectacle, and destroyed by Elephants.

Q. What Place was the *Hippodrome*?

A. It was a large Place without the City, where the People used to assemble to see Horse-Races.

Q. What was the Event of this barbarous Design?

A. The

A. The third Day, when the King came to the Place, and the Elephants were let loose, instead of falling upon the Jews, they destroyed a great Number of the Spectators ; also several uncommon Appearances were seen in the Air at that Time.

Q. Was not the King very much frightened at this ?

A. He durst no longer prosecute his Rage against the Jews, but, revoking all his Decrees, added more Favours unto them, and gave them Liberty to put to Death all those who had apostatized from their Religion, which they accordingly executed, not sparing a Man.

Q. With what Success did Antiochus carry on the War against Achæus ?

A. By virtue of a Conjunction with the King of Pergamus, he drove him out of the Field, and shut him up in Sardis, where he held out above a Year ; but was at length delivered into the Hands of Antiochus by the false Cretans, and beheaded. 3789

Q. To what Parts did Antiochus carry his Arms after he had thus put an End to the Asian War ?

A. He marched into Parthia against Arsaces, who had lately seized Media, where, after many successful Conflicts, finding it no easy Matter to conquer so valiant an Enemy, he made Peace with him, and turned his Forces against Euthydemus King of Bactria.

Q. What Opposition did Euthydemus make against this victorious Enemy ? 3794

A. He obliged him to waste his Army without getting any Advantage by it, of which Antiochus being weary, clapped up a Peace with him ; for the Ratifying of which, Euthydemus sent his Son as an Hostage to Antiochus.

Q. What Fortune did his Son meet with at Antioch ?

A. The King taking a Liking to him, gave him one of his Daughters in Marriage, and for his Sake allowed the Father to take the Title of King of Bactria, which was the very Point they had been contending. 3798

Q. During these Wars, how went on Matters in Egypt ?

Anno *A.* This Year died *Ptolemy Philopater*, having worn
Mur. out a very strong Constitution with Intemperance and
 ~~~~~ Debaucheries. After him succeeded *Ptolemy Epiphanus*  
 3799 his Son, a Child of five Years old.

*Q.* Who had the Guardianship of this young King?

*A.* At first there arose some Disturbance about it, for  
 3755 *Agathocles*, who had been his Father's *Catamite*, and  
 Chief Minister, and *Agathoclea* his Sister, who was his  
 Concubine, concealed the Death of the King, with De-  
 sign to usurp the Regency during his Minority; but the  
 People of *Alexandria*, apprized of it, arose in general  
 against them.

*Q.* What was done by the Populace on this Occasion?

*A.* They took from them the young King, and placed  
 him on the Throne, in the publick *Hippodrome*; then  
 brought before him first *Agathocles*, then his Sister, and  
 put them both to Death. After this, the Guardianship  
 of the King was for the present given to *Sofibius*, who  
 had been the ruling Minister of the Court during the  
 last three Reigns.

*Q.* At this Juncture had *Antiochus* no Thoughts of  
 invading Egypt?

3901 *A.* He entered into a League with *Philip* King of  
*Macedon*, to divide the Dominions of the Infant King  
 between them, and this Year marched into *Cæle-Syria*  
 and *Palestine*, and made himself Master of those Pro-  
 vinces. The next Year *Scipio* having beaten *Hannibal* in  
*Africa*, put an End to the second *Punic War*.

*Q.* What Steps did the Egyptians take, on the Usurpa-  
 tions *Antiochus* had made of their Provinces?

*A.* They sent an Embassy to *Rome* to pray their Pro-  
 tection, offering to them the Guardianship of the young  
 King, and the Regency of his Dominions during his  
 Minority.

*Q.* Did the Romans comply with what was desired,  
 and take upon them the Tuition of the young King?

3803 *A.* They immediately sent three Ambassadors to *Phi-*  
*lip* King of *Macedon*, and to *Antiochus* King of *Syria*, to  
 require them to desist from invading the Dominions of  
 their

their Pupil, or they should be obliged to make War upon *Anno* them. After this *Emilius Lepidus*, one of them, went *Mun.* to *Alexandria*, in their Names, to take upon him the Tuition of the young King, and appointed *Aristomenes* to be his Guardian, then returned to *Rome*.

*Q. How did Aristomenes discharge his Trust?*

*A.* With great Prudence and Fidelity. In the first Place he provided against the Invasions of the Confederated Kings, and sent *Scopas* into *Ætolia*, who had been Governor formerly there, to raise as many Men as he could to reinforce the Army, and he brought 6000.

*Q. Where was the Army ordered to march after this Reinforcement?*

*A.* *Antiochus* having engaged in a War against *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, in *Lesser Asia*, the Ministry of *Alexandria* sent *Scopas* with it into *Palestine*, who recovered all *Judea*, and put a Garrison into *Jerusalem*; but *Antiochus*, on his Return, soon made himself Master of those Countries again. 3805

*Q. When he had brought all Judæa again under his Subjection, did he renew the War in Asia?*

*A.* He had projected this; his grand Aim being to restore the Syrian Empire to the full Extent in which it had been held by any of his Ancestors.

*Q. What prevented him from putting this Design in Execution?*

*A.* He was sensible the *Egyptians* would again renew the War in *Cale-Syria* and *Palestine*, in his Absence; and to quiet them, he sent *Eucles* of *Rhodes* to *Alexandria*, with Proposals of a Marriage between *Cleopatra* his Daughter and *Ptolemy*, to be consummated as soon as they were fit, promising the Restoration of those Provinces on the Day of the Nuptials, by way of Dower.

*Q. Was this Offer accepted, and the Contract fully agreed to, on the Part of the Egyptians?*

*A.* Yes; and they acquiesced in *Antiochus's* Engagement for the Performance of it, and no more renewed the War upon him, but left him wholly to pursue his other Designs. 3807

*Anno* Q. After this, did he pursue the War he had before  
*Mun.* began in Lesser Asia?

~ A. The next Spring he set forward with a great Fleet, and sent *Ardes* and *Mitbridates*, two of his Sons, with a great Army by Land on this Expedition; but they had not proceeded far, before he heard of the Death of *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, and of the Overthrow of *Philip* King of *Macedon* by the *Romans*, who had also sent Ambassadors to him, to require him to restore all the Cities of *Lesser Asia* that he had raken from King *Ptolemy*, and also all those which had been King *Philip's*.

Q. How did *Antiochus* brook this Message?

3808 A. He fell into a Passion, and cried out, the *Romans* should not be his Judges: But while these Matters were treating of, there came a Rumour, that *Ptolemy* was dead; whereon *Antiochus*, reckoning *Egypt* to be his own, hastened on Board his Fleet, to go and take Possession of it; but finding this Report false, he sailed directly for *Cyprus*, and there meeting with a violent Storm, lost many of his Ships and Men, and returned to *Antioch*.

Q. How was the Rumour of the King of *Egypt's* Death occasioned?

A. By a treasonable Plot laid against his Life by *Scopas* and his *Ætolian* Soldiers, with Design to seize the Kingdom of *Egypt* to himself; which being discovered, *Scopas* and the chief Conspirators were put to Death. When this Conspiracy was mastered, *Ptolemy* was fourteen Years of Age, declared out of his Minority, and enthroned accordingly.

Q. What Designs did *Antiochus* pursue the next Year?

A. He set out from *Antioch* for *Ephesus*, where *Hannibal* came to put himself under his Protection. On this experienced General's joining him, he dreamed of nothing but Victories and Conquests, and became fixed for a War against the *Romans*; and all this Year and the next were spent in making Preparations for it.

Q. What memorable Changes happened in these Countries about this Time?

A. This

*A.* This Year *Simon* the High-Priest of the *Jews* died, *Antiochus* and was succeeded by *Onias* his eldest Son, the third *Mun.* of that Name, and *Erastosthenes* the Library-Keeper at *Alexandria* died now also.

*Q.* To whom was his Office given?

*A.* To *Apollonius Rhodius*, a Native of *Alexandria*, who had been Scholar to *Callimachus*; but, having offended his Master, he wrote a bitter Investive against him, which he called *Ibis*, from the Name of a Bird in *Egypt*, which used to foul his Bill by cleansing his Breech; intimating thereby, that the Offence given him was by foul Words. Hence *Ovid*, writing against one in the same Manner, calls him by the Name of *Ibis*.

*Q.* What previous Alliances did *Antiochus* make before he began the War with the Romans?

*A.* He first went to *Raphia* on the Confines of *Pa-* 3811  
*lentine* and *Egypt*, and married his Daughter *Cleopatra* to *Ptolemy Epiphanes*. On his Return to *Antioch*, he married another of his Daughters to *Ariarathes* King of *Cappadocia*. When these Marriages were over, he marched into *Lesser Asia* against the *Persians*; but he had not long been engaged in this War, ere he was brought back again to *Ephesus*, on the News of *Antiochus* his eldest Son's Death.

*Q.* What Account have you of the Death of this young Prince, who was the Idol of all that knew him?

*A.* It is commonly said he fell a Sacrifice to his Father's Jealousy, and his Death was procured by him.

*Q.* What was done at *Ephesus* after the Solemnities of 3812  
this Mourning was over?

*A.* Great Consultations were held, whether to begin the War against the *Romans* in *Greece* or *Italy*, but on an Embassy from the *Aetolians*, to invite *Antiochus* thither, he fixed his Resolution for *Greece*, contrary to the Opinion of *Hannibal*.

*Q.* To what Place did he first go on this Expedition?

*A.* To *Lamia*; and there being invested with the chief Command of the *Aetolians*, he return'd to *Euboea*; and having made himself Master of *Chalcis* in that Island, he took up his Winter Quarters there.



Anno Q. Had the Romans Intelligence of his Passage into  
Mun. Greece?

~ A. Eumenes, who succeeded his Father Attalus in the Kingdom of Pergamus, sent his Brother to acquaint the Senate thereof; whereon they immediately sent Acilius with an Army to manage the War against him.

Q. Have you any memorable Exploit of Antiochus during his Wintering at Chalcis?

3813 A. While he lay here, he fell in Love with the Daughter of the Host where he lodged; and nothing would satisfy him, but he must marry her, tho' he was then past 50 Years old, and she not 20.

Q. Was not this Foible of great Disadvantage to him, in the Prosecution of the War?

A. During his Nuptial Feastings, Acilius the Roman Consul came in full March against him, and all he could do on this Alarm, for his Safety, was only to seize the Streights of Thermopyle. But Cato, one of the Roman Generals, having gotten over the Mountains by the same Path in which Xerxes had formerly forced a Passage over them, his Men were all cut in Pieces except 500, with whom Antiochus made his Escape to Chalcis.

Q. Which Way did he take from thence to secure himself?

A. He hasted on Board his Fleet, and with this poor Remainder passed to Ephesus, carrying with him his new married Wife; and there thinking himself safe from the Romans, relapsed into his former Dotage, till roused on Hannibal's representing the Danger that threat'ned him.

Q. What were the Precautions then taken to oppose the farther Progress of the Enemy?

A. He sent to hasten the March of his Forces from the Eastern Provinces, which were not yet arrived; then having fitted out his Fleet, he sailed to the Thracian Chersonesus, and having reinforced, and strongly fortified the Barrier Towns, for hindering the Romans from passing the Hellespont into Asia, he returned to Ephesus, where, in a grand Council, it was resolved to try their Fortune by Sea.

Q. What

*Q. What was the Event of this Resolution?*

*A.* Soon after the two Admirals met, and a sharp Engagement ensued, wherein *C. Livius* sunk ten Ships, took thirteen, and forced *Polyxidas*, *Antiochus's* Admiral, to retire to *Ephesus*.

*Q. How did Antiochus repair this Loss?*

*A.* He set out a new Fleet, and refitted those Ships that had escaped from the late Defeat, then sent *Hannibal* into *Syria*, to bring thence the *Syrian* and *Phœnician* Fleets for a farther Reinforcement. And having order'd *Seleucus* his Son, with one Part of his Army into *Æolis*, he with the rest took up his Quarters in *Phrygia* for the ensuing Winter.

*Q. What Preparations were made by the Romans for 3814 carrying on the War next Year?*

*A.* They sent *Lucius Scipio* their Consul, and *Scipio Africanus* his Brother, as his Lieutenant, to carry on the War by Land, and *L. Emilius Regellus* to command their Fleet at Sea.

*Q. What was the Issue of this Year's Campaign?*

*A.* *Emilius* first gain'd an entire Victory over *Polyxidas* at Sea, and afterwards *Antiochus* received a total Overthrow by the two *Scipio's* at Land, in which he had 50,000 Foot, and 4000 Horse slain upon the Field of Battle, and 1400 more taken Prisoners.

*Q. Where was this Battle fought?*

*A.* Near *Magnesia*, under Mount *Sippylus*.

*Q. Which Way did Antiochus take after this terrible Slaughter?*

*A.* He escaped with great Difficulty to *Sardis*, from thence he passed to *Celene* in *Phrygia*, where he heard his Son *Seleucus* had escaped from the Battle, and having joined him, made all the Haste he could over Mount *Taurus* into *Syria*.

*Q. After this fatal Stroke, was Antiochus ever able to make Head against the Romans?*

*A.* He never attempted it, but immediately sued to them for Peace, and was forced to accept of it on their own Terms, which were, that he should pay the whole Expence of the War, and quit all *Lesser Asia*.

*Anno* Q. *At how much was the Expence of the War espina-*  
*Mun. tad?*

A. At 15,000 Talents, which was stipulated to be paid in Manner following, 500 Talents present, 2500 when the Senate had ratified the Peace, and the rest in twelve Years Time, at the Rate of 1000 Talents per Annum.

Q. *Who succeeded Scipio in the Consulship?*

9815 A. *Manlius Vulso* came into *Asia* to succeed him in that Province, to whom *Scipio* delivered the Army, and with his Brother return'd to *Rome*.

Q. *Did the Senate fully conclude and ratify Scipio's Agreement with Antiochus?*

A. Yes, and the 500 Talents were paid the Consul at *Ephesus*, and Hostages given for the Payment of the rest, amongst which was *Antiochus*, one of the Kings Sons.

Q. *How did the Romans dispose of Lesser Asia?*

A. They restored the *Græcian* Cities to their former Liberties, gratified the *Rhodians* with the Provinces of *Caria* and *Lycia*, and gave all the rest to *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus*, he and the *Rhodians* having been their Confederates through the whole War.

Q. *Was not Antiochus put to great Difficulties to raise the annual Sum payable to the Romans?*

A. He was forced to go in Person to the Eastern Provinces, to collect the Tribute of those Countries, to enable him to pay it, leaving his Son *Seleucus* (whom he declared his Successor) to govern *Syria* in his Absence.

Q. *Did that Journey prove answerable to his Expectation?*

A. Coming into the Province of *Elimai*, and hearing there was a great Treasure in the Temple of *Jupiter Belus* in that Country, he by Night robbed it; whereupon the People of the Country rising upon him to revenge this Sacrilege, slew him and all that were with him.

Q. *What Prophecies of Daniel refer to the Actions of this King, and were fulfilled by them?*

A. Chap.

*A.* Chap. ix. from the 10th to the 19th Verse inclusive. Ann. Min.

*Q.* What was doing in Egypt when Antiochus died?

*A.* Cleopatra his Daughter, Queen of Egypt, bore unto her Husband Ptolemy Epiphanes a Son at this Time, who reigned after him, by the Name of Ptolemy Philometor.

*Q.* What remarkable Things were done on the Birth of this young Prince?

*A.* All the Prime Nobility of Cae-Syria and Palestine hasten'd to Alexandria, to congratulate the King and Queen on this Occasion, and to make their usual Presents.

*Q.* Was Joseph (Collector of the King's Revenues in those Parts) among this Company?

*A.* He was grown too old to take such a Journey upon him, and sent Hyrcanus his youngest Son to make the Compliments in his Stead.

*Q.* Give the History of Hyrcanus's Birth, as told by Josephus?

*A.* Joseph formerly going to Alexandria on his Occasions as Collector, Solymius his Brother accompanied him, carrying with him his Daughter, with Design to marry her to some Jew of Quality in that City; Joseph on his Arrival going to Court, and supping with the King, fell violently in Love with one of the Dancers, and, not being able to master his Passion, communicated the whole Affair to his Brother, and begged of him, if possible, to procure for him the Enjoyment of this young Woman; which Solymius readily agreed to.

*Q.* How did he manage the Intrigue?

*A.* Joseph being pretty much in Liquor over Night, Solymius put his own Daughter to Bed to him, which he repeated several Nights without Discovery. Joseph supposing her to be the Dancer, grew more and more enamour'd with her, and grieved very much because the Jewish Law would not permit him to marry her, being an Alien. Hereon his Brother discover'd the whole Affair, saying, he had chose rather to do this

*Anno* Wrong to his own Child, than to suffer him to do such  
*Mun.* a sinful Thing, as to join himself to a Stranger.

*Q.* Did Joseph look upon this Fraud as a Kindness done to him?

*A.* Yes, and return'd him Thanks for the Obligation, and immediately took the young Woman to Wife, and of her had the next Year this Son Hyrcanus.

*Q.* Joseph having seven more Sons by another Wife, how came he to send this young Man, hardly twenty Years old, to the Egyptian Court?

*A.* Because none of the rest would undertake the Journey.

*Q.* How did his Father fit him out for this Embassy?

*A.* He gave him unlimited Letters of Credit to his Agent at Alexandria, whose Name was *Arion*, and Hyrcanus obliged him to pay him 1000 Talents, which amounts to 200,000 *l.* our Money, for *Arion* having 3000 Talents of Joseph's in his Hands.

*Q.* How did Hyrcanus expend this large Sum?

*A.* He bought a hundred beautiful Boys for the King, and a hundred beautiful Maids for the Queen, and when he presented them, they carried each a Talent in their Hands.

*Q.* How were these Presents accepted of by the King and Queen?

*A.* They procured him both their Favour and Protection; and he returned with a Commission to be Collector of all the King's Revenues beyond Jordan.

*Q.* You before mentioned, after the Death of Antiochus the Great, Seleucus Philopater his eldest Son succeeded him, how did he manage the Syrian Empire in that low State to which the Romans had reduced it?

*A.* He made but a poor Figure in it, by reason of the 1000 Talents *per Ann.* which, thro' the whole Time of his Reign, he was obliged to pay them. About this Time a Rebellion broke out in Egypt.

*Q.* What was the Occasion of that Insurrection, and by what Means was it suppressed?

*A.* It



*A.* It was occasioned by the Male-Administration of *Anno* the King, and suppressed by the Wisdom of *Polycrates Mun.* his chief Minister; but soon after *Ptolemy Epiphanes* was poisoned, and succeeded by his Son, an Infant of six *3824* Years old, under the Guardianship of his Mother *Cleopatra.*

*Q.* What was doing in the Kingdom of Macedon, during these Commotions?

*A.* King *Philip* being dead, *Perseus* his Son ascended *3827* the Throne; and this Year married *Laodice*, the Daughter of *Seleucus*, King of *Syria.*

*Q.* Are there any memorable Transactions recorded concerning this Marriage?

*A.* The *Rhodians* conducted her with their whole Fleet from *Syria* into *Macedon*, and in their Way stopped at *Delus*, an Island in the *Aegean Sea*, sacred to *Apollo*, where he had a Temple erected to him of the greatest Note in all *Greece*, next to that at *Delphos.*

*Q.* What extraordinary Things were done here?

*A.* *Laodice* made many Offerings to the Temple, and gave many Gifts to the People of this Place; on which they erected a Statue to her, on the Pedestal of which was engraven the following Inscription in *Greek Letters.* The People of *Delus* erected this for *Queen Laodice*, the Daughter of King *Seleucus*, and the Wife of King *Perseus*, because of her Virtue and of her Piety to the Temple, and Beneficence to the People of *Delus.* This is still extant among the *Arundel Marbles* at *Oxford.*

*Q.* What Deaths or Removals happened at *Jerusalem* *3828* in this Year?

*A.* *Simon* a *Benjamite* was made Protector of the Temple on the Death of *Joseph*, and was probably one of his Sons.

*Q.* How did he behave himself in this Office?

*A.* There arose some Differences between him and *Onias* the High-Priest; and when he found he could not prevail against him, he, with the Sons of *Tobias*, fled from *Jerusalem*, and went to *Apollonius*, who was Gover-

*Antioch* Governor of *Cale-Syria* and *Palestine* for *Seleucus* King  
*King* of *Syria*.

*Q. With what Intent did Simon go to Apollonius?*

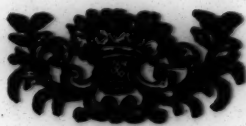
*A.* To tell him of great Treasures, which, as he said, were laid up in the Temple; of which *Apollonius* informing the King, he sent *Heliodorus* his Treasurer to seize them. But how the Hand of God appeared in a very miraculous Manner against *Heliodorus* in this Sacrilegious Attempt, see 2 *Macc.* chap. iii.

*Q. Did Simon prosecute his Revenge against Onias after this?*

*A.* Yes, and several Murders were committed by those of his Faction, which *Apollonius* encouraged; whereon *Onias* went to *Antioch* to complain to the King of these Violences, but he had not been long there ere the King died.

*Q. What became of Antiochus, Brother of Seleucus, who was sent as an Hostage to Rome?*

*A.* *Seleucus* had a Desire to have him Home, and to redeem him, sent his own Son *Demetrius*, now about 12 Years old, by way of Exchange: In the Interim *Heliodorus*, who lately robbed the Temple, thinking to usurp the Crown now both the next Heirs were out of the Way, poisoned *Seleucus*. The whole of this King's Reign is expressed *Dan.* xi. 20.



# RUDIMENTS

## OF

### ANCIENT HISTORY,

#### BOTH

### SACRED *and* PROPHANE.

---

#### BOOK III. CHAP. I.

*Heliodorus's Usurpation ; Antiochus Epiphanes ; His ridiculous Conduct ; Takes Jerusalem ; Plunders and prophanes the Temple ; Designs the utter Extirpation of those People ; Popilius's peremptory Message to him ; Ptolemy Macron ; Ptolemy Philometor ; Ptolemy Evergetes II. Perseus drove out of Macedonia by the Romans ; The Samaritans turn Apostates ; Mattathias's Resolution ; Judas Maccabæus ; &c.*

**H**OW long did the Usurper Heliodorus enjoy the *Ann*  
 Kingdom of Syria ? *Mun.*  
 A. Antiochus being now on his Return from *Rome*, heard the News of his Brother's Death at *Athen.*, 3829  
 and applied himself to *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus*, to  
 help him to suppress the Usurper, who soon plac'd him  
 on the Throne, and he took the Name of *Epiphanes*,  
 i. e. *The Illustrious*.

Q. What

Anno  
Mun.

*Q. What Character do Historians give of this King?*  
*A. They inform us he would ramble about the Streets of Antioch, and debase himself with the meanest of his People; which odd and extravagant Conduct occasioned him to be called Epimanes, i. e. The Madman. As soon as Antiochus was settled in the Kingdom, Onias was displaced from the High-Priesthood.*

*Q. for what Reason was this done?*

*A. Jason his Brother, ambitious of the Place, purchased it of the King for 450 Talents; and this good Man being highly respected among the Jews, the Intruder procured from the King an Order for his Removal to Antioch, and there caused him to be put to Death.*

*Q. How did Jason behave himself in this sacred Office?*

*A. He despised the Temple, and neglected the Worship of God, erecting a Gymnasium, or Place of Exercise; and also an Ephebeum, or a Place for training up Youth according to the Manner of the Greeks; which Iniquity propagated among the Jews, drew after it great Calamities.*

*Q. How went on Affairs in Egypt under the Infant King?*

*A. While Cleopatra had the Government of the Kingdom and the Tuition of her Son, she managed it with great Prudence; but she dying this Year, and he being 14 Years old, was declared out of his Minority, and, falling into bad Hands, commenced a War against Antiochus, in order to recover Cæle-Syria and Palestine. The next Year Jason sent Menelaus his Brother to Antioch, to pay the King his Tribute.*

*Q. How was Menelaus received at that Court?*

*A. He was admitted to an Audience of the King, but instead of pursuing his Commission in the Behalf of Jason, he treacherously supplanted him, and got into his Place.*

*Q. Did he behave himself in a better Manner than his Brother in that Office?*

*A. He*

*A.* He out did him in all his Ways of Wickedness and Apostacy; for having taken no Care to pay the Money *Mun.* to the King, he got many of the gold Vessels out of the Temple, and sold them at Tyre, and the Cities round about to raise it, which occasioned a Mutiny at Jerusalem, and they slew *Lyfmacbus* his Brother, during his Absence, who had assisted him in the Sacrilege.

*Q.* How went on the War between the King of Syria and Ptolemy?

*A.* *Antiochus*, having been preparing for it all this Time, marched his Army to the Borders of Egypt, and met the Enemy between Mount *Cassius* and *Pelusium*, and, having gotten a compleat Victory over him, fortified the Barrier Towns in that Quarter, and returned to Tyre. Here came to him three Delegates from the Sanhedrim of the Jews, to complain of the Sacrileges of *Menelaus*.

*Q.* Was any Satisfaction given them for the Violence which had been committed by him?

*A.* When they had thoroughly convicted him before the King of all that they had laid to his Charge; he bribed *Ptolemy Macron* to prevail with *Antiochus* to absolve him, and put the three Delegates of the Jews to Death. 3834

*Q.* Who was Ptolemy Macron that had such an Ascendant over the King?

*A.* He was Governor of Cyprus for King Ptolemy during his Minority, but kept all his Revenues in his Hand, till he was enthroned, and then went into Alexandria, and paid the whole into the Royal Treasury, for which he gained Applause; but being disquieted afterwards, he revolted to *Antiochus*, and delivered Cyprus into his Hand.

*Q.* How did the Jews receive the ill Tidings of the Death of their Delegates?

*A.* There is no Account of that at present; but *Josephus*, who lived at this Time, tells us, that there were now seen in the Air over Jerusalem, Horsemen and Footmen armed and fighting one against another in great



*Anno* great Companies, and attests this to have been vouched *Mun.* to him by Eye Witnesses of the same.

Q. *Did Antiochus pursue the War against the King of Egypt?*

A. As soon as the Season of the Year would permit, he invaded that Country both by Sea and Land, and having gotten another great Victory on the Frontiers, took *Pelufum*, and made himself Master of *Memphis*, and all the other Parts of that Country, except *Alexandria*, on which *Ptolemy Philometor* voluntarily surrendered himself to him.

Q. *What Usage did he meet with from his Uncle?*

A. He gave him his Liberty, and they eat at the same Table; but *Antiochus* miserably plundered his Country, vastly enriched both himself and his Army with the Spoils, and afterwards *Ptolemy* submitted to him.

Q. *What Reason does History give for this seditious Con-  
cordance in the King of Egypt?*

A. That it was not owing to his natural Want of Courage or Capacity, but to the effeminate Education in which he was bred up by his Tutor *Euleus*, an Eunuch, after the Death of *Cleopatra*. During the Stay of *Antiochus* in *Egypt*, a false Rumour spread through all *Palestine*, that he was dead.

Q. *What was acted at Jerusalem on this Occasion?*

A. *Jason*, thinking it a proper Time for him again to recover his Station, marched thither with above a thousand Men, and acted all manner of Cruelties on his Fellow Citizens: *Antiochus* hearing this in *Egypt*, imagined the whole Nation of *Judea* had revolted from him, and hastened thither to quell the Rebellion.

Q. *In what manner did he act on his coming?*

A. Being told that the People of *Jerusalem* made great Rejoicings at the News of his Death, he laid Siege to that City, and took it, slew 40,000 of the Inhabitants, and took as many more Captives.

Q. *Did this great Slaughter satisfy his Revenge?*

A. Not content with this, he impiously entered into the most sacred Recesses of the Temple, under the Con-  
duct

duct of Menelaus, polluting the holy Place, and the Holy Anno of Holies by his Presence; and to affront in the highest Manner he was able their Religion, he ordered a Sow to be sacrificed on the Altar of Burnt Offerings, and making Broth of some of the Flesh boiled, he ordered it to be sprinkled over the Temple, then took away the Shew-Bread Table, the Altar of Incense, and the Candlestick with seven Branches, which were all Gold, and also several other golden Vessels, &c. to the Value of 180 Talents of Gold. When he had made the like Plunder in the City, he returned to Antioch.

*Q. To whom did Antiochus on his Departure give the Government of these Provinces?*

*A.* He appointed Philip, a Phrygian, a Man of a cruel and barbarous Temper, to be Governor of Judaea, and Andronicus, of like Disposition, Governor of Samaria, and left Menelaus to be still over them in the Office of High-Priest.

*Q. What became of Jason?*

*A.* He fled from Place to Place, pursued and hated of all Men, and at length perished in Exile and Misery.

*Q. What Steps did the Alexandrians take on their hearing that Philometor was fallen under the Power of Antiochus?* 383

*A.* Having the younger Brother with them, they put him on the Throne, and made him King instead of the other; from which Time he took the Name of Ptolemy Euergetes II. But afterwards they gave him the Name of Physcon, i. e. The Fat Gate.

*Q. How did Antiochus resist this?*

*A.* He made a third Expedition into Egypt, under Pretence of restoring the deposed King, but in reality to gain that Kingdom to himself; and having vanquished the Alexandrians in a Sea Fight, marched to lay siege to Alexandria.

*Q. What Method did Ptolemy Euergetes take to surmount the present Difficulties?*

*A.* He first sent Embassadors to the Romans, to represent his Case, then called a Council of the chief Commanders of

*Antiochus* of the Army, who having considered the present State of *Mun. Affairs*, advised to endeavour an Accommodation with *Antiochus*, and that the Ambassadors who were then at *Alexandria* from several of the *Grecian States*, should be desired to interpose their Mediation for effecting it.

Q. *What was the Issue of this Congress?*

A. While the Ambassadors were proceeding in long Harangues on several disputed Topics, *Antiochus* interrupted them, and said there was no need of long Oration in this Matter; that the Kingdom belonged to *Philometor*, the Elder, with whom he was in perfect Friendship, and if they would recall him, and restore him to his Crown, the War would be at an End, hoping by this Craft to set the two Brothers by the Ears, and swallow both.

Q. *Had Ptolemy King of Egypt, Penetration enough to see into this Design?*

A. His Misfortunes had roused him from his luxurious Sloth, and *Antiochus* having restored the whole Kingdom to him, excepting only *Pellusum*: His keeping that was a sufficient Indication to him, that he held this Gate of *Egypt* only to enter thorough it again, and therefore sent his Brother to invite him to an Accommodation, and by the Means of *Cleopatra*, who was Sister to them both, an Agreement was made that they should reign together. Whereon *Philometor* coming to *Alexandria*, Peace was restored to *Egypt*.

Q. *How did Antiochus break this Agreement, whereby his first-spun Scheme of Policy was wholly baffled?*

A. He resolved again to invade *Egypt*, and carry on the War with greater Fury against them both, and having taken *Memphis*, marched to the Siege of *Alexandria*; but on his Arrival at *Leufine*, about four Miles  
3726 from that City, three Ambassadors from *Rome* met him, with a Commission from the Senate, first to go to *Antiochus*, and then to *Ptolemy*, and desire them to desist from making any farther War on one another.

Q. *Who was the three Persons appointed by the Senate to go on this Embassy?*

A. *Cain*

*A. Caius Popillius Lenas, Caius Decimius, and Caius Arno Hostilius, with the former of whom Antiochus having Mun. contracted an intimate Familiarity and Friendship while he was an Hostage at Rome, put forth his Hand to embrace him as his old Friend and Acquaintance.*

*Q. How was this taken by Popillius?*

*A. He refused the Compliment, and told him the public Interest of his Country must take Place of private Friendship, and he must first know whether he was a Friend or an Enemy to the Roman State; then delivered to him the Tables in which was written the Decree of the Senate, and desired him to read it, and forthwith give his Answer thereto.*

*Q. Did Antiochus give his immediate Answer as demanded?*

*A. He desired to consult his Friends first, whereon Popilius with his Staff drew a Circle round him in the Sand, and told him he should give his Answer before he stirred out of that Circle. This peremptory Proceeding startled the King, and after a little Hesitation, he told him he would obey the Command of the Senate; Then Popillius accepted of his Embraces, and acted with him according to his former Friendship.*

*Q. What made Popillius so bold as to act in this peremptory Manner, and Antiochus so tame as thus patiently to yield to it?*

*A. The News they had a little Time before received, which was, that Paulus Æmilius had vanquished Perseus King of Macedonia, and added it to the Roman Empire. To this Embassy the two Ptolemys owed their Kingdom. Antiochus returning out of Egypt in great Wrath (because of the Baffle he had there met with from the Romans) vented it all upon the Jews of Jerusalem, &c.*

*Q. Had these People any way offended him?*

*A. No; but as he marched back through Palestine, he detached from his Army 22000 Men, under the Command of Apollonius, who was over the Tribute, to destroy the Place.*

*Q. L*

*Anno* Q. In what Manner did Apollonius carry himself on  
*Mun.* his Arrival there with those Forces?

A. He forbore all Hostilities, concealing his Purpose till the next Sabbath; but when the People were all assembled together, he executed his bloody Commission, and slaying all the Men, he took the Women and Children to sell for Slaves, spoiled the City of its Riches, demolished the Houses, and pulled down the Walls, so that from this Time the Sanctuary was laid waste, and the whole City desolated of its natural Inhabitants.

Q. Was this Persecution and Massacre only carried on against the Jews of Judæa and Palestine?

A. No; for Antiochus made a Decree on his Return to Antioch, through the Advice of Ptolemy Maccen, that the People of all Nations within his Dominions should leave their former Rites, and conform to the Religion of the King, and worship the same Gods, and on Refusal should be put to Death; with Design as far as in him lay to extirpate both the Jewish Religion, and the Jewish Name and Nation at the same Time.

Q. How did the Samaritans escape this Persecution?

A. They sent a Petition to the King, praying that their Temple at Gerizim, which had hitherto been consecrated to no especial Deity, might be thenceforth made the Temple of the Grecian Jupiter, which was done accordingly, and they had no farther Molestation.

Q. Was the Samaritans the only Apostates who forsook their God and his Law on this Tryal?

A. No; many of the Jews, either to avoid the Persecution, or curry Favour with the King or his Officers, did the same.

Q. Who was sent to see this Decree of the King's executed in Judæa and Samaria?

A. Atheneus, an old Man well vers'd in all the Rites of the Grecian Idolatry was the Overseer; but the Syrian Soldiers were the Chief Missivearies.

Q. On his coming to Jerusalem, were all the Sacrifices to the God of Israel made to cease?

A. Yes,



*A.* Yes; and the Observance of the Jewish Law was Anno suppressed, and the Temple was consecrated to their *Mun.* false Gods.

*Q.* Who was the first Jew of Note that refused to conform to this Decree?

*A.* *Mattathias*, a Priest of the Course of *Jearib*, a very honourable Person, and one truly zealous for the Law of God, who dwelt at *Modin*.

*Q.* What Family had he?

*A.* He had five Sops, all valiant Men: *Jabanan* called *Kaddis*, *Simon* called *Thassi*, *Judas* called *Maccabæus*, *Eleazar* called *Avaran*, and *Jonathan* whose fir-name was *Apphus*.

*Q.* In what Manner did *Mattathias* oppose the King's Officers?

*A.* One of them called *Apelles*, came to *Modin*, to persuade him to comply with the King's Commands, that by the Example of so great a Man, all the rest of the People might be induced to do the same.

*Q.* What Answer did he give this Officer?

*A.* He said in a loud Voice, and in the hearing of all the People, That no Consideration whatsoever should induce him to forsake the Law of his God; and seeing one of the Jews going to sacrifice at the Heathen Altar, set up in that Place by the King's Command, he slew him: After this, he fell on the King's Commissioner, and, by the Assistance of his Sons, and others that joined with him, he slew him also, and all his Followers.

*Q.* Whither did he go to escape the Wrath of *Antiochus* for this bold Action?

*A.* He retired with all his Family to the Mountains, and others daily followed, so that the Deserts of *Judæa* became filled with those who fled from this Persecution.

*Q.* What did *Antiochus* do on hearing his Commands were not obey'd in *Judæa*?

*A.* He came to *Jerusalem* and exercised great Cruelties on all the non-apostatizing Jews that fell into his Hands; and on this Occasion was the Martyrdom of *Eleazar*,

Anno Eleazar, and of the Mother and her seven Sons. See Mun. the second Book of Maccabees.

Q. How did Mattathias and his Company escape this Massacre?

A. They lay close in the Fastnesses of the Mountains, where no Access could be made to them; and as soon as the King was returned to Antioch, having gotten together a little Army, they took the Field with it.

Q. Whither did Mattathias march with these People?

A. He went round the Cities of Judah, pulling down all the Heathen Altars, and causing all the Children he found without Circumcision to be circumcised, cutting off all Apostates, and destroying all the Persecutors wherever he came. But being aged and worn out with this Warfare, he died the next Year.

Q. Who was by him appointed their Leader in his Stead.

A. Judas was appointed their Captain, and Simon their Counsellor.

Q. Why was Judas called Maccabæus?

3838 A. As soon as his Father's Funeral was over, he took the Command of those Forces upon him, and erected his Standard, in which was this Motto in Hebrew, taken out of Exodus, ch. xv. ii. *Mi Camo-lla Bartim Jehova*, i. e. *Who is like unto Thee among the Gods, O Jehova*. And this being wrote thereon by an Abreviation, formed by the initial Letters, these put together made the artificial Word *Maccabi*; hence he had his Name, and all that fought under this Standard were called *Maccabæans*.

Q. Was it a common Practice among the Jews to make artificial Words from initial Letters?

A. Yes; thus *Rambam* is the Name of *Rabbi Moses, Ben Maimon*; and *Ralbag* is the Name of *Rabbi Levi, Ben Gerson*, &c. see *Buxtorf de Abbrev. Hebraic*.

Q. What was Antiochus doing all this Time, as neither Mattathias or his Son Judas had met with any Opposition from him?

A. He

*A.* He was celebrating Games and Shows, and playing the Fool at *Daphne*, while *Judas Maccabeus* had gotten together a good Army, and marched round the Cities of *Judea*, in the same Manner as his Father did.

*Q.* Who was the first that encountered *Judas* in this Progress?

*A.* *Apollonius*, who was Governor of *Samaria*; but he being slain in Battle, and his Army vanquished, *Judas* finding his Sword among the Spoils, took it, and fought with it all his Life after: Soon after this, *Seron*, deputy Governor of *Cele-Syria*, met with the same Fate.

*Q.* Was not *Antiochus* enraged when he heard of these two Defeats?

*A.* Yes; and accordingly sent *Ptolemy Macron*, *Nicanor*, and *Gorgias*, with an Army of 40,000 Foot, and 7000 Horse, against him, who all encamped at *Emmaus* near *Jerusalem*; nor was this all, for there resorted to them an Army of Merchants also, to the Number of a 1000, besides Servants and Assistants.

*Q.* What Business brought the Merchants into the Army?

*A.* *Nicanor* proposing to raise great Sums of Money that Way, caused a Sale to be proclaimed in all the neighbouring Countries, of ninety Jews for every Talent; hereon the Merchants promising themselves great Gains from so cheap a Market, flock'd thither with their Gold and their Silver to buy Slaves.

*Q.* What Forces had *Judas* to withstand this Army?

*A.* He had but 6000 Men, and after Proclamation was made according to the Jewish Law, that all such who had that Year built Houses, planted Vineyards, betrothed Wives, or were fearful, should depart, the 6000 Men were reduced to 3000. These he divided into four Bands, took the Command of one himself, and gave the other three to his three Brothers, then led them all to *Mizpa*, to offer up their Prayers to God, for his merciful Assistance in this Time of Danger; and

*And* with this small Company he took the Field, and pitched his Camp very near that of the Enemy.

*Q. By what Stratagem did he with this Handful of Men oppose so great an Army?*

*A.* Having Intelligence that Gorgias was marched out that Evening with two chosen Detachments of Horse and Foot, to surprise his Camp, and to cut him and all his Men off in the Night; he countermin'd his Plot by another of the same kind.

*Q. In what Manner did he do this?*

*A.* He immediately quitted his Camp, and fell upon the Enemy that Night while Gorgias was absent; at which being put into Confusion, they fled, and left Judas Master of the Field, and 3000 Men dead upon the Spot.

*Q. After he had conquered this Part of the Syrian Army, how did he deal with Gorgias who commanded the other?*

*A.* He with-held his Men from the Spoil, till he had vanquished him also, which was done without farther fighting; for Gorgias having in vain sought for Judas in his Camp, on his Return back in the Morning, seeing his own Camp on Fire, and the main Army broken and fled, his Men flung down their Arms and fled.

*Q. Did Judas pursue them?*

*A.* Yes; and slew in the whole 9000, and most that escaped were either wounded or maimed. After this Judas led his Men back to take the Spoils, where they found great Riches, and got all the Money which the Merchants brought to buy them with, and sold several of these People for Slaves, who came thither as to a Market to buy them.

*Q. Did Judas pursue the Advantage he had now gotten for the farther Suppression of his Enemies?*

*A.* He next marched against Timotheus, Governor of the Country beyond Jordan, and Bacchides another of Antiochus's Lieutenants, and slew above 20,000 of their Men. But now Lysias, (whom the King, during his Absence in Persia, had left at Antioch to execute his Commands against the Jews) hearing of the ill Success of the

the King's Armies in *Judea*, rais'd an Army of 60,000 *Anno*  
Foot, and 5000 Horse, and marched with them in *Per-* *Man.*  
*son* against *Judas*.

*Q. What Success had Lyfias in this Expedition?*

*A.* *Judas* met him with 10,000 Men only, and after having killed 5000 of his Forces, put the rest to flight. By this Victory being left Master of the Country, he proposed to his Followers to go to *Jerusalem*, for the Recovery of the Sanctuary, and when he had cleansed and repaired it, he built a new *Altar*, and put all Things in their former Order, and a new Dedication of the *Altar* was agreed upon. This Festival *Christ* honoured with his Presence at *Jerusalem* afterwards.

*Q. What Resolution did Antiochus make when he heard on his Return from Persia, of the many Defeats of his Forces by the Jews, and of their Recovery of the City and 3840*  
*Temple of Jerusalem, and of the Restoration of the Jewish*  
*Worship there?*

*A.* He was enraged to the utmost Fury, and commanded his Charioteer to drive with double Speed, that he might execute his Revenge on this People, till at length he was overthrown and bruised in all Parts of his Body, of which Wounds he soon after died in horrid Torments both of Body and Mind. There is more prophetically said of this King than of any other, by *Daniel*, see ch. viii. and ix.



## C H A P. II.

*Sequel of the Victories of Judas Maccabæus; Wars in Egypt between Ptolemy Physcon, and Ptolemy Philometor; Romans interpose; Demetrius deposes Antiochus in Syria; Of Holophernes; Heraclides; Balas the Impostor; Jonathan; Hypparchus; Third Punic War; Carthage destroyed by Scipio; Corinth by Mummius; The Parthian Empire established, &c.*

*Ann. Mun.* **W**HO succeeded Antiochus Epiphanes, in the Kingdom of Syria?

*A.* Antiochus his Son, a Minor of nine Years old.

*Q.* Who had the Tuition of this young King, and was made Regent during his Minority?

*A.* His Father, before he died, committed him to the Care of Philip, a Favourite of his, and constituted him Regent during his Minority; but Lysias in his Absence from Antioch had assumed this Office, and also the Government of the Kingdom to himself, and gave him the Name of Antiochus Eupator; Philip not being strong enough to make good his Claim, was obliged to acquiesce in it. At this Time Ptolemy Matru poison'd himself.

*Q.* How did Judas Maccabæus act on the Death of his sworn Enemy Antiochus Epiphanes?

*A.* He marched with his Army to be revenged upon the neighbouring Nations of the Heathens, who had confederated against him.

*Q.* On what People did he execute his Vengeance?

*A.* He first fell upon the Edomites, who had been the forwardest in this Confederacy, and join'd with Gorgias; of these he slew 40,000; then passed over Jordan into the

the Land of the Ammonites, where he slew great Numbers, and returned again into Judæa. *Ann. Mus.*

*Q. Was there no Invasion made upon Judæa during the Time of Judas his Absence?*

*A.* At this Time Timotheus came with a great Army both of Horse and Foot, purposing the utter Destruction of the whole Nation of the Jews; but Judas gave him the Meeting, and gain'd an entire Victory, having slain Timotheus, with 20,500 Foot, and 600 Horse. After this Judas was sent to for Help both by the Jews that dwelt in the Land of Gilad, and those in Galilee.

*Q. What was the Occasion of these Peoples Distress?*

*A.* The Heathen Nations, who lived in those Parts, hearing of the late Overthrow of Timotheus, and of the Death of so many of their Friends, for the Revenge hereof, cut off all the Jews they could find there.

*Q. How did Judas contrive to give Assistance to both these People at the same Time?*

*A.* He divided his Army into three Parts, with the first Part, consisting of 8000 Men, he and his Brother Jonathan marched to the Relief of the Giladites; with the second, consisting of 3000, he sent Simon, another of his Brothers, into Galilee, the rest were left at Jerusalem, under the Command of Joseph and Azarias, two prime Leaders, with a strict Charge not to engage any Enemy, but to stand upon the Defensive till he and Simon returned.

*Q. What was the Consequence of these two Expeditions?*

*A.* Judas and Simon both had full Success in them, and return'd with Honour and Triumph.

*Q. How did Joseph and Azarias, who were intrusted with the third Party, act during the Absence of Judas?*

*A.* Thirsting after Glory, and contrary to the Command of Simon, they led forth their Forces on an ill-projected Expedition against Jamia, a Sea-port on the Mediterranean, but Gorgias falling upon them, put their Army to Flight, and slew 2000 Men.

*Anno* Q. Did Eupator, the young King of Syria, under the *Mun. Guardianship* of Lyfias, sit quietly on his Throne?

~ A. Demetrius the Son of Seleucus Philopator, who had been an Hostage at Rome, from the Year in which his Father died, hearing of the Death of Antiochus Epiphanes, and the Succession of Eupator in the Kingdom which was his Right, as Son of the elder Brother of Epiphanes, mov'd the Senate to restore him.

Q. How did the Senate of Rome act in this Affair?

A. Having more Regard to their own Interest than to the Right of Demetrius, they thought it better to have a Boy reign in Syria than a full grown Man and one of mature Understanding, accordingly confirmed Eupator in the Kingdom.

Q. With what Temper did Lyfias receive the News of the Exploits of the Jews in Gilead and Galilee?

384<sup>1</sup> A. He was much exasperated, vowed Revenge, and, having raised an Army of 80,000 Men, with all the Horse in the Kingdom, and 80 Elephants, he invaded Judea, and began the War with the Siege of Bethsura, a strong Fortrefs between Jerusalem and Idumea.

Q. What Success had Lyfias in this Invasion?

A. Judas gave him Battle in that Place, and slew of his Army 11000 Foot, and 1600 Horse. On this Overthrow Lyfias came to Terms of Peace with Judas, in which Matter Q. Memmius and T. Manlius, Ambassadors from the Romans in Syria, were very helpful to the Jews.

Q. What were the Terms of this Peace?

A. That the Decree of Antiochus Epiphanes, for obliging the Jews to conform to the Religion of the Greeks, should be wholly rescinded, and that Liberty should be granted them to live after their own Laws.

Q. How long did this Peace continue?

A. It was not long lived, for Timotheus Nicanor, and Apollonius the Son of Gennetus, renew'd their Vexations against the Jews, and the Men of Joppa drowned 200 of them in the Sea.

Q. In

*Q. In what manner did Judas revenge himself on the Anno  
Inhabitants of Joppa for this Cruelty?* *Mun.*

*A.* He fell upon them in the Night, burnt their Ship-  
ping, and slew all those whom he found therein, then  
turning towards the *Jammites*, set Fire to their Haven,  
and burnt all the Navy. After this he was called again  
to help the *Jews* in *Gilead* against *Timotheus*.

*Q. Of what Force was Timotheus?*

*A.* He had 120,000 Foot, and 2500 Horse.

*Q. Did Judas venture to engage this numerous Army?*

*A.* Yes, and gain'd a complete Victory, slew 30,000  
Men, and took *Timotheus* Prisoner.

*Q. How did he use him?*

*A.* He gave him his Life, on his promising to release  
many *Jews* then Captives in the Places under his Com-  
mand. From this Battle he returned to *Jerusalem*, to  
give Thanks unto God for his great Success, and then  
again made War upon *Gorgias*, and the *Idumeans*.

*Q. What was the Result of this Campaign?*

*A.* They came to a Battle, when *Gorgias* was bea-  
ten, but therein many *Jews* were slain, for the next  
Day, coming to bury their Brethren, they found about  
every one of them some of the Things that had been  
dedicated to the Idols of the Heathens.

*Q. How did they make Attonement for this Sin?*

*A.* The Day after, being the Sabbath, they offer'd  
up their Prayers to God for Pardon, and then making  
a Collection thro' the whole Camp, which amounted  
to 2000 Drachms, sent it to *Jerusalem* to provide *Sin*  
*Offerings*, there to be offered up for the expiating this  
Offence.

*Q. Whither did Judas carry on the War after this?*

*A.* Into the Southern Parts of *Idumaea*, and smote  
*Hebron*, and all the Towns thereof, then took *Azotus*,  
formerly called *Asdod*, in the Land of the *Philistines*,  
and having pulled down their Altars, and burnt their  
carv'd Images, returned again into *Judea*, resolving to  
destroy the Fortrefs of *Acra*, which was the Garrison  
of the *Syrians* at *Jerusalem*.

*Anno* Q. Did not the King of Syria send to the Relief of  
*Mun.* this Garrison?

~ A. He forthwith drew together a great Army, and in Person with his Tutor *Lysias*, having put himself at the Head of it, began the War with the Siege of *Bethsura*.

Q. How did Antiochus succeed in this Expedition?

A. He received some Loss from *Judas*, but with his numerous Army obliged him to retreat to *Jerusalem*, and having taken *Bethsura*, marched thither after him, and besieged the *Sanctuary*.

Q. How was the Jews relieved from this great Danger?

A. By an unexpected Accident, for *Lysias* having receiv'd Advice that *Philip* (whom *Antiochus Epiphanes* at his Death appointed Guardian to his Son) had in his Absence seized *Antioch*, and taken upon him the Government of the *Syrian Empire*, he was obliged to make Peace, and return into *Syria*, and on the King's coming to *Antioch*, *Philip* was driven thence.

Q. How did the two *Ptolemys* agree in the joint Government of *Egypt*?

A. *Physcon* the younger Brother, having prevailed over *Philometor*, had now driven him out of the Kingdom, whereupon he taking Shipping for *Italy*, landed at *Brundisium*, and travelled on Foot to *Rome*, in a fordid Habit, and with a mean Attendance, to pray the Help of the *Senate* for his Restoration.

Q. Did he prevail upon them to assist him in making up the Difference?

A. They immediately sent *Quintus* and *Canuleius*, two of their Body, Ambassadors with him to *Alexandria*, who compounded the Matter, assigning to *Physcon* the Country of *Lybia* and *Cyrene*, and to *Philometor*,

3842 *Egypt* and *Cyprus*.

Q. What was the Roman Ambassadors acting in *Syria* at this Time?

A. Finding the King thereof had more Ships in his Navy, and more Elephants in his Army than by the Treaty made



made with *Antiochus the Great* he was allowed; they *Antiochus*  
burnt those Ships, and slew those Elephants. *Mur.*

*Q. Was not great Discontents and Heart-burnings occasioned among the People hereby?*

*A. One of them called Leptinus fell upon Octavius at Laodicea, who was one of those Ambassadors, and slew him.*

*Q. How did the Romans express their Resentment for the Murder of their Ambassador?*

*A. Antiochus took care to send a proper Embassy hereon to purge himself with the Senate from having any Hand in it; but they by an angry Silence reserved their Judgement to a future Enquiry into the Authors of this Offence.*

*Q. Did Demetrius make any Advantage of this Murder?*

*A. He privately made his Escape from Rome in a Carthaginian Ship soon after; and it not being known to the Senate till after five Days, they took no Notice of it, only sent Tiberius Gracchus, T. Lentulus, and Servilius Glaucias, their Ambassadors, to Syria, to observe what Effect his Return into that Country would produce.*

*Q. How did the two Ptolemys agree on the Division of the Egyptian Empire made by the Senate of Rome?*

*A. Physcon thought he had too little, and went accordingly to Rome to make his Complaint; on hearing his Plea, they having more Regard to their own Safety than the Justice of the Cause, decreed Cyprus to Physcon, and sent Titus Torquatus and Cneius Merula to put him in Possession of it.*

*Q. How was Demetrius received on his Arrival into Syria?*

*A. He landing at Tripolis, made it believed he was sent by the Romans to take Possession of the Kingdom; whereon Eupator's Cause being given up for lost, all deserted to Demetrius, and Eupator and Lyffas his Tutor being seized, were delivered up to the new Comar,*

*And* and by his Order put to Death, and without farther *Mov.* Opposition he was settled in the Kingdom.

*Q.* What was the first Thing he did after he was seated on the Throne?

*A.* To deliver the *Babylonians* from the Tyranny of *Timarchus* and *Heraclides*; the former of whom he caused to be put to Death, and the latter to be banished.

*Q.* Who were these two Persons?

*A.* They were two great Favourites of *Antiochus Epiphanes*; and he had made the first of them Governor, and the other Treasurer of that Province.

*Q.* How was this Affair accepted by the *Babylonians*?

*A.* For delivering of them from the Oppression of these two Brothers, they called him *Soter*, i. e. The Saviour.

*Q.* On the Roman Ambassadors Arrival at Alexandria, did *Ptolemy Philometor* deliver up *Cyprus* to his Brother *Physcon*?

*A.* No, he refused to submit to the Decree of the Senate, and the Romans to express their Anger on this Account, ordered his Ambassador to depart *Rome* in five Days; and sent two Ambassadors into *Cyrene* to acquaint *Physcon* with what they had done.

*Q.* Did *Demetrius* renew the War against the Jews?

*A.* He sent *Nicanor* with his Forces to *Jerusalem*, who in the first Action against *Judas* lost 5000 of his Men, at which being enraged, he vented his Wrath against *Razis*, an honourable Senator of the Jewish Sanhedrim.

*Q.* In what Place was *Razis* at this Inture?

*A.* At a Castle of his own in the Country, where he defended himself for some Time with great Valour; but, unable to hold out any longer, he fell upon his own Sword; this Wound not killing him, he cast himself head

headlong over the Battlement of the Turret; and finding himself yet alive, he thrust his Hand into his Murtherer's Wound, pull'd out his Bowels, and cast them upon the Affailants, and so died

*Q. After Nicanor had been revenged thus on Razis, did he venture to encounter Judas?*

*A.* Yes, but was himself slain in the first Onset; whereon his whole Army threw down their Arms and fled. After this Victory, Judas sent an Embassy to the Romans, being desirous of making a League with them.

*Q. Was his Ambassadors kindly received by the Senate?*

*A.* They made a Decree, that the Jews should be acknowledged as Friends and Allies to the Romans; and a Letter was sent to Demetrius, to require him to desist from vexing them, threatening him with War if he should not comply herewith: But before the Ambassadors returned with it to Jerusalem, Judas was dead.

*Q. In what Manner did Judas lose his Life?*

*A.* Demetrius, on the Death of Nicanor, sent Bacchides with Alcimus at the Head of a great Army, into Judaea. Judas on their coming had no more than 3000 Men, and they terrified with the Number of the Enemy, deserted to 800; with these few, out of an over-excess of Valour, he engaged the Enemy, and was slain in the Conflict.

*Q. Were not the Israelites greatly distressed on this Defeat, and for the Loss of so valiant a Commander?*

*A.* Yes, and Alcimus with his Party got the whole Land into his Power, and made great Search for the Adherents of the Maccabees.

*Q. What was done to those as could be taken?*

*A.* They were brought before Bacchides, and put to Death with all Manner of Cruelty; whereon all that wished well to Sion, went over to Jonathan, and made him their Captain.

*Ann.* Q. Where did Jonathan flee after the Death of his Brother Judas ?

A. Jonathan and Simon with their Followers fled into the Wilderness of Tekoa, and there encamped; being surrounded with a Morass on one Side, and the River Jordan on the other.

Q. How did they secure their Goods and Baggage ?

A. They sent all their Carriages under the Conduct of John their Brother to their Friends the Nabatheans, to be deposited with them till they should be called for.

Q. Did John convey them safe to the Place designed for their Reception ?

A. The Jambrians, a Tribe of Arabs, living at Medaba, fell upon him, slew him, and all that were with him, and took all they had.

Q. How did Jonathan and Simon revenge the Death of their Brother ?

A. They understanding that a great Marriage was to be solemnized at Medaba between one of the chief Men of the Jambrians, and a Nobleman's Daughter of Canaan, way-laid them in the Mountains; and when both Companies were join'd, they rose from the Place where they lay in Ambush, slew them all, and took all their Spoils. The next Year Alcinus, the great Troubler of Israel, died.

Q. How long did Bacchides tarry in Judaea after his Death ?

A. As it was for his Sake only he came thither, on his Death he immediately returned to Antioch; and the Land had Quiet from all Molestations for two Years.

Q. What Satisfaction did Demetrius make to the Senate of Rome for the Murder of Octavia, their Ambassador ?

A. He this Year sent Minuchares, one of his Prime Ministers, to the Court of Ariarathes, King of Cappadocia, to solicit the three Roman Ambassadors there, to inter-

interpose their good Offices with the Senate, to acknowledge him for King of Syria; which was granted. The next Year he sent a solemn Embassy to Rome, with a Gold Crown for a Present to the Senate, and with it *Leptines* and *Isocrates*, to be deliver'd into their Hands for the Death of *Ottavius*. 3845

*Q. What Answer did the Senate return to this Embassy?*

*A.* They kindly accepted the Present, but would not meddle with the two Persons, saying, the taking Vengeance of them was too small a Satisfaction for the Death of an Ambassador, and that their Demand for this Affront was upon the whole Nation of the Syrians.

*Q. What was doing in Cappadocia at this Time?*

*A.* *Holophernes*, the pretended Brother of *Ariarathes*, laying Claim to that Kingdom, by the Assistance of *Demetrius* drove him out of it.

*Q. Why do you call Holophernes his pretended Brother?*

*A.* *Ariarathes* the Father had for his Wife *Antiochis*, Daughter of *Antiochus the Great*, who having lived some Years without Children, and never expecting to have any, feigned herself with Child, and pretended to be delivered of, first one Son, then another; thus brought two suppositious Children to be Heirs of the Royal Family; the first of these was *Ariarathes*, and the other *Holophernes*.

*Q. Had this Queen no Children of her own?*

*A.* After this she had two Daughters and a Son truly born, and then discovered the Fraud; the Son was this *Ariarathes* King of Cappadocia, whom *Holophernes* expelled the Kingdom. *Eumenes* King of Pergamus died about this Time, and bequeathed his Kingdom to his Brother *Attalus*.

*Q. Had he no Son of his own?*

*A.* He had a Son who was an Infant, and incapable of the Government, whom *Attalus* reserved to be the next Successor; nor did he deceive his Expectation.



*Anno* pection, for he married his Widow, took Care  
*Mun.* of his Son, and left him the Kingdom at his  
 ~~~~~ Death.

3846 Q. *Was the Peace still kept between Syria and Judaea?*

A. This Year *Bacchides* was again sent into that Land with a great Army, but after several Skirmishes to his Disadvantage, he grew weary of the War, and made Peace again with *Jonathan*, who settled himself at *Michmas*, nine Miles from *Jerusalem*, and there governed *Israel* according to the Law.

Q. *Whither did Ariarathes flee after he was driven out of his Kingdom by Holofernes?*

A. He went to *Rome* for Relief, and was followed thither by Ambassadors from *Demetrius* and *Holofernes* to
 3847 justify their Conduct against him.

Q. *What was the Issue of this Controversy?*

A. The Senate decreed they should reign together, but this Partnership did not last long; for *Holofernes* had alienated the Affections of the *Cappadocians* from him; and they were ready to declare against him on the first Occasion.

Q. *Did Ariarathes ever make Tryal of the People's Inclinations?*

A. *Attalus* King of *Pergamus* hearing of their Intentions, enabled *Ariarathes* to drive *Holofernes* out, and reinstate himself.

Q. *To what Place did Ariarathes go after his being expelled Egypt?*

A. He went to *Antioch*, and took with him to the Value of 400 Talents, with which he might have lived in Plenty and Ease, would any Thing but a Crown have
 3848 contented him.

Q. *How did Ptolemy Physcon manage his Government in Lybia and Cyrene?*

A. By his odious and vicious Conduct he became the Odium of the People, who fell upon him, and wounded him in several Places, which he charged upon King

King *Philometor* his Brother, and, as soon as he was *Ann-*
recovered, went to *Rome* to complain of it to the *Mun.*
Senate.

Q. Did the Senate yield to this false Accusation?

A. Yes, and forthwith ordered the Ambassadors of
Philometor to depart from *Rome*, and sent five of their
own to conduct *Physcon* to *Cyprus*, and wrote Letters
to all their Allies in those Parts to furnish him with
Forces to put him in Possession of that Island.

Q. Did Physcon land with this Army on the
Island?

A. Yes, and *Philometor* encounter'd him; and van- 3849
quished him in Battle, and afterwards took him Pri-
soner.

Q. What Treatment did he receive from him?

A. He pardon'd him, though his Offences against him
were judged unpardonable; nay, he again restored to
him *Lybia* and *Cyrene*, and added other Territories to
them in lieu of *Cyprus*. Hereby the War between the
two Brothers was shamefully ended, the *Romans* being
ashamed any more to oppose so generous a Clemency.

Q. During these Conventions between the two Ptolemys,
what war Demetrius employed about?

A. He gave himself wholly up to Drinking, which
justly giving Disgust to all his Subjects, they enter'd into
a Conspiracy for: Deposing of him; and *Holophernes*, 3850
then living at *Antioch*, joined with them against his Be-
nefactor; on which Discovery being made, he was
clapped into Prison.

Q. How was this Plot carried on after his Confinement?

A. Ptolemy, Antiochus, and Ariarathus, being all for
good Reasons disgusted with *Demetrius*, joined together
to encourage the Conspirators, and employed *Heracles*
to suborn one to take upon him the Pretence of being
Son to *Antiochus Epiphanes*, and under that Title to claim
the Crown of *Syria*.

Q. How did Heracles manage this Scheme?

A. He having lived at Rhodes ever since he was
banished from Babylon, there found out a Youth of a
very

Amo very mean Condition called *Balas*, whom he dressed up
Mun. and instructed how to act his Part in this Design.

Q. *What was done after this?*

3851 A. He first took him to be own'd by the three Kings, then carried him to *Rome*, taking *Laodice*, who was really the Daughter of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, along with him, to put a better Face upon the Fraud.

Q. *How did he manage Matters there?*

A. By his Craft he gained him to be owned there also, and the Senators, though they plainly enough saw through the Imposture, yet out of Disgust to *Demetrius*, they fell in with it, and decreed in his Behalf, that he should be permitted to return to *Syria*, and have their Assistance for the Recovery of that Kingdom.

Q. *Whither did Heracles carry this young Impostor from Rome?*

A. He raised some Forces, and then sailed to *Ptolemais* in *Palestine*, seized that City, and proclaimed him King of *Syria*, by the Name of *Alexander*, Son of *Antiochus Epiphanes*.

Q. *Was not all this enough to make Demetrius entertain some sober Thoughts for his future Preservation?*

A. He now began to provide for his Defence, got all his Forces together, and judging the Assistance of *Jonathan* would go a great Way in this Matter, he courted his Friendship.

Q. *How could he expect to gain Jonathan on his Side, who had been such a bitter Enemy to the Jews?*

A. He first wrote to him a Letter, constituting him the King's General in *Judea*; empower'd him to raise Forces, to provide Arms, and to command the Hostages which were shut up in the Fortresa of *Jerusalem*, to be delivered to him.

Q. *What Use did Jonathan make of the great Power he was now invested with?*

A. He first restored the Hostages which *Bacchides* had taken of the *Jews*, for the Fidelity of their Fathers to the *Syrian* Interest, and returned them to those from whom they were taken; and then settling at *Jerusalem*,

him, began to repair and fortify the City on every Side. *Ann. Mun.*

Q. In what Manner did Alexander proceed, when he heard what Demetrius had done to gain Jonathan to his Interest?

A. He also sent Proposals to him, whereby he granted him the High Priesthood of the Jews, and that he should be called the King's Friend; also sent him a purple Robe, and a Crown of Gold, as Ensigns of the great Dignity he invested him with; hereon Demetrius sent a second Message to out-bid Alexander.

Q. For which of them did Jonathan at length declare?

A. He durst not confide in the Promises of Demetrius, but entered into a League with Alexander, and accepting of the High Priest's Office, by the Consent of the People. On the Feast of Tabernacles, which was soon after, he put on the Pontifical Robes, and officiated in that Office, which had now, from the Death of Alcimus, been vacant seven Years. From this Time the High Priesthood of the Jews was settled in the Family of the *Asmoneans*.

Q. When did the two Kings take the Field?

A. This Year; and Demetrius gain'd the first Victory, 3852 but it was not of much Advantage to him.

Q. How came that to pass?

A. Alexander was soon recruited by the three Kings that first set him up, and, having the Romans and Jonathan on his Side, could very well maintain his Cause; and Demetrius, not knowing what might be the End of this Affair, sent a great Treasure by his two Sons to Cnidus, to a Friend, for a future Reserve.

Q. Was there no Disturbance in Macedonia since the Romans conquer'd Philip, and added it to their Empire?

A. Not till this Time, when one Andriscus of *Adramyttium* in *Myſia*, a young Man, of as mean Condition as Alexander, thinking to play the same Game, took the Name of Philip, and pretending to be the Son of Perſeus, claimed to reign there. 3853

Q. Who was this Impoſtor ſupported by?

A. Finding

Ann. A. Finding at that Time his Pretence little regarded,
Mon. he went to *Demetrius* at *Antioch*, expecting his Encouragement, who caused him to be seized, and to curry Favour with the *Romans*, sent him thither.

Q. What did the Senate do with him when he was delivered into their Hands?

A. They took little Notice of him, and let him escape into *Macedonia*, where he kindled a War, which cost them a great deal of Time, Money, and Blood, to quench.

3854 Q. What was acted between the two Contenders for the Kingdom of Syria this Campaign?

A. They committed the Determination of their Cause to a decisive Battle, in which *Demetrius* was slain, and *Alexander*, by this Victory, made himself Master of the Syrian Empire.

Q. What Alliances did he make to strengthen himself therein?

A. He sent to *Ptolemy* King of *Egypt*, to desire *Cleopatra* his Daughter might be given him in Marriage, which *Ptolemy* consenting to, he carried her to *Ptolemais*, and there married her to him.

Q. Was Jonathan invited to the Wedding?

A. Yes, and was received with great Favour by both Kings, but more especially by *Alexander*.

Q. What particular Honours did he confer upon him?

A. He caused him to be clothed in Purple, ordered him to be enrolled among the Chief of his Friends, constituted him General of his Forces in *Judea*, gave him the Office of *Meridarches* in his Palace, and caused it to be proclaimed in the City, that no one should presume to speak against him.

Q. What do you mean by the Office of Meridarches?

A. *Grotius* explains the Word to signify, chief Sower, which is an Office one of the Electors bears in the German Empire.

3855 Q. Was Onias the Son of Onias now living, who fled to Egypt on being disappointed of the High Priesthood, when his Uncle Menelaus died?

A. Yes

A. Yes, and in great Favour both with *Philometor* and *Anno Cleopatra*, infomuch that he obtained a Licence to build *Mun.* a Temple for the *Jews* in *Egypt*, like that at *Jerusalem*, and a Grant for him and his Descendants to be always High-Priests of it.

Q. At what Place did he build this Temple?

A. Within the Prefecture of *Heliopolis*, 24 Miles from *Memphis*; and he made it exactly according to the Pattern of that at *Jerusalem*.

Q. How did *Alexander Balas* govern his new gotten Kingdom?

A. He had nothing else to do, as he thought, but to glut himself with Idleness and Debauchery, leaving the Administration of his Government to his Favourite *Amenius*, who managed it with Insolence, Tyranny, and Cruelty, whereby he soon made both *Alexander* and himself odious to the People.

Q. What was the Consequence of this Life and Management?

A. *Demetrius*, the Son of *Demetrius*, who was sent to *Cisius* with his Father's Treasure, taking Advantage of his Indolence, hired a Band of *Cretans*, landed with them in *Cilicia*, and got Possession of the Country.

Q. Did not this Invasion rouse *Alexander* from his Slub?

A. He took the Field with as many Forces as he could raise, and hearing that another *Apollonius*, now Governor of *Cale-Syria* and *Phenicia*, had declared for *Demetrius*, he also called in King *Ptolemy* his Father-in-Law to his Assistance.

Q. How did *Jonathan* behave himself on this Contention?

A. He stood firm to *Alexander*, marched out of *Jerusalem* with 10,000 Men, and took *Joppa* in the Sight of *Apollonius*, on which he challenged *Jonathan* to come to a Battle.

Q. Did *Jonathan* accept of this Challenge?

A. Yes, and vanquished him in the open Field, and slew 8000 of his Men. About this Time lived *Hipparchus*

Ano chus of Nicaa in Bithinia, the most celebrated Astro-Mun. nomer of the Ancients.

Q. Did Ptolemy Philometor come to Alexander's Assistance?

3858 *A.* He came with a great Army, and all the Cities opened their Gates to him, as ordered by *Alexander*; and at *Joppa*, *Jonathan* met him, whom he received very kindly, and marched with him to *Ptolemais*.

Q. What was done on their coming thither?

A. A Design of *Ammonius*, for taking away *Ptolemy's* Life, was discovered there; on which he demanded of *Alexander* to deliver up the Traytor to him, which he refusing, *Ptolemy* took away his Daughter, and gave her to *Demetrius*, and made a League with him to restore him to his Father's Kingdom. Hereon the *Antiochians* open'd their Gates, received *Demetrius* into the City, and placed him upon the Throne of his Ancestors.

Q. Where was Alexander at this Time?

A. He was coming from *Cilicia* with his Forces, and when he heard that the Inhabitants of *Antioch* had declared for *Demetrius*, he wasted all the Country round about it with Fire and Sword.

Q. Did not this occasion a Battle between the two Armies?

A. Yes; and *Alexander* being vanquished, fled with only 500 Horse to *Zabdiel* an *Arabian* Prince, with whom he had before entrusted his Children; but he was there slain by those he confided in, and his Head carried to *Ptolemy*, who was much pleased at the Sight of it, but his Joy was soon over, for he had received a dangerous Wound in the late Battle, and died of it within a few Days.

Q. Was not this Year rendered famous for the Death of these two Kings?

A. Not only for that, but also for the Destruction of *Carthage* and *Corinth*, two celebrated Cities, the first by *Scipio Africanus*, jun. and the latter by *Mummius* the Roman Consul for this Year; and here ended the third Punic War.

Q. L.

*Q. Is there any other remarkable Occurrences recorded to Anno
have happened this Year?*

*Anno
Mun.*

*A. When Corinth was burnt, all the Brass being melt-
ed, and running among the other Metals, the Mixture
made the *Æs Corinthiacum*, i. e. the *Sarinthian Brasi* of
the Ancients. *Polihus* also ended his famous History
of the 2d and 3d *Punic Wars* the same Year.*

3859

*Q. By what Means did Cleopatra, Queen of Egypt, se-
cure the Succession of that Crown to her Son, after the Death
of her Husband Ptolemy Philometor?*

*A. Thermus, an Ambassador from Rome, being then at
Alexandria, delivered the Egyptians from a Civil War,
by compromising that Affair.*

Q. In what Manner was it determined by him?

*A. That Physcon, Brother to Ptolemy, should take
Cleopatra to Wife, and breed up her Son, who was then
a Minor, under his Tuition, for the next Succession.*

Q. How did Physcon act on his ascending the Throne?

*A. He murder'd Cleopatra's Son in her Arms, on the
very Day of their Nuptials, and assumed the Name of
Euergetes, i. e. the Benefactor, which the Alexandrians
turned into Kalergetes, i. e. the Malefactor, by reason of
his great Wickedness.*

Q. How went on Matters in Syria at this Time?

*A. Not much better than they did in Egypt; for De-
metrius being young, left the Management of his Affairs
to Lathenes. The first false Step they took was towards
those Soldiers Ptolemy had left in the maritime Towns of
Phenicia and Syria, of whom he was jealous, and sent
others to put them all to the Sword.*

Q. What was the Consequence of this Barbarity?

*A. He did not stop here, for he next made a strict
Scrutiny after all those who had been against his Father,
and put them to Death also; then thinking he had no
more Enemies to fear, disbanded his Army: The Mis-
chief of these Proceedings he severely felt afterwards.*

*Q. How went on Matters in Judæa under the Reign
of Demetrius?*

A. Jona-

Anno A. Jonathan finding all quiet at Jerusalem, laid Siege
Mun. to the Fortrefs, which the Heathen still held there;
 on which Complaint was made to Demetrius, who
 summoned him to Ptolemais, to give an Account of this
 Matter.

Q. *What was the Event of this Interview?*

A. Jonathan, by his Management, so mollified the
 King, that he confirmed him in his former Offices, and
 also honoured him with many other Favours.

Q. *Did Demetrius still go on in the same Methods of
 Cruelty, Folly, and Rashness, in which he began?*

A. He followed the same Steps till he made all his
 People ready for a general Defection, which Diadochus,
 afterwards named Tryphon, observing, immediately went
 to Zabdiel, who had the Care of Antiochus Son of Alex-
 ander, and desired the Youth to be put into his Hands,
 that he might set him on his Father's Throne.

Q. *How long did Demetrius continue in Friendship with
 Jonathan?*

A. Notwithstanding his former Promises, and altho'
 Jonathan had this Year assisted him in suppressing a
 dangerous Sedition at Antioch, he now demanded of
 him all the Tolls, Taxes, and Tributes again, which
 he had before freed the Jews from, or the Sum of 300
 Talents.

3860 Q. *What Steps did Tryphon take now he had got
 Alexander's Son delivered to him?*

A. He went with him into Syria, and laid Claim to
 the Kingdom for him; on which all Demetrius's Enemies
 and the Soldiers whom he had disbanded, flock'd to the
 Pretender, and, having vanquished Demetrius in Battle,
 seized him into Salencia, took Possession of Antioch, and
 placed the young King upon the Throne, giving him the
 Name of Antiochus Theus, i. e. the Divine.

Q. *Did Jonathan come into the Interest of this young
 King?*

A. On his Invitation, and further Grants made to him,
 he readily consented to declare for him, having just
 Reason for it, from the ill Conduct of Demetrius.

Q. *Was*

*Q. Was not Demetrius intent to divert Jonathan from Anno
this new Alliance with Antiochus?*

Mun.

A. He, on this Occasion, drew together all the Forces he had in *Cæle-Syria* and *Phœnicia*, and invaded *Galilee*, whither *Jonathan* marched to oppose him, and got the Victory; in the Interim, *Simon* took *Bethsura*, and expelled the Heathen Garrison.

Q. How did Jonathan proceed after this Victory?

A. He sent Ambassadors to the *Romans*, *Lacedæmonians*, and the other Allies of the *Jews* in those Parts, to renew with them the Leagues which they made with *Judas*; and they brought back with them full Success in all their Negotiations.

Q. Did not Demetrius's Forces make a second Attempt upon Jonathan in Galilee?

A. Yes; but he soon drove him away over the River *Eleutherus*, and led his Army against the *Arabs* that were of *Demetrius's* Party; and having conquer'd them, passed to *Damascus*, subduing all that were Adversaries to the Interest of *Antiochus*. During this, *Simon* brought all the Land of the *Philistines* under him, and took *Joppa*.

Q. How was Tryphon contriving Matters at Antioch, during these Exploits of Jonathan and Simon?

A. He was plotting to take off the young King, and seize to himself the Crown of *Syria*; but foreseeing that *Jonathan* would not come into these villainous Measures, he marched against him, in order, if he could, to get him into his Power, and put him to Death.

Q. How did he bring about this Design?

A. He sent for him in a friendly Manner, pretending to consult him about their common Interest, and by flattering Words having persuaded him to send away all his Army but 3000 Men, 2000 of which he sent into *Galilee*, and with the other 1000 went with *Tryphon* to *Ptolemais*, to take Possession of that Place, which he, upon his Oath, had promised to deliver into his Hands.

Q. What Fate did Jonathan meet with here?

A. As

Ann. Mun. *A.* As soon as he and his Company were got within the Walls, that false Traytor ordered the Gates to be shut upon them, took *Jonathan* Prisoner, and put all his Men to the Sword.

Q. What was done at Jerusalem when they heard of the Loss of *Jonathan*?

A. The Jews were in great Fear, but *Simon* calling them together, offered to fight for them as his Father and Brothers had done before him; which raised their Hearts, and they unanimously chose him their Captain, and immediately set to work to finish the Fortifications of Jerusalem, which *Jonathan* had began.

Q. Did not Tryphon, after this, renew the War in Judæa against *Simon*?

A. Yes, but without any Success. On his Retreat to *Bascama*, in the Land of *Gilead*, where he designed to take up his Winter-Quarters, he put *Jonathan* to Death, and afterwards secretly cut off *Antiochus*.

3861 *Q.* What particular Marks of Love and Affection were shewn by *Simon*, when he heard of his Brother's Death?

A. He sent for his Bones from *Bascama*, where he was buried, and put them in the Sepulchre of his Father at *Modin*; afterwards erected a curious Monument over it, built of white Marble, finely wrought and polished; near which he placed seven Pyramids, and encompassed the Whole with a stately Portico, supported with Marble Pillars.

Q. What Steps did Tryphon take to advance his Reputation, now he had usurped the Crown of Syria?

A. He was fond of being acknowledged King by the Romans, and sent a splendid Embassy thither with a Present of a Golden Image of Victory, to the Value of 10,000 Pieces of Gold, hoping for the Sake of this Gift, to be owned by them as such.

Q. How was this Present accepted of by the Senate?

A. They

A. They cunningly eluded his Expectations, accepted the Image, and ordered to be engraven upon it the *Mun.* Name of *Antiochus*, whom *Tryphon* had murder'd, as if he had been the Giver.

Q. Did not *Simon* also renew the Alliances of his Predecessors with the Romans? &c.

A. He sent Ambassadors to notify the Death of *Jonathan*, and that he was appointed to succeed him; and when they approach'd *Rome*, the *Romans* sent out to meet them, and readily renew'd all their former Leagues, which, being written on Brass Tables, were carried to *Jerusalem*, and read to the People. All the other Alliances of the *Jews* were renewed in like Manner.

Q. What Opposition did *Demetrius* make against *Tryphon* his Antagonist?

A. While his Soldiers were fighting for him in the Field, he lay idle at *Laodicea*, wallowing in Luxury and Lewdness: However, *Simon* sent a Crown of Gold to him, and Ambassadors to treat with him about Terms of Peace and Alliance.

Q. What was the Issue of this Embassy?

A. *Simon* obtained a Grant from that Prince of Confirmation in the High Priesthood and Principality, and a Release of all Taxes, Tolls, and Tributes; also an Oblivion of all past Acts of Hostility, on Condition the *Jews* joined with him against *Tryphon*. This Year the Heathen Fortrefs at *Jerusalem* surrendered, 3862 and the Garrison departed the Land; whereupon *Simon* demolished it, and also the Hill on which it stood.

Q. Was not *Demetrius* as yet roused from his Sloth?

A. The *Parthians* having now in a Manner overrun all the Countries of *Asia*, from the River *Indus* to the *Euphrates*, frequent Embassies were sent to him from the distressed People, to invite him to their Relief, on Purpose of a general Revolt; and he now undertook the Expedition. 3863

O

Q What

Anno Q. *What Success had he therein ?*

Mun. A. As soon as he came into the East, the *Elymaeans*, the *Persians*, and the *Bactrians*, declared for him, and he overthrew the *Parthians* in many Conflicts, but at last was taken Prisoner, and his Army cut to Pieces: Hereby the *Parthian Empire* became established with that Greatness of Power, which made it last many Ages.

Q. *Who was the King that reigned in Parthia at this Time ?*

A. *Mithridates*, the fourth in Descent, and the fifth in Succession of reigning in that Kingdom, from *Asaces* the first Founder of it; and henceforth *Euphrates* on the West, and *Ganges* on the East, became the Limits of this Empire.

Q. *What was doing at Jerusalem now ?*

A. The *Jews* assembled together there, and, by the unanimous Consent of all present, it was agreed, that the Supreme Government of the Nation, as well as the *High Priesthood*, should be settled upon *Simon* and his Posterity; an Instrument in Writing was made hereof, which being engraven on *Tables of Brass*, was hung up in the *Sanctuary*, and the Original was laid up in the *sacred Archives* belonging to the Treasury of the Temple.

Q. *How did Cleopatra dispose of herself and Children during her Husband's Captivity in Parthia ?*

3864 A. She took them with her, and shut herself up in *Seleucia*, where many of *Tryphon's* Soldiers came to her: On this (and her Husband's ill Usage, who had married another Wife in *Parthia*) she sent to *Antiochus Sidetes*, Brother of *Demetrius*, (who was also sent by his Father with the Treasure to *Cnidus*, on Account of his War with *Balas*) to join his Interest with her's, offering him the Crown, and herself in Marriage.

Q. *Did Antiochus Sidetes accept of these Proposals ?*

A. He

A. He thereon wrote a Letter to *Simon*, to gain him over to his Interest; and the next Year landed in *Syria*, *Mun.* married *Cleopatra*, and marched against *Tryphon* with 120,000 Foot, and 8000 Horsemen.

Q. What was the Issue of this Expedition?

A. *Tryphon* durst not keep the Field, but retreated to *Dora*, a City near *Ptolemais*, and, being besieged by *Antiochus*, he escaped by Sea to *Phœnicia*, thence to *Apania* his native City, where he was seized and put to Death. Thus *Antiochus* became fully settled in his Father's Kingdom, and being much given to Hunting, had the Name of *Sidetes*, i. e. the Hunter, in the Syrian Language.

Q. What Method did *Simon* now take for his former Establishment in the Sovereign Command of *Judæa*?

A. He sent a second Embassy to *Rome*, with a large Shield of Gold, of the Value of 50,000 *l.* our Money, which proved very acceptable to the Senate, and they not only renew'd their former League with him, but also order'd *Lucius Cornelius Pise*, one of their Consuls, to write Letters to the Kings of *Egypt*, *Cappadocia*, *Syria*, and *Parthia*, and to all the Cities of *Greece*, *Lesser Asia*, and the *Isles*, to inform them that the *Jews* were their Friends, and that at their Peril they should not attempt any Thing against them.

Q. How did *Antiochus Sidetes* behave himself towards *Simon*, after the Receipt of these Letters?

A. The Roman Letters, which came to the King of *Syria*, were directed for *Demetrius*, and *Antiochus* had no Regard to them, but took the first Opportunity to quarrel with him, and sent to demand *Gazara*, *Joppa*, and the Fortrefs of *Jerusalem*, or 500 Talents in Lieu of them.

Q. What Answer did *Simon* give to *Athenobius* who brought this Message?

A. He told him he was willing to pay 100 Talents for *Gazara* and *Joppa*; but as to the rest, they were the Inheritance of his Forefathers, and he was resolved to keep them.

Ann. Q. How was this Answer taken by Antiochus ?

Mun. A. Enraged at it, he forthwith sent Cendebeus with an Army to invade Judaea, and to commit all Manner of Hostilities in the Land.

Q. What Course did Simon take to oppose the Enemy ?

A. He raised an Army of 20,000 Foot, and Horse proportionable, gave the Command thereof to Judas and John his two Sons, who overthrew Cendebeus, set his Fortresses on Fire, and returned to Jerusalem.

Q. What was doing by the Kings of Egypt and Pergamus, during this War in Judaea ?

A. Nothing is recorded of them but their monstrous Vices and detestable Cruelties, which were carried to such a Height, that there fled out of Egypt, on this Occasion, many Gramarians, Philosophers, Physicians, Musicians, and other Masters of ingenious Arts and Sciences, which became the Means of reviving Learning again in Greece, Lesser Asia, and in all the other Places where they went.

Q. How long did Simon hold the Sovereignty of Judaea ?

A. This Year, on his Progress through the Cities of Judah, he came to Jericho with Judas and Mattathias, two of his Sons : Ptolemy, who married one of his Daughters, being Governor of that Place, invited them all to an Entertainment, where the perfidious Wretch, having before plotted with Antiochus for usurping the Government of Judaea to himself, assassinated them all, as they were sitting at the Banquet.



C H A P. III.

The War of Numantium ; Pergamenian Kingdom destroy'd ; Wars in Syria ; Ptolemy Physcon ; Hyrcanus reduceth Samaria ; Demolisheth the Temple on Mount Gerizim ; Opimian Wine ; Sects of the Jews ; Cymbrian War ; Origin of the Angli ; Mithridatic War ; Lucullus's Victories ; The Balm of Gilead ; Pompey takes Jerusalem ; Profanes the Temple ; &c.

WHO succeeded Simon in the Government of Ju- Anno
Mun.
dæa ?

A. John Hyrcanus his Son, who was then at Ga- 3869.
zara.

Q. Did Antiochus make any Advantage of the Death of Simon ?

A. He endeavour'd to reduce Judæa again under the Syrian Empire, marched thither with a great Army, over-run the Country, drove Hyrcanus out of the Field, shut him up in Jerusalem, and laid Siege to that City.

Q. How did the Besieged defend themselves ?

A. With great Bravery, always repulsing the Enemy, and often making Sallies upon them. Thus the Siege went on till the Time of the Jews Feast of Tabernacles, which was always held in the Middle of the first Autumnal Moon ; and Hyrcanus then sent to Antiochus, to pray a Truce during that Holy Time.

Q. What Answer was given to his Petition ?

A. Antiochus readily granted it, and sent Beasts and other Things necessary for the Sacrifices ; which giving
Hyrcanus

Anno Hyrcanus an Instance of his Piety, he sent again to *Mun.* him for Terms of Peace : This Request also was readily complied with ; and hereon a Treaty was commenced.

Q. What were the Articles of this Peace ?

A. (1) That the Besieged should deliver up their Arms. (2) That *Jerusalem* should be dismantled. (3) That Tribute should be paid for *Joppa*. (4) And that five hundred Talents should be paid in Lieu of the *Heathen Fortress* at *Jerusalem*, or it should be rebuilt.

Q. What memorable Actions are recorded of the Romans about this Time ?

A. *Scipio Africanus*, jun. going to the War of *Numantium* in *Spain*, *Antiochus* sent him very valuable Presents, which he received in Sight of the Army, and ordered them to be delivered into the Hands of the *Questor*, towards defraying the publick Charges of the War.

Q. Who was the Questor ?

A. He was Treasurer of the Army, and every Roman General, that went to War, had such an Officer with him, to manage the Expences of it.

Q. How long did Attalus King of Pergamus continue his Tyranny and Cruelty ?

3871 *A.* This Year, in his mad Frenzy, he turned Founder, and projected to make a *Brass* Monument for his Mother ; but while he was melting the Brass in a hot Summer's Day, he contracted a Fever, which killed him. Before he died he made a Will, and left the *Roman* Heirs of all his Goods : Hereon they seized his Kingdom, and reduced it into a Province.

Q. Did the lawful Heir tamely submit to this ?

A. No, he raised an Army, claimed the Kingdom as his Inheritance, took Possession of it, and it cost the *Romans* the Death of one of their Consuls, and four Years War, to reduce him. Here ended the *Pergamian* Kingdom, which included the greatest Part of *Lesser Asia*.

Q. What

*Q. What remarkable Transaction occurred in Egypt Anno
about this Time?* Mun.

A. Jesus the Son of Sirach, a Jew of Jerusalem, going thither to settle, now translated out of the Hebrew into the Greek, the Book of Jesus his Grandfather, which in our English Bible hath the Name of Ecclesiasticus. 3872

Q. What became of Demetrius Nicator, who was taken Prisoner by the King of Parthia?

A. This Year his Brother Antiochus Sidetes went, with an Army of 80,000 Men, against Phraates, under Pretence of effecting his Deliverance, and took Hyrcanus with him.

Q. What Success had he in this Enterprize?

A. He overthrew the King of Parthia in three Battles, recover'd Babylonia, Media, and all the rest of those Eastern Countries, which were formerly Provinces of the Syrian Empire, excepting Parthia: After which Hyrcanus returned to Jerusalem.

Q. Had Antiochus any farther Success in Parthia?

A. He winter'd his Army there, but, by Reason of their Numbers, was obliged to disperse them all over the Country; on which the Inhabitants conspired to fall upon them, and destroy'd them all in one Day; and while Antiochus hastened the Forces about him to assist the Quarters which lay next him, he was overpower'd and slain. In this Confusion Demetrius returned into Syria, and recovered his Kingdom. 3874

Q. How did Phraates King of Parthia behave himself after this Victory?

A. He caus'd the Body of Antiochus to be taken up from amongst the Dead, put it into a Silver Coffin, and honourably sent it into Syria, to be buried among his Ancestors: After this he found one of his Daughters among the Captives, and took her to Wife.

Q. Did Demetrius reign peaceably in Syria?

Anno Mun. *A.* He met with nothing but Disturbances and Divisions, of which *Hyrcanus* taking the Advantage, added several Cities of *Syria* and *Phœnicia* to his Dominions, and henceforth freed himself from all Manner of Homage and Servitude to the Kings of *Syria*.

Q. Did *Ptolemy Physcon* still go on in the same Steps of Luxury, Tyranny, and Folly, in *Egypt*?

A. The Excesses of his Wickednesses had made him so odious to his People, that they all rose upon him and set his Palace on Fire; but he escaping, they drove him out of the Kingdom, and put the Government into the Hands of *Cleopatra* his divorced Wife; on which he hired an Army of Mercenaries to make War against her and the *Alexandrians*.

Q. Did *Hyrcanus* extend his Conquests any farther?

3875 *A.* Yes, he took *Sechem*, the Prime Seat of the Sect of the *Samaritans*, and destroy'd their Temple on Mount *Gerizim*: After this he conquer'd the *Edomites*, and obliged them either to embrace the *Jewish* Religion, or to quit their Country.

Q. What Success had *Physcon* against the *Alexandrians*?

3876 *A.* He obtained a Victory over them, and took *Marphas* their General Prisoner; on which *Cleopatra* sent to *Demetrius*, who had married her eldest Daughter, for Assistance, promising him the Crown of *Egypt* for his Reward. This Proposal was accepted, he march'd into *Egypt*, and laid Siege to *Pelusium*.

Q. What was *Hyrcanus* doing during the Absence of *Demetrius*?

A. He now sent Ambassadors to *Rome*, to renew the League made with them by *Simon* his Father; which being granted, the Senate decreed, that the *Syrians* should make Reparation for all the Damages they had done him; and farther ordered, that the *Jewish* Ambassadors should have Money to bear their Charges Home.

Q. How

Q. How did Hyrcanus retaliate these Favours?

Ans

A. The next Year he sent another Embassy, with a *Mun.* Present of a *Gold Cup* and *Shield* to the Value of 50,000 *~* Pieces of his Money, whereon another Decree was made 3877 in their Favour, ratifying and confirming all their former Grants.

Q. How did Demetrius succeed in the Egyptian War?

A. During his Absence, the *Antiochians*, and many other Cities of *Syria*, revolted; and he was forced to hasten out of *Egypt* to secure his Interest at Home; whereon *Cleopatra* put all her Treasure on Ship-board, and fled to *Ptolemais*, to her Daughter by *Philometor*, who was now Queen of *Syria*.

Q. Did Physcon, on her Flight, recover the Kingdom of Egypt?

A. Yes, and to be revenged on *Demetrius*, he set up an Impostor against him, whose Name was *Alexander Zebina*, the Son of a Broker in *Alexandria*; but under Pretence of his being the Son of *Alexander Balas*, *Physcon* furnished him with an Army to take Possession of the Kingdom of *Syria*.

Q. How was this Matter decided?

A. By a fierce Battle, in which *Demetrius's* Army was conquered, and he, escaping to *Tyre*, was there 3878 slain.

Q. How was Syria governed after his Death?

A. *Cleopatra* retained one Part, and the Impostor *Zebina* reigned over all the rest, who made a strict Alliance with *Hyrcanus* Prince of the *Jews*, to secure himself in it; by which League the State of the *Jewish* Nation was much improved.

Q. How long did this Impostor reign in Syria?

A. *Cleopatra* having killed her eldest Son *Seleucus*, 3882 (who had set himself up against her, and seized Part of the *Syrian* Empire) sent for the other called *Antiochus* from *Athens*, where he had been placed for Education; On his Arrival she declared him King of *Syria*; and to distinguish him from the other *Antiochus*, he was called *Grypus*, a Name taken from his Hook Nose.

Ann. Q. Did Grypus meet with no Opposition from Ze-
Mus. bina?

~ A. They came to a Battle, in which the Impostor, being overthrown, fled to *Antioch*, where, on attempting to rob the Temple of *Jupiter* for carrying on the War, he was slain.

Q. Who were the Consuls at Rome for this Year?

388; A. *L. Opimius* and *Q. Fabius Maximus*. This was the Season the famous *Opimian Wine* was made, which is so often spoken of by the Poets, some of which, from the Grapes ripening to greater Perfection than usual, was kept for 200 Years after.

Q. How did *Antiochus Grypus* govern in *Syria*?

A. When he came to Age, his Mother *Cleopatra* thinking his Authority eclipsed her Grandeur, resolved to cut him off, as she before had *Solimus*; accordingly one Day as he came hot and weary from Hunting, he provided a Cup of *Poison*, and offer'd it him to drink; but he being forewarned, forced her to drink it; which put an End to the Life of a most wicked Woman.

Q. Was *Ptolemy Physcon* still alive in *Egypt*?

388; A. He died this Year, and left behind him three Sons; the First-born, called *Apion*, he had by a Concubine; the other two, called *Lathyrus* and *Alexander*, he had by *Cleopatra* his Niece, whom he took to Wife, after he had divorced her Mother.

Q. Which of these Sons succeeded him?

A. He gave the Kingdom of *Cyrene*, by his Last Will, to *Apion*, and that of *Egypt* to *Cleopatra*, in Conjunction with one of her Sons, leaving the Choice hereof to her own Discretion.

Q. Which of them did she make Partner with her in the Government?

A. Contrary to her Inclination she was forced to make Choice of *Lathyrus*; but before she would suffer him to be inaugurated at *Memphis*, (according to the Custom

Custom of that Country) she obliged him to divorce *Anna Cleopatra* the eldest of his Sisters, (whom he had *Mun.* taken to Wife, and dearly loved) and marry *Selene* his younger Sister; this done, he took the Name of *Soter*.

Q. How did Cleopatra his former Wife dispose of herself after this Divorcement?

A. She married Cyzicenus, Half-Brother to Antiochus Grypus, now King of Syria; and having raised an Army in Cyprus, carried that to him instead of a Dower.

Q. How did Cyzicenus employ these Forces?

A. He marched against Grypus, but was overthrown in the first Battle, and Cleopatra was slain by her own Sister Tryphena, Wife of Grypus, in the Temple at Antioch, while she was embracing the Image of her God, to which she fled for Refuge.

Q. Whither did Cleopatra, Queen of Egypt, send her youngest Son Alexander?

A. To strengthen her own Authority, she made him King of Cyprus.

Q. Did Cyzicenus suffer the Death of Cleopatra his Wife to go unrevenge?

A. No, he fought a second Battle with his Brother, in which having gained the Victory, and gotten Tryphena into his Power, he sacrificed her to his Wife's Ghost.

Q. Whither did Grypus go after this Overthrow?

A. To Aspendus in Pamphilia; and next Year returning again into Syria, he recovered his Kingdom, on which the two Brothers agreed to divide it between them: Cyzicenus reigned at Damascus over Caelo-Syria and Phœnicia, and Grypus at Antioch over all the rest.

Q. Did Hircanus make no Advantage of this Family-Contention?

A. As he grew in Riches and Power, and had nothing to fear from either of the Brothers, he resolved to reduce Samaria under his Dominions; which after

Anno having held out a Siege of about a Year, surrendered *Mun.* into his Hands, and he forthwith demolished the Place.

Q. What Countries was Hyrcanus now possessed of?

A. He had all *Judæa*, *Galilee*, and *Samaria*, and several other Places in the Out-skirts round him, whereby he became one of the most considerable Princes of the Age in which he lived.

Q. Did he engage in any more Foreign Wars?

A. No, he was in full Quiet all the Remainder of his Life; but towards the latter End of it he met with some Trouble at Home from the *Pharisees*, a mutinous Sect of the *Jews*, and died soon after.

Q. How many Sects were there among the *Jews*?

A. Six; the *Samaritans*, *Sadducees*, *Pharisees*, the *Kanaraites*, *Essens*, and *Herodians*; but to set forth the different Tenets of each of these, would exceed the Bounds of this Treatise.

Q. How many Children did Hyrcanus leave behind him?

A. Five Sons, the eldest of which, called *Aristobulus*, succeeded him; the Name of the others were *Antigonus*, *Alexander*, and *Absalom* who was the youngest; what was the Name of the fourth is not mentioned.

Q. How did *Aristobulus* act on his taking the Government of *Judæa* upon him?

A. He put the Royal Diadem upon his Head, and took the Title of King, and was the first who did so in that Land since the *Babylonish* Captivity. He then cast his Mother into Prison, where he starved her to Death.

Q. How did he dispose of his Brothers?

A. He put *Antigonus* to Death, and kept the other three confined as long as he lived.

Q. Did not *Ptolemy Lathyrus* offend his Mother *Cleopatra* in making War against the *Jews*?

A. Yes,

A. Yes, and on this Occasion she took from him his Wife *Selene*, by whom he had two Sons, made *Alexander* his Brother King of *Egypt*, and forced him to be contented with the Island of *Cyprus*. *Anno Min.*

Q. After *Aristobulus* was settled in the Kingdom of *Judæa*, did he wage any Wars?

A. He this Year march'd against the *Itureans*, subdued the greatest Part of that Country, and obliged the People to become Proselytes to the Jewish Religion; but soon after died, having reigned only one Year. 3898:

Q. How did the two Brothers, *Antiochus* *Gripus* and *Antiochus* *Cyzicenus* (the former now reigning at *Antioch*, the other at *Damascus*) agree about the Division of that Empire?

A. They continually harassed each other, and some of the neighbouring Cities taking Advantage of their Quarrel, regain'd their former Liberties, but others fell into the Hands of Tyrants. Thus stood Affairs in the neighbouring Countries when *Alexander Jannæus* succeeded his Brother *Aristobulus* in the Kingdom of *Judæa*.

Q. What famous Men were born into the World about this Time?

A. *Cneius Pompeius Magnus*, and *Marcus Tullius Cicero*, two noble Romans, who, the one for War, and the other for Letters, were the most eminent Persons which that City ever produced.

Q. How did *Alexander Jannæus* procure his Enlargement?

A. On the Death of *Aristobulus*, *Salome* his Wife discharged all his three Brothers out of Prison. 3899

Q. What became of the other two?

A. *Alexander* put his next Brother to Death on his endeavouring to supplant him; but *Absalom*, the youngest, lived a private Life quietly under him.

Q. What was the first War *Alexander* engaged in?

A. He

Ans A. He went against the People of *Ptolemais*, whom *Mun.* he shut up within the Walls of their City, and then besieged them.

Q. Did they seek for any Relief on this Occasion?

A. They sent first to *Lathyrus*, who reign'd in *Cyprus*; but when they had considered that by this Step they might disoblige *Cleopatra* his Mother, and bring all the Forces of *Egypt* upon them, they countermanded his coming, and resolved to stand alone.

Q. Had *Lathyrus* provided for their Assistance?

A. He had landed his Army in *Phœnicia*, but they taking no Notice of him, he there received Messengers from *Zoilus* Prince of *Dora*, and from the *Garonus* also, to desire his Help; for *Alexander* lay before *Ptolemais* but with one Part of his Army, the other he had sent to waste the Territories of *Zoilus* and *Gaza*.

Q. What Course did *Alexander* take now *Lathyrus* had join'd *Zoilus*?

3900 A. He immediately raised the Siege of *Ptolemais*, and marched with his whole Army against them; but being vanquished in Battle, *Lathyrus* pursued the Advantage, destroying, ravaging, and plundering all the Country in a lamentable Manner.

Q. What Opposition did *Alexander* make against him after this Defeat?

A. He must have been absolutely undone if *Cleopatra* had not come to his Relief; but the hearing of *Lathyrus's* Success, sent an Army into *Phœnicia*, made him quit the Siege of *Ptolemais*, and retire into *Cœle-Syria*.

Q. Who had the Command of *Cleopatra's* Army?

3901 A. *Anandus* and *Chalkias*, two Jews, the former with Part of her Army invested *Ptolemais*, and the latter she sent in Pursuit of *Lathyrus*.

Q. What Success had *Chalkias* in his Expedition?

A. He

A. He lost his Life in it, of which *Lathyrus* taking Advantage, marched with all his Forces into *Egypt*, hoping by his Mother's Absence, to reinstate himself in that Kingdom.

Q. Had this Scheme the desir'd Effect?

A. No, *Cleopatra* hasten'd Part of her Army after him, and with this Reinforcement the *Egyptians* drove him out of their Country, and forced him back again into *Palestine*, where he took up his Winter Quarters at *Gaza*.

Q. Did *Ananias* take the City of *Ptolemais* during this Invasion of *Egypt* by *Lathyrus*?

A. Yes, and *Alexander* King of *Judas* came thither with Presents to gain *Cleopatra's* Favour, where he had certainly been seized, and also his Kingdom, had not *Ananias* dissuaded her from it. The next Spring *Lathyrus* returned into *Cyprus*, and the Queen into *Egypt*.

Q. What did she do on her Return into *Alexandria*?

A. Being informed that *Lathyrus* was endeavouring at a Treaty with *Cynicus*, in order to make a second Invasion into *Egypt*, she gave *Selenus* his Daughter to his Brother *Grypus*, and thereby this Project became abortive.

Q. What was the Roman Army doing at this Time?

A. This Year *Marinus* being in his 5th Consulship, put an End to the *Cymbrian* War, with the total Destruction of those People; and for this he was reckoned the third Founder of that City, *Romulus* and *Camillus* being the two former.

Q. Who were these People called *Cymbrians*?

A. They came from *Cymbria Chersonesus*, which now contains *Frisland*, *Shetwick*, and *Holstein*.

Q. Who took Possession of this Country when they deserted it?

A. The

Anno Mun. *A.* The *Assa*, a People coming from between the *Euxine* and *Caspian* Seas; from these People came those *Angli*, who with the *Saxons*, expelled the *Britons*, and made themselves Masters of this Part of *Great Britain* now called *England*.

Q. Whither went Alexander after he had recruited his Army?

A. He went from *Jerusalem* to *Gadara*; took that City, and after it *Amathus* beyond *Jordan* also: This was the strongest Fortrefs in those Parts, and where *Theodorus*, Son of *Zeno Cotylas* Prince of *Philadelphia* laid up his Treasure; but on his Return Home *Theodorus* fell upon him, retook all the Riches, and also Alexander's Baggage.

Q. How was he receiv'd at *Jerusalem* after this Loss?

A. It was pleasing enough to the *Pharisees*, who hated him and all his Family ever since their Quarrel with *Hyrcaus*, and they made this the Handle for raising all those intestine Troubles which happened in his Reign.

Q. Was Alexander prevented hereby from prosecuting this War?

3904 *A.* No, for the next Spring being inform'd that *Lathyrus* was departed from *Gaza*, he marched into those Parts; and after he had taken *Raphia* and *Antbydon*, which lay near it, he besieged that City.

Q. What Success did he meet with herein?

3906 *A.* *Apollodotus*, Governor of the Place, making a very valiant Defence, thereby gain'd great Credit from the *Gazzeans*; which his own Brother *Lysimachus* envying; slew him, and deliver'd the City to Alexander.

Q. How did Alexander revenge himself upon the *Gazzeans* for their joining *Lathyrus* in the late Battle against him?

A. He gave all his Soldiers License to plunder and destroy them, which produced a horrid Scene of Barbarity; but the *Gazzeans* standing to their Defence, he lost near as many of his own Men as he slew of the Enemy

nemy in this *Carnage*; however he had his Will so *Anna* far as to leave this ancient and famous City in utter *Mun.* Ruin and Desolation.

Q. *How went on Matters with the two Brothers in Syria?*

A. This Year *Grypus* died; and left behind him five Sons, the eldest, call'd *Seleucus*, succeeded him, but all the rest reigned, or attempted to reign, in their Turns.

Q. *What were the Names of the other four?*

A. (2) *Antiochus*, (3) *Philip*, (4) *Demetrius Eucærus*, and (5) *Antiochus Dionysius*.

Q. *Did Ptolemy Apion still reign in Cyrene?*

A. He died this Year without Issue, and by Will 3908. gave his Kingdom to the *Romans*, who instead of accepting of it themselves, gave all the Cities their Liberties, and thereby fill'd the Country with Tyrants, who could not be compos'd till it was at length reduced to a Roman Province.

Q. *What other memorable Transactions happened about this Time?*

A. *Anna* the Prophetess, mentioned *Luke xi. 36.* 3909. was married to her Husband, and from this Time lived with him seven Years.—*Tygranes*, Son of *Tygranes*, being an Hostage in *Parthia*, on his Father's Death was settled by them in the Kingdom of *Armenia*.

Q. *Did the Faction still continue at Jerusalem?*

A. Great Troubles were created there, insomuch as *Alexander* durst not trust his Person with the *Jews*, but called in 6000 Mercenaries from *Pisidia* and *Cilicia*, for his Body-Guard: After this he made War upon 3910. the *Arabians*, and forced the Inhabitants of *Moab* and *Gilead* to become Tributaries to him.

Q. *How long did Seleucus govern in Syria?*

A. On his Father's Death, his Uncle *Cyniscus* took Possession of *Antioch*, and he marched against him, gave him Battle, took him Prisoner, and put him to Death: But he had a Son call'd *Antiochus Eusebes* left in *Antioch*, who escaped to *Aradus*, and was there crown'd King.

This

Anno This Son soon after gained a great Victory over *Seleucus*, *Mun-* and drove him to *Mopsuestia*, a City in *Cicilia*, where he having oppressed the Inhabitants by unreasonable
 3911 Exactions, they surrounded his House, set it on Fire, and burnt him in it.

Q. Did any of Seleucus's Brothers endeavour to revenge this Murder?

A. Antiochus and *Philip*, who were Twins, marched directly to *Mopsuestia*, and rased that City to the Ground, then sacrificed all the People they found in it to his Ghost; but on their Return, *Eusebes* put them to the Rout, and *Antiochus* endeavouring to escape over a River, was drowned. *Philip* stood his Ground, and the Contest was now between these two.

Q. What was acted upon this Occasion?

3912 *A. Seleus*, the late Wife of *Grypus*, on her Husband's Death, had seized Part of his Dominions, and *Eusebes*, to strengthen his Interest, married her: This Step offended *Lathyrus*, whose Wife she had first been, and he sent to *Cnidus*, where *Demetrius Eucharus* was placed for Education, fetch'd him from thence, and made him King of *Damascus*. In the Interim *Philip* drew *Eusebes* to a decisive Battle, and having vanquished him, he was forced to flee into *Parthia*; whereon he and *Demetrius* became possessed of the whole Empire. About this Time *Alexander* lost most of his Army in an unsuccessful Expedition into *Arabia*, which produced a Civil War in *Jerusalem* and *Judea*.

3913 *Q. What Design was Mithridates Eupator King of Pontus now carrying on?*

A. Ariarathes, King of *Cappadocia*, dying, he caused his two Sons (tho' both born of *Laodice* his own Sister) to be murdered, and placed a Minor Son of his own, over that Kingdom; of which *Nicomedes*, King of *Bithynia*, taking Umbrage, suborned a Youth to personate a third Son of *Ariarathes*, and having prevailed with *Laodice* to own him, he sent them both to *Rome* to claim the Kingdom.

Q. How did the Senate decree in this Matter?

A. They

A. They condemned the Claims of both, and ordered *Antiochus* the *Cappadocians* to chuse such a King as they liked; *Mun.* and they elected *Ariobarhanes*, a noble *Cappadocian*. This *Mithridates* resenting, resolved on a War against the Ro- 3914
mans. In order hereto, he made an Alliance with *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, who expelled *Ariobarhanes* out of *Cappadocia*, and brought in again the Son of *Mithridates*; and *Nicomedes* dying about the same Time, *Mithridates* excluded his Son, and seized the Kingdom of *Bithynia* to himself.

Q. Where did these two deprived Kings seek Relief?

A. They went to *Rome*, where their Restoration was decreed, and *Manius Aquilius*, with *Marcus Attinus*, were sent to see it executed.

Q. Did *Mithridates* and his Allies let them have quiet Possession?

A. No; on which all the *Roman* Forces in those Parts were formed into three Armies, under the Command of *L. Cassius*, *Manius Aquilius*, and *Quintus* 3915
Oppius, who had all, through their ill Conduct, the Misfortune to be vanquished, the two last being taken Prisoners, were cruelly tortured to Death. After this Victory all the Cities of *Lesser Asia*, several in *Greece*, and all the Islands of the *Egean* Sea, except *Rhodus*, revolted to *Mithridates*.

Q. What is recorded of the Birth, &c. of this famous Person?

A. He was the sixth and last of the *Mithridatic* Race. And it is very remarkable, that at the Time of his Birth there appeared a great Comet for seventy Days together, also another at his Accession to the Crown. The Tails of both were so large, as to take up one Quarter of the Hemisphere. These seemed to portend that he should be a great Incendiary in the World, and so he proved.

Q. How did *Cleopatra* manage the Kingdom of *Egypt*?

A. She began to grow weary of her Son *Alexander*, and form'd a Scheme to take him off; of which he being apprised, served her in the same Kind: However, the

Anno the *Alexandrians* would not suffer the *Parrials* to reign over them; but sent for *Ptolemy Lathyrus* from *Cyprus*, and restored him to the Kingdom.

Q. Did Alexander make any Attempt to recover the Crown of Egypt again?

A. He got some Ships together; but being met by his Brother's Admiral at Sea, he perished in the Action.

Q. Did the Civil War continue in Judaea?

A. *Alexander Jannæus*, finding that he could not by his Arms put an End to it, (tho' he had the better in all Encounters) offered to grant them any Thing they could in Reason desire.

Q. What Answer did the Malecontents make to this his Goodness and Condescension?

A. They told him, unless he would cut his own Throat, they would not be at Peace with him; and because they wanted Forces to act up to their Anger, they sent to *Demetrius Eucharus*, who then reigned at *Damascus*, to come to their Assistance, and on coming to a Battle, *Alexander* was routed: But in this distressed Condition, 6000 of those very Men who had called in this foreign Enemy, went over to *Alexander*, and *Demetrius* fearing all the rest would follow, left *Judea*, and marched against his Brother *Philip*, who beat his Army, took him Prisoner, and sent him as a Present to the King of *Parthia*, where he fell sick and died.

3916 Q. What farther Success had Mithridates against the Romans?

A. Finding that they and the *Italians* were dispersed thro' all the Provinces of *Lesser Asia*, he sent secret Orders to his Governors there to put them all to Death in one Day, and 80,000 of them, some say double that Number, were massacred at this Time in that Country.

Q. What was the next Exploit done by this King?

A. When *Cleopatra* went with an Army into *Pharnicia*, against *Lathyrus* her Son, she sent *Alexander* her Grandson with a great Sum of Money, her Jewels, and all her most precious Things, to *Cons*, to be reserved against all Events: *Mithridates* being informed of this

Treasure,

Treasure, now sent thither and took it. In this Year *Anna* the Prophetess became a Widow, and served God *Mun.* in the Temple for the Space of Eighty-four Years, with Fasting and Prayer Night and Day.

Q. Whither did Mithridates carry on the War, now he had made himself Master of Lesser Asia.

A. He sent Archilaus, one of his Generals, into Greece, who seized Athens; but this Place was retaken by Sylla the Roman General, about the latter End of the Year. 3917

Q. Did Antiochus Eusebes return any more into Syria?

A. On the Death of Demetrius Eucharus, the Parthians brought him back, and gave him some Part of his Dominions. While Philip was employed in suppressing this Rival, Dionysius, the youngest of the five Sons of Grypus, seized Damascus, and made himself King of Coele-Syria.

Q. Had Alexander Jannæus as yet put an End to the intestine Troubles in Judæa.

A. He this Year gave his Enemies such a terrible Blow, as soon brought that Disturbance to a Conclusion; for having cut off the major Part of them in Battle, he drove the rest into Salamis, and the next Year taking that City, he carried 800 of the Malecontents to Jerusalem, and ordered them to be crucified all in one Day, and caused their Wives and Children to be slain before their Faces, as they were dying on the Crosses. 3918

Q. How did the Cause of Mithridates go on in Greece?

A. This Year was as fatal to him as to the Rebel Jews, for though he had three Armies there, of above 100,000 Men each, under the Command of Archilaus, Taxiles, and Dorylaus, three of his Generals, yet Sylla with a Roman Army of 15,000 Horse, and the like Number of Footmen, vanquished them all in three several Battles, in which Victories he slew 160,000 of his Soldiers, and forced the Remainder to leave Greece.

Q. Had Mithridates any better Fortune in Asia?

A. No; Fimbria, who commanded another Roman Army there, vanquished the rest of his Forces, and pursued 3919

Antioch pursued them as far as *Pergamus*, where the King resided, and having driven them from thence to *Patara*, a maritime City of *Ætolia*, blocked him up, but having no Ships, *Mithridates* escaped to *Mitylene*, and sent to his General *Archelaus*, to make Peace on any Terms.

Q. Did Sylla agree with *Archelaus* on Terms of Peace?

A. Yes; but on the following very hard Conditions.
1st. That *Nicomeds* should be restored to the Kingdom of *Bithynia*, and *Ariobarzanes* to that of *Cappadocia*, and that every Thing else which had been taken from the Romans since the War began, should be restored.
2d. That *Mithridates* should be content with his original Kingdom of *Pontus*. 3d. That he should pay 300 Talents to the Romans, for the Expences of the War.
4th. And that he should give them seventy of his Ships.

Q. Were these Articles ratified on both Sides?

A. *Sylla* and *Mithridates* met soon after at *Troas* in *Asia*, and the Peace was published and declared thereon. Thus ended the first *Mithridatic War*.

Q. Have you any Thing more memorable of *Sylla*?

A. It was by the Means of this Roman General, that the Works of *Aristotle* were preserved, and afterwards published, for the Benefit of the learned World.

Q. How was *Dionysius King of Damascus* employed during this Time?

A. He marched with an Army against *Aretas*, King of *Arabia Petraea*, who slew him and most of his Forces. On this Victory, *Aretas* became King of *Caleb-Syria*, and commenced a War against *Alexander King of Judea*; but a Peace was soon concluded between them.

3920 Q. Did *Alexander* endeavour to enlarge his Dominions after this Peace?

A. He went to the Borders of *Arabia*, and reduced those Cities, which had revolted from him during the War he had with his Rebel Subjects. On his Return, the Syrians, grown weary of the continual Wars made in their Country, by the Princes of the Race of *Solucus*, called in *Tigranes*, King of *Armenia*, to reign over them, who

who slew *Philip*, and forced *Eusebes* to flee into *Cilicia*, *Antioch* where he died: Thus the *Syrians* were delivered from *Mun.* their former Miseries and settled in Peace.

Q. How far did Alexander extend his Conquests beyond 3922 the River Jordan?

A. He took *Gaulana* and *Selucia*, and several other Cities in those Parts this Year, and the next he made himself Master of the Valley of *Antiochus*, and of the strong Fortresses of *Gamala*; then returned to *Jerusalem*, after he had been absent three Years on this Expedition.

Q. How was he received there?

A. With great Acclamations, on Account of his Successes; but soon after his Return, being at full Ease, he gave himself up to Luxury and Drunkenness, whereby he contracted a *Quartan Ague*, which he could never get rid of while he lived.

Q. What was done in Egypt about this Time?

A. The *Thebans* having rebelled against *Ptolemy Lagarchus*, he laid Siege to *Thebes* in *Upper Egypt*, and after three Years took it; then from being the wealthiest City in his Dominions, he reduced it to so low a Condition, as it never more made any Figure; but soon after this he died, and was succeeded by his own legitimate Child *Cleopatra*, whose proper Name was *Berenice*. And here it must be noted, that as all the *Males* of this Family had the common Name of *Ptolemy*, so all the *Females* had that of *Cleopatra*. 3923

Q. How long did Cleopatra Berenice reign in Egypt? 3924

A. *Alexander* (the Son of *Alexander* who murdered his Mother) the same who was sent to *Cass* to be educated, and was taken with the Treasure by *Mithridates*, having found Means to escape from him, fled to *Sylla*, who took him to *Rome*, and now sent him to take Possession of the Kingdom of *Egypt*, as next Heir.

Q. How was he received by the Alexandrians?

A. They, unwilling to displease *Sylla*, and *Cleopatra* having sat only six Months on the Throne, agreed that *Alexander* should marry her, and that they should reign together; but he, either not liking the Lady, or a Partner

Anno Partner in the Government, put her to Death nineteen
Man. Days after their Marriage.

Q. What Course did Alexander Jannæus take to get off his Distemper?

A. He thought to alleviate it by Stirring and Exercise, and accordingly this Year marched again over Jordan, and besieged *Ragaba*, a Castle in the Country of the *Gerassens*; but he found no Benefit by this, for his Fever growing to a greater Height, he died in the Camp, and by his Will bequeathed the Government of *Judea* to his Wife *Alexandra* during her Life, and after her Death
 3925 either to *Hircanus* or *Aristobulus*, one of his two Sons, which she thought most deserving.

Q. How did the new Queen extricate herself and Family from the Danger which threatened them, on Account of the Faction of the Pharisees?

A. By her Husband's Direction, she put the Administration of her Affairs into their Hands, and they destroy'd all those of the adverse Party, whom they most disliked; so that she permitted one Evil to prevent a worse.

Q. How long did the Peace continue between the Romans and Mithridates King of Pontus?

3928 *A.* This Year *Nicomedes*, King of *Bithynia*, dying, left the Roman People his Heirs, whereon that Country henceforth became a Roman Province. This gave *Mithridates* a Handle to revive the War, and he spent most Part of this Year in making Preparations for it; then seized *Paphlagonia* and *Bithynia*; on which the Provinces of *Lesser Asia*, being much oppressed by the Roman Usurers and Publicans, revolted to him. Thus began
 3929 the the third Mithridatic War.

Q. You mentioned but one before, when was the second?

A. On *Sylla's* Departure from the first War for *Italy*, he left the Government of *Asia* to *Muræna*, who renewed the War against *Mithridates* without a Cause, and continued it three Years, at the Expiration of which Term, *Sylla* (being Dictator at *Rome*, and misliking his Conduct) recalled him. This was called the second Mithridatic War.

Q. Who

Q. Who were now sent to engage with Mithridates? *Anno*

A. The Consuls for the Year, viz. *Lucius Lucullus, Mun.* who had for his Provinces, *Asia, Cilicia, and Cappadocia,* and *Marcus Cotta,* who had *Bithynia* and the *Propontis*.

Q. What Success had these two Generals against him?

A. *Marcus Cotta,* being unskilled in War, was vanquished both by Land and Sea, and the next Year *Mithridates,* flush'd with this Victory, laid Siege to *Cyzicus,* a City on the *Propontis*; but *Lucullus* forced him to raise the Siege, after he had lost the greatest Part of his Army before that Place.

Q. How did Alexandra quell the Rage of the Pharisees at Jerusalem, against the Partisans of the late King?

A. On their Complaint to her, she dispersed them thro' the Garrisons of the Kingdom, and thus put them out of the Reach of their Enemies. In this Year *Herod the Great,* who was afterwards King of *Judaea,* was born. 3932

Q. Whither did Mithridates go after he had been obliged to raise the Siege of Cyzicus?

A. He fled to *Nicomedia,* from thence by Sea to *Pontus,* leaving Part of his Fleet and 10,000 Men behind him, under the Command of three of his prime Generals. These *Lucullus* fell upon, and slew most of them, taking the three Generals Prisoners.

Q. What became of these Generals afterwards?

A. One poisoned himself, another was reserved for *Lucullus's* Triumph, and the third, called *Marcus Marius* a Roman Senator, who was sent to the Assistance of *Mithridates,* by *Sertorius* out of *Spain,* was put to Death. Then *Lucullus* marched into *Pontus,* to carry the War to the Enemies Door.

Q. What Opposition did Mithridates make against Lucullus after this Defeat?

A. This Year he took the Field again with another Army, and gained the better of him in two Battles, but in a third he was utterly routed, and forced to flee into *Armenia,* to pray the Protection of *Tigranes* his Son-in-Law.

P

Q. How

Ann

Mus.

Q. How did Alexander govern the Egyptians?
A. About this Time great Confusions arose among his People, on a Dislike they had to him; heretofore Seleus, who was Daughter to Ptolemy Physcon, having two Sons by Antiochus Eusebes, went to Rome to put in her Claim to that Kingdom, but, not succeeding in this Design, she set about enlarging her Dominions in Syria.

Q. What Success had she in this second Project?
A. Some Cities revolted to her, of which Tigranes

3934 *being informed, marched against her with an Army of 500,000 Men, and, having shut her up in Ptolemais, took the City, and Seleus Prisoner therein, whom he carried to Selucia, and put to Death. On his Return to Antioch he met Publius Clodius, who was sent thither by Lucullus, to demand Mithridates to be deliver'd to him.*

Q. What Answer did Tigranes give to this Message?

A. Much offended at the Freedom with which Clodius expressed himself, and also at Lucullus's Letter, which was only directed to King Tigranes, without styling him the King of Kings; a Title which he had assumed, and out of Pride affected; he expressed his Resentment, by sending a Letter back directed to Lucullus, without any other Title usually given to the Roman General, and also refused to deliver up Mithridates: On this Clodius declared War from the Romans against him.

Q. Where was Lucullus at this Time?

A. Having reduced most part of the Kingdom of Pontus, he returned into the Province of Proper Asia, and busied himself in reforming the Iniquity of the Usurers and Publicans, this gained him the Esteem of the Provincials to so great a Degree, that they instituted Games to his Honour called Lucullia: But soon after the Usurers supplanted him, and got another sent in his Stead, to reap the Honour of his Victories.

Q. Did Lucullus stay to prosecute the War against Tigranes?

A. He

A. He marched a great Length thro' *Armenia* with-
out any Opposition, and laid Siege to *Tigranocerta* the *Men.*
Royal City. A little before this Invasion *Alexandra*
Queen of *Judea* died.

Q. Who succeeded her in that Government?

A. A Dispute happened between the two Brothers on
her Death, for *Hyrcanus* being the Elder, took Possession
of the Throne, and joined with the *Pharisees*; hereon
Aristobulus adhered to his Father's Party, and they raised
two Armies, came to a decisive Battle near *Jericho*, where
Hyrcanus's Forces revolted, and he was forced to flee to
Jerusalem, and to come to Terms with his Brother,
which were, that *Aristobulus* should have the Crown and
High Priesthood, and *Hyrcanus* be contented to live a
private Life under him.

Q. How went on the War in *Armenia*?

A. *Tigranes* having sent *Mithridates* with 10,000 3935
Men to raise more Forces in *Pontus*, marched against
Lucullus, who lay before *Tigranocerta*, but was entirely
routed, with his whole Army, and forced to flee to
Mount *Taurus*, whither he ordered all his Forces to
come to him. In his Flight he met *Mithridates* coming
to his Relief, who finding him much dejected, comfort-
ed him, and they consulted about proper Operations
for carrying on the War.

Q. What was the Result of these Consultations?

A. They resolved to raise another Army with all
Speed, and to pray Assistance from the neighbouring
Nations. The Letter which *Mithridates* wrote to *Ar-*
saces King of *Parthia*, on this Occasion, is still ex-
tant in the Fragments of the *General History* of *Salust*,
Book IV.

Q. Did *Lucullus*, after this, make himself Master of
Tigranocerta?

A. Yes; and found in it vast Treasures, among which
were 8000 Talents of coined Money.

Q. How did *Tigranes* raise another Army?

A. He sent for *Megabates* with all his Forces out of
Syria; which Country being now left naked, *Antiochus*
Asiaticus,

Anno Asiaticus, whose Right it was, took Possession of some Mun. Part of it.

Q. Which Way did Mithridates and Tigranes march with their Armies?

A. They resolved to oppose *Lucullus*, who was going to besiege *Artaxata*, the ancient Metropolis of *Armenia*, where *Tigranes* had deposited his best Effects, and left his Wives and Children.

Q. What was the Consequence of this March?

3936 A. It occasioned another Battle, wherein *Lucullus* obtained a signal Victory over them, and had he after this proceeded to *Artaxata*, must have put an End to the War. It is to be remarked, that there were three Kings present in this Battle, of whom *Mithridates* behaved the worst.

Q. What occasioned that ill Conduct in *Lucullus*?

A. It was not his own Fault, for Winter coming on, and being snowy Weather, his Soldiers refused to follow him any farther, so that he was forced to go back Southward into *Mesopotamia*, and take up his Winter-quarters at *Nisibis*, where a Spirit of Mutiny broke out in his Army.

Q. Did his Enemies make no Advantage of this?

3937 A. *Mithridates*, with 4000 of his own Forces, and 4000 more which he had from *Tigranes*, returned into *Pontus* at this Juncture, where he vanquished *Fabius*, and much distressed *Triarius* and *Sornatius*, two of *Lucullus*'s Lieutenants in those Parts.

Q. Could *Lucullus* prevail with his mutinous Army to go to their Relief?

A. They came, but it was too late, for before they arrived, *Mithridates* had routed *Triarius*, and thereby gave the Romans the most considerable Blow they had received for many Years: On *Lucullus*'s coming thither, the dead Bodies of the Slain lay in the Field of Battle, and because he would not stay to bury them, his Soldiers treated him with Insolence, and could not be persuaded to stir any farther.

Q. How

Q. How did the two confederated Kings act during Anno this Uncasiness among the Roman Soldiers? *Mur.*

A. Mithridates recovered Pontus, and Tigranes harassed Cappadocia; on which Occasion the People of Rome sent Pompey to manage this War, to whom Lucullus delivered the Army, and returned Home.

Q. How did Pompey manage, when he had taken the Command of the Army?

A. He first drew Phraates (who succeeded the Year before in the Kingdom of Parthia) into a Confederacy 3938 with him, then made an Offer of Peace to Mithridates, which he refused, but was soon after vanquished, and forced to flee Northward towards the Springs of the Euphrates for Safety: From hence he sent Messengers to Tigranes to desire Refuge in his Country, and to pray his Help.

Q. Did Tigranes grant his Father-in-Law's Request?

A. He denied him Relief, put his Ambassadors in Prison, and set a Price of an 100 Talents on his Head, in Case he was found in his Dominions.

Q. What was the Occasion of this Inveteracy?

A. Tigranes married Cleopatra, Daughter of Mithridates; by her had three Sons, two of whom he put to Death on slight Occasions; the third, whose Name was Tigranes, not thinking himself safe, fled to Phraates King of Parthia, married one of his Daughters, and was brought back into Armenia with an Army, where he laid Siege to Artaxata, but being driven hence by Tigranes his Father, he fled to Pompey. This Rebellion of the Son, Tigranes pretended was occasioned at the Instigation of Mithridates, and was the Cause of his present ill Treatment; but the true Reason of it was, to pave a Way for his own Reconciliation with the Romans.

Q. How does this appear?

A. Because he soon after deliver'd those Ambassadors to Pompey, and, in a mean and abject Manner, resigned both himself and his Kingdom into his Hands.

Arms
Mun.

Q. How was he used by Pompey on this Occasion ?

A. He heard the Cause between him and his Son, decreed upon it, that the Father should yield all his Conquests on this Side the *Euphrates* to the *Romans*, and pay them 6000 Talents for making War upon them without a Cause ; that he should reign in his paternal Kingdom of *Armenia the Greater*, and his Son in the Provinces of *Gordena* and *Sophena*.

Q. Was this Decree agreed to and ratified by them ?

A. *Tigranes* the Father joyfully accepted of it, but the Son, having greater Expectations, was highly displeased, and attempted to solicit the Nobility of *Armenia* to renew the War, which being discovered to *Pompey*, he put him among those he had reserved for his Triumph ; and whereas the other Captives, when they had born their Parts in that Show, were usually released and sent Home, this Prince was kept behind in Prison.

Q. When Pompey had settled Affairs in Armenia, did he pursue Mithridates ?

A. Yes ; but on his coming to the River *Cyrus*, he was opposed by the *Albanians* and the *Iberians*, who were that King's Confederates, the former of these he vanquished, and forced to sue for Peace ; which being granted, he winter'd among them.

Q. Whither did he march the next Spring ?

A. Against the *Iberians*, a warlike Nation, which had never yet submitted to any Superior ; but he soon mastered them also, and then reduced the People of *Colchis*.

Q. Where was Mithridates during these Wars ?

A. He winter'd at *Discurias*, a Place upon the *Euxine Sea* ; and the next Spring he went to the *Cimmerian Bosphorus*, which is now the Country of *Crim-Tartary*, but then was a Province of the Kingdom of *Mithridates*.

Q. Did Pompey follow him thus far Northward ?

A. He found it impracticable, therefore led his Army back into the Southern Parts, subdued *Darius* King of *Media* : *Antiochus*, King of *Commagena*, reduced *Cal-*
Syria.

Syria and Damascus, and made himself Master of all *Arms* the Syrian Empire. Here ended the Empire of the *Se-Misq.* *Lucide* in Asia, which had lasted two hundred and fifty eight Years.

Q. While these Conquests were gaining by the Romans, what was doing in Egypt and Judaea?

A. The Alexandrians in Egypt, grown weary of their King, drove him out of the Kingdom, and called in Ptolemy Auletes, a Bastard Son of Ptolemy Lathyrus; and Antipater, Father of Herod the Great, prevailed with Aretas, King of Arabia Petraea, to restore Hyrcanus to the Crown of Judaea, who forced Aristobulus into the Mountain of the Temple, and there besieged him; but he bribing Scourus, who had the Command of the Roman Army at Damascus, for 4000 Talents to come to his Assistance; Aretas was obliged to raise the Siege, and Aristobulus pursuing him to Papyrion, slew most of his Army.

Q. Where was Pompey at this Time?

A. He lay at Damascus, where there came to his Levee twelve Kings, and were all seen attending on him at the same Time.

Q. What particular Business occasioned this grand Interview?

A. The Kings of the neighbouring Countries, and especially of Egypt and Judaea, reigned by the immediate Expulsion of their Predecessors, and thought it their Interest to get the Roman Power on their Side, for maintaining these Usurpations.

Q. What Presents were made to Pompey on this Occasion?

A. He had a Crown of Gold from Egypt, of the Value of 4000 Pieces of that Metal, and a Vine of Gold from Judaea, of the Value of 4000 Talents. This was afterwards deposited in the Temple of Jupiter, in the Capitol at Rome, as the Gift of Alexander King of the Jews; for though Aristobulus presented it, they would not own his Title, but put the Name of his Father upon it.

Q. Whither did Mithridates go from Crim Tartary?

P 4

A. Into

Anno A. Into the Kingdom of *Bosphorus*, where the *Roman*
Mun. Army, by reason of the barbarous *Scythians*, and several
 ~~~~~ Deserts, could not pursue him.

Q. *What did Pompey do in this Case?*

A. He returned into *Pontus*, to reduce some Fortresses which held out for *Mithridates* there; among these Places, one called *Kauri*, that is *Newcastle*, was the strongest; and here the King had laid up his Treasure, and most of his valuable Effects.

Q. *Did Pompey make himself Master of this Place?*

A. Yes soon, and found in it, among other Things, the private Memoirs of *Mithridates*, and his Medicinal Commentaries, which he ordered *Lenæus*, a learned *Grammarian*, to translate into *Latin*, and afterwards published.

Q. *Had this Prince any Skill in the Practice of Physic?*

A. It is to be remarked of him, that he was the Author of that excellent *Alexipharmical Medicine*, which, from his Name, is now called *Mithridate*, and which hath been ever since of so great Use among Physicians; and is so to this Day.

Q. *Was no Care taken to prevent Mithridates's Return into Pontus?*

A. *Pompey* stationed the *Roman Navy* in such a Manner, as to hinder him from being supplied with Provisions, &c. then marched into *Cæle-Syria*, with Design to carry his Victories as far as the *Red-Sea*.

Q. *Did he proceed on this Expedition?*

A. No; while he was there *Mithridates* sent to him Ambassadors, with Proposals of Peace, which being refused, he again made Preparations for War with great Vigour. This hasten'd *Pompey* back into *Pontus*.

Q. *How did he act on his Arrival there?*

A. He first settled the Dominions of *Mithridates* into Provinces, if the War had been at an End, and gave all the *Lesser Armenia* to *Deiostorus*, with the Title of King, who was a Prince of the *Galatians*, and the same in whose Behalf *Cicero* made an Oration before *Julius Cæsar*,

*Cesar*, which is now extant under the Title, *Pro Rege Amaseniensi*.

*Q. Was any other Person preferred at this Time?*

*A. Yes; Archilans* was made High-Priest of the Moon, the great Goddess of the *Comanians* in *Pontus*, and had the Sovereign Authority over the Inhabitants in that Place. This Person was the Son of *Archilans*, who commanded *Mithridates's* Forces against the *Romans*, during his first War, but now had revolted to their Interest.

*Q. What was done in Syria during Pompey's Absence?*

*A. Sretas* took the Advantage of it, and made great Depredations upon several Parts of that Country. This called *Pompey* back; and in his Way thither he marched by the Place where the Bodies of the *Romans* lay dead, which had been slain in the Defeat of *Triarius*, and buried them with great Solemnity, which much ingratiated him with the Army, whose greatest Disgust against *Lucullus* was occasioned by his Omission hereof.

*Q. Was Mithridates as yet returned into Pontus?*

*A. No; but he had resolved to make a desperate Expedition into Italy itself, and assault the Enemy at their own Doors. This being a March of above 2000 Miles, terrified his Army, so as they conspired against him, and made his Son Pharnaces their King; whereby finding himself deserted by all, and his own Son not to be prevailed upon to let him escape, he retired to his own Apartment, and after he had given Poison to his Wives, Concubines, and Daughters, he took a Dose himself, which not operating, he had Recourse to his Sword; but failing with that also, he called in a Gallic Soldier, who had newly broken into his House, to dispatch him. At his Death ended the third Mithridatic War, which had continued twenty-seven Years.*

*Q. Whither did Pompey march after the Death of this King, who, next to Hannibal, was the most dangerous Enemy the Romans ever had?*

*Ann* A. He went directly to *Damascus*, on the Expedition  
*Mus.* he had before projected against the *Arabians*. Here  
 the Cause of *Hyrcanus* and *Aristobulus* was brought to a  
 Hearing, and they both appeared before him; but *Pompey*  
 would not at present determine the Controversy.

Q. What Success had he against *Aretas* in *Arabia*?

A. He took *Petra* the Metropolis of this Kingdom,  
 and him in that City, whom he put into Custody; but,  
 on his Submission, released him, and returned to *Dama-*  
*scus* again, where he heard that *Aristobulus* was ma-  
 king Preparations for War at *Jerusalem*, towards which  
 Place he marched, and encamped at *Jericho*, where he  
 had the first News of the Death of *Mithridates*, which  
 he communicated to his Army from a Tribunal made of  
*Pack-Saddles* heaped one upon another, on which he  
 ascended.

Q. Have you any Thing remarkable of the City of  
*Jericho*?

A. *Josephus* says, it was famous for producing that  
 Unguent which our Apothecaries call *Balm of Gilead*.

Q. What Account have you of this Balm?

A. *Mr. Ray* tells us, it is a Distillation from the  
*Balsam Tree*, a Shrub which never grows higher than  
 three or four Foot: About a Foot from the Ground it  
 spreads into many small Branches, of the Thickness of a  
 Goose-quill; from Incisions made into these Branches,  
 the Balsam distils in the Months of *June*, *July*, and  
*August*.

Q. Was this Shrub the natural Product of *Judaea*?

A. No; it is most probable that these Plants were  
 originally brought hither with other valuable Presents  
 out of *Arabia the Happy*, by the Queen of *Sheba*, when  
 she paid a Visit to King *Salomon*, and were thence for-  
 ward propagated here; for our Physicians, in their Pre-  
 scriptions, call it *Balsamum e Mecca*.

Q. Whither did *Pompey* go from *Jericho*?

394<sup>1</sup> A. To *Jerusalem*, where he put *Aristobulus* in Chains,  
 and laid Siege to the Temple, wherein his Friends had  
 secured themselves, which he took after three Months,  
 and



and it is reckoned no less than 3000 Jews were slain therein. *Ann. Mun.*

*Q. Did Pompey take a View of the Temple after he had made himself Master of it?*

*A. Yes; and entered into the Holy Place, and into the Holy of Holies, which was a Profanation offered to the Jewish Religion, and to the God they worshipped; accordingly he never prospered afterwards, tho' he diminished no Part of the Utensils of the Temple, or took any Riches out of the Treasury.*

*Q. To whom was the Government of Judæa now given?*

*A. Pompey restored Hyrcanus to the Office of High-Priest, and made him Prince of the Country, paying Tribute to the Romans, but would not allow him to wear a Diadem: Aristobulus, with his two Sons and Daughters, he carried to Rome, to be led before him in his Triumph.*

*Q. After Pompey had settled Matters in Jerusalem, did he immediately return to Rome?*

*A. No; he went again into Pontus, and took all the remaining Fortresses and Castles there, in which he found vast Riches, especially at Telaura, which was the Store-house of the late King; herein were 2000 Cups made of the Onyx Stone, set in Gold, with such a vast Quantity of all Sorts of Plate, Household Goods, &c. that the Questor was thirty Days in taking an Inventory of them.*

*Q. How did Pharnaces, Son of Mithridates, behave himself after his Father's Death?*

*A. He sent his Body to Pompey, who was now at Amisus in Pontus, with many Gifts to gain his Favour; the Gifts were accepted, but the Corps of the King honourably buried. Henceforth Pharnaces was declared a Friend and Ally of the Roman People, and appointed King of Bosphorus. In this Year Octavius Caesar was born of Attia Daughter of Julia, who was Sister of Julius Caesar, and Wife of Octavius.*

*Q. Whither did Pompey go from Pontus?*

*A. He*

*Ann.* *A.* He wintered at *Ephesus*, where he distributed  
*Mun.* 16,000 Talents among his victorious Officers and Sol-  
 diers, and reserved 20,000 more to be carried into  
 3943 the publick Treasury at *Rome*, on the Day of his Tri-  
 umph: Next Spring he went to *Brundisium*; and so  
 on to *Rome*, where, in an Oration to the Senate, he told  
 them, he had waged War with twenty-two Kings; on  
 this a Triumph was decreed him, and for his wonderful  
 Success he had the Name of *Magnus*, i. e. *The Great*.  
 But after these great Honours, he died by murderous  
 Hands in a strange Land, where he wanted the Honour  
 of a Funeral.

## C H A P. IV.

Pompey, Crassus, and Julius Cæsar, engross  
 the Roman State; Diodorus Siculus;  
 Clodius; Cicero banished Rome; Cato;  
 Aristobulus and Antigonus kept Prisoners  
 at Rome; Crassus plunders the Temple; The  
 Civil War between Cæsar and Pompey;  
 Battle of Pharsalia; Pompey flees into  
 Egypt, there slain; Cæsar in Love with  
 Cleopatra, enters into a dangerous War  
 for her Sake; His Decree in Favour of the  
 Jews; His Motto; Reforms the Roman  
 Calendar; Murdered in the Senate; The  
 Julian Year; Leap Year; Gregorian Year;  
 New and Old Style, &c.

*Ann.* **W**HO managed the Roman State after Pompey's  
*Mun.* late wonderful Successes?

*A.* He, Crassus and Julius Cæsar, engrossed the whole  
 3944 Power of it, and entered into a Confederacy to support  
 each

each others Pretensions, which was the original Cause of *Anto* those Civil Wars that followed afterwards, and at length *Mun* ended in the Destruction of the old Roman Government. At this Time flourished *Diodorus Siculus*, the famous Greek Historian.

Q. What have you memorable of him?

A. He was Author of the General History called his *Bibliotheca*, which he was thirty Years in collecting and writing; it consisted of forty Books, of which only fifteen are remaining, excepting some Fragments and Abstracts preserved in other Authors. This Year *Lentulus Marcellinus* succeeded *Marcus Philippus* in the Government of Syria, and the Arabs, a thievish Sort of People much infested that Province, during their Governments.

Q. Who were the Consuls of Rome Year?

3945

A. *Julius Caesar*, who forced *Bibulus* his Collegue, to quit to him the whole Administration: This Power he artfully managed, for the Advancement of his own Interest, by raising vast Sums of Money from admitting foreign States into Alliance with the Romans: At this time he extorted from *Ptolemy Auletes* 6000 Talents, for confirming him in the Crown of Egypt, now also procur'd a Decree of the Roman People to be made Governor of *Illyricum* and both the Gauls, when the Year of his Consulship should be expired: Hence may be dated the Original of *Julius Caesar's* Power, and from his entering on this Government, the History of his *Commentaries* begins.

Q. Who succeeded Julius Caesar as Consul at Rome?

3946

A. *Gabinus*, one of *Lucullus's* Lieutenants in the *Mithridatic* War, who by the Interest of *Clodius*, then Tribune of the People, had the Province of *Asia* assigned him.

Q. Give me the History of this Clodius?

A. He was of the noble Family of the *Claudii*, a young Person of great Abilities, but excessive lewd. *Lucullus* having married one of his Sisters, he accompanied him in his *Mithridatic* War, where it being discovered

*Ann.* covered he had corrupted his own Sister that General's Wife; he fled into *Cilicia*, and *Marcus Rex* then Governor of that Province, made him his Admiral, but being vanquished and taken Prisoner by the Pirates, he sent to *Ptolemy*, King of *Cyprus*, to ransom him, who being a fordid Prince, sent him only two Talents, which Sum the Pirates despising, released him for nothing.

*Q.* Did he follow his lowd Way of living after this?

*A.* On his coming to *Rome*, he corrupted two more of his own Sisters, and also *Pompeia*, *Cesar's* Wife, for these Crimes being brought to public Trial, *Cicero* was one of the Evidences against him, but he brib'd the Judges and escaped the Punishment which he deserved. After this he procured himself to be adopted by a *Plebeian*, renounced his Nobility, and was chosen Tribune, and obtained the Province of *Syria*, by the Suffrage of the People.

*Q.* How did he behave himself in his Office?

*A.* He very much disturbed the *Roman* State, and made use of it only to revenge himself upon the King of *Cyprus*, and upon *Cicero*.

*Q.* How did he effect this?

*A.* He got a Decree to pass the People, for seizing *Cyprus*, and deposing *Ptolemy*; and it is here to be observed, that *Cato*, the justest Man in *Rome*, much against his Will, was sent to execute this unjust Sentence. After this, he caused *Cicero* to be banished *Rome* and *Italy*, whereon he went into *Greece*, but he was recalled at the End of sixteen Months.

*Q.* How did *Cato* manage Matters with *Ptolemy*?

*A.* On his Arrival at *Rhodes*, in his Way to *Cyprus*, he sent to him to persuade him quietly to recede, promising him the High Priesthood of *Venus* at *Parphor*, in lieu of *Cyprus*, on the Revenues whereof he might have been supported with Plenty and Honour; but he, who had reigned so long, could not bear being any Thing less than a King, thereon he poisoned himself; and *Cato* the next Year carried all his Riches to *Rome*, which amounted in the whole to such a Sum, as had scarce ever before been

brought

brought into the publick Treasury in any of the greatest *Ann*  
Triumphs. *Mun.*

*Q. Did not the Alexandrians endeavour to recover this*  
*Island again, as being an ancient Appendant of the King-* 3872  
*dom of Egypt?*

*A. They pressed Ptolemy Auletes their King, to de-*  
*mand it to be restored, and in case of Denial to de-*  
*clare War against the Romans, which he refusing to do,*  
*they expelled him out of the Kingdom.*

*Q. Whither did he go after he was driven out of*  
*Egypt?*

*A. He went to Rome to solicit the Senate for his*  
*Restoration, and, on coming to Rhodes met with Cato,*  
*who advised him to proceed no farther, but return a-*  
*gain into Egypt.*

*Q. Was Cato's Advice followed by him?*

*A. He would not be beaten off from his first Reso-*  
*lution; but soon found by fatal Experience, all to be*  
*true which Cato had told him; for after he had for a*  
*Year's Time solicited the leading Men of the Com-*  
*mon-wealth at Rome in this Matter, and expended vast*  
*Sums among them to obtain their Favour, he was forced*  
*to depart without Success; and when they found there*  
*was no more Money left, to be extorted from him,*  
*they trump'd up an Oracle out of the Sibylline Books,*  
*whereby it was pretended the Romans were forbidden*  
*to assist in this Case.*

*Q. What were the Words of this pretended Oracle?*

*A. If the King of Egypt comes to desire your Help, deny*  
*him not your Friendship, but aid him not with your Forces;*  
*If you do otherwise, you shall have Trouble and Danger.*

*Q. Did the Alexandrians attempt any thing farther to*  
*the Detriment of Ptolemy Auletes, during his Absence at*  
*Rome?*

*A. They set his Daughter Borence on the Throne,* 3947  
*and sent Ambassadors to Antiochus Asiaticus in Syria,*  
*who was, by his Mother Selene, the next Male-Heir, to*  
*invite him to marry and reign with her; but these Am-*  
*bassadors finding him dead, return'd without Success; on*  
*which*



*Anno* which they sent a second Embassy to *Seleucus* his Brother, who readily accepted the Offer.

*Q. How long did he reign in Egypt?*

*A.* Being a very base-spirited Man, as many of his Actions testify, particularly the robbing the Sepulchre of *Alexander* of the golden Case in which his Body was deposited, *Berenice* soon grew weary of him, and put him to Death; then married *Archelaus*, High-Priest of *Comana* in *Pontus*.

*Q. What became of Aristobulus and his two Sons, when Pompey carried Prisoners to Rome?*

*A.* His eldest Son, called *Alexander*, made his Escape, on the Journey, and returned into *Judea*, there seized several strong Castles, and ravaged the Country: On which *Hyrcaus* called *Gabinus* to his Assistance, who with *M. Antonius*, then General of his Horse, soon drove him into *Alexandrium*, and took him Prisoner therein; but by the Intercession of his Mother, he was dismissed with Pardon.

*Q. Which way did Gabinus march after this?*

*A.* Directly to *Jerusalem*, and restored *Hyrcaus* to the High-Priesthood; but altered the Civil Government there from a Monarchy to an Aristocracy.

*Q. How long was Aristobulus, and his Son Antigonus, kept Prisoners at Rome?*

*A.* Towards the End of the Year they escaped also, came into *Judaea*, and raised fresh Disturbances; but being overthrown and taken Prisoners by *Servilius* and *Antonius*, two of *Gabinus's* Generals, they were sent back to *Rome* again, where the Father was detained in Chains, but the Son dismissed.

*Q. Who was King of Parthia at this Time?*

3948 *A.* *Phraates* had governed there about twelve Years, but now his two Sons *Orodes* and *Mithridates* impiously became the Authors of his Death. *Orodes*, the Elder, first took Possession of the Throne, but was soon displaced by his Brother, and driven into Banishment.

*Q. How did Mithridates behave himself in the Government?*

*A.* He

*A.* He soon grew odious to the *Parthians* for his *Ann.* Cruelty, and they, with the Assistance of *Surenas*, who *Mun.* held the chiefest Place of Power in that Kingdom, brought *Orades* back again, and replaced him upon the Throne.

*Q.* Did *Mithridates* attempt any more to depose him?

*A.* He persuaded *Gabinus* to endeavour his Restoration, but that General meeting *Ptolemy Auletes* as he was going on this Design, he prevailed with him to desert *Mithridates*, and gave him 10,000 Talents to re-establish him in the Kingdom of *Egypt*. Hereon *Mithridates* surrendered himself to his Brother, who caused him to be slain.

*Q.* What Success had *Gabinus* in the Egyptian Expedition?

*A.* He sent the famous *Marc Antony* (who afterwards as *Triumvir*, governed one third Part of the Roman Empire) with a Body of Horse to seize the Passes, and open the Way for the Army to follow: This he not only effected, but also by the Assistance of *Hyrchanus* and *Antipater*, took *Pelusium* the Key of *Egypt* on that Side, and tho' *Archelaus* had contracted an intimate Friendship with both these two Generals, when he served under *Pompey* in the *Mithridatic* War, the Avarice of *Gabinus* took Place, and urged him to this Invasion, without any Regard to former Friendship.

*Q.* What Defence did *Archelaus* make against them?

*A.* He stood his Ground in several Conflicts, but at length was vanquished and slain, and *Auletes* restored to the Kingdom, who immediately put his Daughter *Berenice* to Death for usurping his Crown.

*Q.* Who managed Affairs in Syria while *Gabinus* was absent in Egypt?

*A.* Having entrusted that Government with *Sisenna* his Son, a raw Youth, great Disorders arose, of which *Alexander* the Son of *Aristobulus* taking Advantage, raised new Troubles in *Judea*, but on *Gabinus's* Return, they were soon suppressed.

*Q.* Who were Consuls at Rome for this Year?

*A.* *Pompey*

*Anno* A. *Pompy* and *Crassus*, who obtain'd a Decree of the *Mun. Roman* People, that *Spain* and *Africa* should be assigned to the former, and *Syria*, with the neighbouring Countries, to the latter, for the Term of five Years.

Q. Did *Gabinus* quietly resign *Syria* to *Crassus*?

3950 A. He refused at first, but by the Command of the People and Senate of *Rome*, he was forced to quit that Province: On his Return Home he had three Actions commenced against him, one for Treason, and two for Bribery and Corruption, for which he was sent into Banishment.

Q. How did *Crassus* govern the Province of *Syria*?

A. He set his Heart upon amassing Wealth, and was no sooner arriv'd there, but being inform'd of the Riches in the Temple of *Jerusalem*, he plundered it of 10,000 Talents, which amounts to above two Millions of our Money; then he pass'd over the *Euphrates*, invaded *Parthia*, and over-ran the greatest Part of *Mesopotamia*.

Q. Did he not make a second Expedition into *Parthia*?

3951 A. Yes, and met with a very warm Reception, for they, not expecting a War last Year, were unprovided, but now, tho' *Artabazes* King of *Armenia* had joined him, he was defeated by *Surenas* the *Parthian* General, who killed 20,000 of his Men, took 10,000 Prisoners, and slew him in the Pursuit, whose Head and Hand he sent to *Orades* his King. Such is the Reward of Sacrilege!

Q. How was this Present accepted by the King of *Parthia*?

A. *Artabazes* having received Advice from the *Roman* Camp, that *Crassus* must be inevitably undone, to make his Peace with *Orades*, gave his Sister in Marriage to his Son *Pacorus*; at this nuptial Feast the Present came, and much increased their Mirth; but soon after *Orades* envying *Surenas* the Glory of this Action, and jealous of his growing Interest, put him to Death, and the next Year made a second Invasion into *Syria*; but *Cassius*, *Crassus's* *Questor* forced him for this Time to re-

3952 turn with Disappointment.

Q. Why

Q. Who succeeded Pompey and Crassus as Consuls at Anno  
Rome? Mun.

A. M. Calphurnius Bibulus, who had Syria. and M. Tullius Cicero, who had Cilicia, assigned them for their 3953 Consular Provinces.

Q. Did they go immediately to their respective Governments?

A. Cicero soon went to his Charge, but Bibulus made some Delay, which was well for the Roman Interest in that Province, because the Parthians had made a second Invasion, which required an abler Man than him to withstand.

Q. How did Cassius manage against them?

A. He sent to Cicero about it, who was just arrived in the Eastern Part of his Province next Armenia, and with his Assistance they slew great Numbers of the Enemy, and drove them back over the Euphrates, but at the End of the Summer, the Parthian Army repassed, wintered at Cyrrhestica, and Bibulus taking Possession of the Province, Cassius returned to Rome.

Q. What Exploits were done by Cicero in Cilicia after the Parthians had departed from Syria?

A. He reduced all the barbarous People his Borders, who had made continual Depredations in those Countries; they called themselves Eleuthero-Cilices, i. e. The Free Cilicians, and pretended they had never lived under any Government.

Q. What Honours were conferred on Cicero for freeing these People from their constant Plague?

A. He was saluted Imperator by his Army, and, on his coming back to Rome, had a Triumph offered him; but (the Civil Wars between Caesar and Pompey being now ready to break out) he declined the latter, not thinking any publick Rejoicings proper, when the publick State of his Country was falling under so great Calamity.

Q. How long did Ptolemy Auletes live after his Restoration to the Crown of Egypt by Gabinus?

A. He

*Anno* A. He died this Year, leaving behind him two Sons *Mun.* and two Daughters; by his Will he bequeathed his Crown to the eldest of his Sons, and the eldest of his Daughters; and this his Daughter was the *Cleopatra* so infamous for her lascivious Amours with *M. Antony*.

Q. How did *Bibulus* behave in Syria?

3954 A. On his coming into that Province, he received ill News of the Death of his two Sons in *Egypt*, who were slain at *Alexandria* by the Roman Horsemen, whom *Gabinus* had left in that City for a Guard to *Ptolemy Auletes*. *Cleopatra*, who then with her Brother reigned there, sent the Murderers to *Bibulus*, but he returned them with this Message, That it belonged not to him, but to the Senate of Rome, to revenge this Wrong.

Q. Did the Parthians raise any more Troubles in Syria?

A. Having winter'd at *Cyrrhestica* on this Side the *Euphrates*, they laid Siege to *Antioch* a second Time, but, by the Management of *Bibulus*, an Insurrection was raised in *Parthia* at this Time, and their Army recalled to suppress it; this delivered that Province from a War which much distressed them. Soon after the War broke out between *Cæsar* and *Pompey*, and *Bibulus*, on his Return to Rome, joining the latter, was made Admiral of his Fleet, and died on Board.

Q. In what Manner, and about what Time, was this War begun?

3955 A. *Cæsar* passed the *Rubicon* in the Beginning of our December, *Pompey* left Rome, and landed his Forces on the other Side of the *Adriatic* in Greece the 3d of January following, and there raised an Army sufficient to withstand the Enemy.

Q. How much Time was allowed him to do this?

A. A whole Year; for as soon as *Pompey* was sailed from *Brundisium*, *Cæsar* returned thither, and in 60 Days, having reduced all Italy, came to Rome, where he released *Aristobulus* King of *Judea* out of Prison, and sent him with two Legions to promote his Interest in that



that Country ; and at the same Time *Alexander*, on the *Antony* Expectation of his Father's Return, raised Forces there *Mun.* to join him.

*Q. How did this political Scheme succeed ?*

*A. Pompey's Party* frustrated the Whole, by taking off *Aristobulus* by Poison on his Journey, and by getting *Alexander* put to Death at home. *Caesar*, in the Interim, passed thro' *Gallia* into *Spain*, that Province being in the Hands of *Pompey* ; and when he had settled it in his own Interest, he returned again to *Rome*, and was declared *Dictator*.

*Q. Did he hold this Office any considerable Time ?*

*A. Only Eleven Days*, then he and *Servilius Isauricus* were chosen Consuls for the ensuing Year ; after which *Caesar* hastened to *Brundisium* to pass the *Adriatic* into *Greece* against *Pompey*, with one Part of his Army, and sent back his Fleet to bring over the rest, who were under the Command of *Antony* ; but it was some Months before he had an Opportunity of a safe Passage.

*Q. What was done when Antony did arrive ?*

*A. Both Armies* took the Field, and prepared for 3956 Action : In several Skirmishes *Caesar* had the better, but at length he received a great Defeat, which occasioned him to pass the ensuing Night without Sleep, and revolving in his Mind the State of his Affairs, he found himself in a great Error, and resolved to alter his Conduct immediately.

*Q. What was this false Step for which Caesar condemned himself ?*

*A. For carrying on the War* against *Pompey* near the Sea-Side, where the Enemy had a great Fleet, and he none at all ; so he decamped the next Day, and marched into *Thessaly*, where was Plenty of all Things, purposing to draw *Pompey* after him to Battle, or else to fall upon *Scipio* his Father-in-Law, who was now in *Macedonia*, and had been before this War Provincial Governor of *Syria*.

*Q. How*

*Anno* Q. How did this Stratagem succeed?

*Mun.* A. Pompey not aware of the true Reason of this March, took it to be the Consequence of his Defeat the Day before, as if after that he durst stay there no longer, and accordingly pursued him as one that fled. In this March Scipio joined Pompey, and Domitius Calvinus joined Caesar; then both Armies met in the Plains of Pharsalia in Thessaly.

Q. What was the Consequence of this Meeting?

A. A decisive Battle ensued, in which Caesar, with half the Number of Forces, gained an entire Victory, killed 14,000 Men, took 24,000 Prisoners, and also the Enemy's Camp.

Q. Whither did Pompey go after this Loss?

A. He fled in Disguise to Mitylene in the Island of Lesbos, where he had left Cornelia his Wife, and Sextus his younger Son, and having taken them on Board, he sailed down the Archipelago, and put in at Attalia in Pamphilia. Here some Ships came to him from Cilicia, with 2000 Soldiers and 60 Senators, who had escaped the late Battle; by these People he heard his Fleet was safe, and that Cato had gotten together all his broken Forces, and was sailed with them for Africa.

Q. How did Pompey act on receiving this News?

A. He resolved to go into Syria, and take Possession of that Province; accordingly sent to Orodes King of Parthia for his Assistance herein; but he not caring to embark in a lost Cause, denied his Request, and put his Ambassadors in Chains. As soon as Pompey heard of this, he sailed to Egypt.

Q. How was he received on his Arrival there?

A. He first sent Messengers to Ptolemy to pray his Protection in the present Distress; but he being at this Time a Minor, and with an Army in the Field to oppose the Restoration of Cleopatra, whom he had driven out of the Kingdom, left the Matter wholly to the Determination of Pothinus an Eunuch, who bred him

up,

up, to *Achillas* his General, and to *Theodotus* a Rhetorician, who was his Preceptor.

*Anno  
Mun.*

*Q. What was the Result of this Consideration?*

*A.* One was for receiving, another for rejecting him, but at length *Theodotus* drew them both to his Opinion, which was to destroy him; and two Roman Commanders then with *Ptolemy*, were sent to execute this Sentence; and having got *Pompey* in a small Boat from his Ship, under Pretence of conducting him to the King, they slew him in Sight of his Wife and Son, who immediately fled into *Africa*, but most of the other Ships were taken by the Egyptian Gallies, and all they found on Board cruelly put to Death, among whom was *Lucius Lentulus*, the former Year's Consul.

*Q. Did Cæsar pursue Pompey into Egypt?*

*A.* He came with a few Forces to *Alexandria* just as the News of his Death arrived there, and on his entering the Place was presented with his Head, at the Sight whereof he wept, and order'd his Corps to be buried with proper Solemnities.

*Q. How did Cæsar employ himself in Egypt after the Death of Pompey?*

*A.* He set about determining the Controversy between *Ptolemy* and *Cleopatra*, and sent a peremptory Order to each of them to appear before him, and to dismiss their Armies, which had like to have proved his own Ruin.

*Q. Was this looked upon as an Affront by the Egyptians?*

*A.* Yes, and they resented it highly, as being an Invasion upon the sovereign Authority of their King, who as an Independent Prince, owned no Superior.

*Q. How did Cæsar excuse himself in this Matter?*

*A.* He told them, he did not take upon him to judge as a Superior, but as an Arbitrator, which by his Office of Dictator, he was entitled to by the Will of *Ptolemy*

*Auletes,*

*Anno Aulotes*, the present King's Father, who had left the *Mour. Romans* the Guardianship of his Children.

*Q. I thought Cæsar, on his being made Consul, had resigned the Office of Dictator ?*

*A.* As soon as the People of *Rome* heard of the Death of *Pompey*, they appointed him *Dictator* again, and by these Means he appeased the Tumult which he had raised, and the Advocates on both Sides were ordered to bring their Cause before him.

*Q. Who managed the Cause for Cleopatra ?*

*Q.* She pray'd she might come in Person, and plead it herself ; which being granted, and she a very wanton as well as beautiful Woman, lest she should be obstructed by her Brother, caused herself to be tied up in her Bedding, and thus carried on the Back of her Servants to *Cæsar's* Apartment, where being laid down at his Feet and untied, the Lady started up, putting on the best Airs she was able.

*Q. What Expectations had she from this Contrivance ?*

*A.* To bring *Cæsar* over to her Interest, for she had heard he was lasciviously inclined, and, for her Part, she made no Scruple of prostituting herself to any one, either for her Lust or Advantage.

*Q. How did this Stratagem work upon Cæsar ?*

*A.* He was pleased with the Ingenuity of it, and being also smitten with her Beauty, lay with her that Night, and begot a Son of her, who, from his Father's Name, was afterwards called *Cæsarion*.

*Q. How did Cæsar decide the controverted Point, after he had received this Favour from Cleopatra ?*

*A.* He immediately sent for *Ptolemy*, and pressed him to receive his Sister again upon her own Terms ; but he fell in a Rage, and springing from him among the People, threw his Diadem on the Ground, told the whole Story, and with Tears complained he was betray'd ; which put the whole City into an Uproar. On this Occasion *Cæsar* called a General Assembly the next Day, and brought *Ptolemy* and *Cleopatra* before them ;

them ; then ordered the Will to be read, and pursuant *Antony* thereto decreed, that they two should marry and reign *Jointly* in *Egypt*, according to the Usage of their Ancestors, and that *Ptolemy* the Younger and his Sister *Ar- sinee* should do the same in *Cyprus*.

*Q. Was not the Island of Cyprus before this Time subjected to the Romans ?*

*A.* Yes ; but *Cæsar* added this by way of Gift, to escape the Fury of the People, which contented the whole Assembly except *Plotinus*, who prevailed with *Achillas* to bring his Army from *Pelusium* to *Alexandria*, and drive *Cæsar* thence. Thus was he engaged in a dangerous War for the Sake of *Cleopatra*, which ended not but with the Death of her Brother, who endeavouring to escape in a Boat over the *Nile*, was drowned in that River.

*Q. How did Cæsar, having so few Forces in Egypt, carry on this War ?*

*A.* He wrote to *Domitius Calvinus*, his Lieutenant in *Proper Asia*, who sent him two Legions ; but none were more helpful to him than *Mithridates* the *Pergamean*, and *Antipater* and *Hyrannus*, who all stuck close to him during this War. 3957

*Q. Who was left to govern Egypt when Cæsar departed from Alexandria, and now the eldest Ptolemy was dead ?*

*A.* He made *Ptolemy* the younger Brother King, and *Cleopatra* Queen, which was, in Effect, to put the whole into her Hands, this *Ptolemy* being then but eleven Years old.

*Q. What Recompense did Cæsar make the Jews, for their Services in this War ?*

*A.* He decreed, that *Hyrannus* should hold the Office of High-Priest of *Jerusalem*, with the Principality of *Ju- dea*, and that *Antipater* should be made Procurator of *Judea* under him ; which Decree was engraven on Ta- bles of Brass in *Greek* and *Latin*, and hung up in the *Capitol* of *Rome*, and in the Temples of *Tyre*, *Sidon*, and *Astalon* in *Phœnicia*. Thus was *Hyrannus* re-established in the

*Q*

Soverignty



*Anno* Sovereignty of *Judea*, and the Aristocracy of *Gabinus*  
*Mis.* abolished.

*Q. What became of Arsinoe the younger Sister of Cleopatra?*

*A.* Being taken Prisoner by *Cæsar* in the *Egyptian* War, he carried her to *Rome*, to be led in Bonds before him in his Triumph; and she being found afterwards by *Marc Antony*, in *Proter Asia*, he caused her to be put to Death, at the Request of her Sister.

*Q. How long did Cæsar tarry in Egypt?*

*A.* Nine Months, which was longer than his Affairs could well permit; but now receiving News from *Domitius Calvinus*, that *Pharnaces* King of the *Cimmerian Bosphorus* had vanquished him, and seized the Province of *Lesser Asia*, he hasten'd into *Syria*, and having made *Seleucus Cæsar*, his Kinsman, President of that Province, marched Northward against *Pharnaces*.

*Q. What Success had he in this Expedition?*

*A.* As soon as he arrived where the Enemy was, without giving any Respite either to himself or his Men, he immediately fell upon him, and gained a complete Victory over him. On Account of which, he wrote to a Friend in these three Words, VENI, VIDI, VICI, i. e. *I came, I saw, and overcame.*

*Q. Whither did Pharnaces flee to escape?*

*A.* He went back to his Kingdom of *Bosphorus*, but was slain at his Landing by *Asander* his Lieutenant, who had usurped the Crown; whereon *Cæsar* gave *Mithridates* that Kingdom, for the Service he had done him in *Egypt*; but in taking Possession of it, he also was overcome and slain by *Asander*.

*Q. How many Children had Antipater?*

*A.* He had four Sons, (*viz.*) *Phasaelus*, *Herod*, *Joseph*, and *Pheroras*, and one Daughter called *Salome*, who was the Incendiary of her Family.

*Q. Did Cæsar stay long in the North after he had conquered Pharnaces?*

*A.* No, but a little Time, and *Antipater* accompanied him to the utmost Confines of *Syria*, then returned into

into Judaea, and made Phasaelus Governor of Jerusalem, and Herod his second Son Governor of Galilee. *Mun.*

*Q. How did these two Brothers behave themselves in their respective Governments?*

*A.* Herod immediately signalized himself by falling upon a Gang of Thieves, who infested those Parts; and having taken *Hershiab* their Ring-leader, with several others, he put them to Death, whereby he gained great Favour with *Sextus Caesar*; but was called before the Sanhedrim at Jerusalem, to answer this rash Action, in not first bringing them to a legal Tryal.

*Q. How did this young Prince behave himself there?*

*A.* He appeared in Purple, surrounded with his Guards, and over-aw'd the Sanhedrim, who all remain'd silent excepting *Sameas*; but he first accused him of *Audaciousness*, for appearing in that Manner before them, and then of *Violence*, as to his former Action, prophetically telling his Brethren, that they were now for sparing *Herod's* Life; but Time would come, when he would not spare them.

*Q. How did the Sanhedrim act on this Speech of Sameas's?*

*A.* Rouz'd by it, they were inclined to condemn him; but *Hyrannus* adjourn'd the Court, and order'd 3958 him to return to *Damascus* in the Night, and put himself under the Protection of *Sextus Caesar*, who gave him the Government of *Cele-Syria*.

*Q. What did Cato and Scipio set about with the Remainder of Pompey's Faction in Africa?*

*A.* They, with the Assistance of *Juba* King of *Mauritania*, made themselves Masters of all that Province; but *Caesar* pursuing them, gave them a total Overthrow. Hereon *Cato* slew himself at *Utica*, and the other Chiefs perished in the Flight.

*Q. Whither did Caesar march after this?*

*A.* When he had given Orders for the Rebuilding of *Carthage* and *Corinth*, he returned to *Rome*, taking with him *Juba* the Son of King *Juba*, a Lad, to be led before him in his Triumph, instead of his Father.

*Anno* In this *Corinth* lived the *Corinthians*, to whom *St. Paul* afterwards wrote his two *Epistles*.

Q. What became of the young Prince *Juba*, after he had bore his Part in *Cæsar's* Triumph?

A. He continued at *Rome*, where he gained the Benefit of a *Roman* Education, and became one of the learnedest Men of the Age in which he lived: In regard hereof, *Augustus* afterwards made him King of *Getulia* in *Africa*, and married him to *Cleopatra Selene*, Daughter of Queen *Cleopatra* by *Marc Antony*.

Q. What Works did *Juba* leave behind him?

A. The eminentest of them was his *Roman* History, wrote in *Greek*, which is often quoted with great Approbation by the Ancients. He also collected the Affairs of *Assyria*, from the Writings of *Berosus*; but they are all now wholly lost.

Q. How went on Affairs in *Syria* at this Time?

A. *Cæcilius Bassus*, a *Roman* of the *Equestrian* Order, who had fought on the Side of *Pompey* at *Pharsalia*, created great Disturbances there, and, having procured *Sextus Cæsar* to be slain, set up to be President of the Province.

Q. How was *Julius Cæsar* employed after his Return from the *African Expedition*?

A. He now, as High-Priest of *Rome*, undertook the Reformation of the *Roman* Kalendar, and formed the *Julian* Year, which the World has ever since had the Benefit of.

Q. Of what Sort was the Year which the *Romans* went by before this?

A. The *Roman* Year originally consisted but of ten Months, and began the 1st of *March*: Hence *July* was called *Quintilis*, or the fifth Month, *August*, *Sexilis*, or the sixth Month, and for the same Reason the Months of *September*, *October*, &c. have their present Names. *Numa* afterwards, by adding *January* and *February*, made the Year consist of twelve Lunar Months, or 355 Days, but did not alter the Names of the

the other Months ; and this last was the Year the Romans had hitherto gone by. Anno Mun.

*Q. But as this Year of Numa's fell eleven Days short of the Solar Year, how did they make all even ?*

*A.* For this Purpose they usually cast in another Month every second Year, between the twenty-third and twenty-fourth of *February*. This Month was called *Merhadinus*, and alternatively consisted of twenty-two Days one Time, and twenty-three another ; but the College of *Pontifices*, who had the Care of this Matter, executing their Office very arbitrarily, did sometimes intercalate the Month *Merhadinus*, where they ought not, and sometimes omit to intercalate it where they ought, as they had a Mind to lengthen or shorten the Time of the annual Magistrates then in Office, which occasioned great Disorders in the Political as well as Astronomical Part of the State.

*Q. How did Julius Cæsar remedy this Grievance ?*

*A.* He abolished the *Lunar* Year, and introduced the *Solar* in its Stead, which consisted of 365 Days and six Hours, the Time in which, according to their best Observations, the Sun goes through the *Zodiac*, and returns to the same Point whence it set out. This done, he distributed these 365 Days into twelve Political or Artificial Months, instead of the twelve *Lunar*, some of which he made to consist of thirty, some of thirty-one, and one, *i. e.* *February*, of 28 Days.

*Q. How did he dispose of the six Hours, which in four Years Time would make a whole Day ?*

*A.* He added them to the Beginning of every fifth Year, and made that Year consist of 366 Days ; and this is what we call the *Leap-Year*. In the *Roman* Kalendar this odd Day was inserted, where their intercalated Month *Merhadinus* had formerly been placed, that was between *February* 23, and 24 ; now the putting of this last Day, or *February* 24, twice in their Kalendar, and that Day being there called *Sextus Kalendas*, the putting of this *Sextus Dies*, *i. e.* twice, is the Reason why our *Leap-Year* is called in *Latin*, *Annus Bissextilis*, and

*Anno* thence by us the *Bissextile*; but in our *Almanacks*, in-  
*Mun.* stead of putting the 24th of *Feb.* twice in such Leap-  
 Year, we carry on the Days, and make that Month  
 consist of 29 Days every fifth Year.

Q. *Where did the first Julian Year begin?*

A. At the *Kalends*, or the 1st of *January*, on which Day the annual Magistrates of the *Romans* entered upon their Offices: This 1st of *January* was fixed by *Julius Caesar* to the *Winter Solstice*, tho' now it hath over-run that Time several Days, because, according to the most accurate Observations, the *Julian Year* is 11 Minutes longer than the natural *Solar Year*; which 11 Minutes make a whole Day in 130 Years.

Q. *Has any Person since endeavour'd to correct this Fault in the Julian Kalendar?*

A. *Gregory XIII.* Pope of *Rome*, *Anno Domini* 1582, propos'd a new Form, which from his Name is called the *Gregorian*; wherein he ordain'd, That in every four Centuries three Leap-Years should be omitted. This, indeed, brings the Matter nearer to Truth, but does not fully reach it; therefore in all the Dominions of the King of *Great-Britain*, and in some other Places, (before the Year 1752,) the *Julian Form* was retain'd as the better of the two: The Reckoning by this was called the *Old Style*, by the other the *New*. In the Year 1752, an Act pass'd for the Alteration of the Style.

Q. *Was there no Remains of Pompey's Party now left unsubdued?*

A. The first *Julian Year*, *Jan. 1.* *Cæsar* entering into his fourth Consulship, march'd into *Spain*, and having slain *Oncius*, *Pompey's* eldest Son, as also *Labienus* and *Varrus*, the chief Supporters of that Interest, he return'd to *Rome* with full Victory, where he issued out a general Act of Indemnity, and was made *Perpetual Dictator*. It was also now decreed in Honour of him, that the fifth Month, hitherto called *Quintilis*, should thenceforth, from his Name, be called *Julius*, which is our *English July*.

Q. *What was done by Cæsar the ensuing Year?*

A. He



*A.* He entered into his fifth and last Consulship, and *Anno* having received a Request from *Hyrcauus* to permit him *Mun.* to repair the Walls of *Jerusalem*, a Decree was passed at *Rome* for this Purpose, and that City again fortified as formerly.

*Q.* Who was *Cæsar's* Collegue in this Year's Consulship?

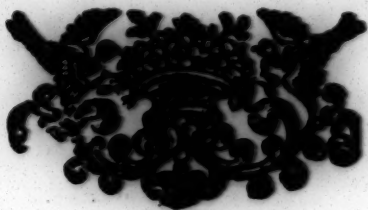
*A.* *M. Antony*; but *Cæsar* resolving upon a War against the *Parthians*, to revenge the Death of *Crassus*, and of the *Romans* slain with him at the Battle of *Carre*, resigned his Consulship to *Publius Cornelius Dolabella*, a young Man who had married *Tullia* Daughter of *Cicero*.

*Q.* What Success had *Cæsar* in his Design against *Parthia*?

*A.* When all Things were ready for his March, and four Days before he intended to set out, he was villainously slain in the Senate-house by *Marcus Brutus*, *Decimus Brutus*, *Cassius*, *Trebonius*, and others.

*Q.* Give a short Character of this extraordinary Person?

*A.* He had naturally great Parts, was well skilled in all polite Literature, had thorough Abilities in all the Arts of War and Civil Government, and equal Diligence and Application in the Pursuit of both: He fought fifty Battles without missing of Success in any, except at *Pharus*, where he swam for his Life, and once at *Dyrachium*; and he is said to have slain in these Battles eleven hundred and ninety-two thousand Men.



## C H A P. V.

*Cæsar's Murderers driven from Rome; Octavianus, Antony, and Lepidus erect a Triumvirate, and divide the Roman Empire between them; Cicero proscribed; Antipater poisoned; Battle of Philippi; Brutus and Cassius kill themselves; Antony falls in Love with Cleopatra, who occasions his Ruin; marries Octavia; Ventidius's Victories; envied by Antony; rewarded at Rome; Sosius; Octavianus jealous of Antony; accuses him to the Senate; deposes Lepidus; quarrels with Antony; Battle of Actium; Antony kills himself; Cleopatra's Treachery and Death; Herod King of Judæa, &c.*

*Anno Mun.* **W**HO managed Affairs at Rome after the Death of Julius Cæsar?

*3960* *A. M.* Antony governed all there till the Arrival of Octavius, whom Cæsar had adopted for his Son, and left Heir to three Quarters of his Estate.

*Q.* Did M. Antony head the Cæsar's Party?

*A.* Yes, and made an Oration at his Funeral to excite the People against his Murderers, which had such an Effect, as obliged them all to quit Rome.

*Q.* What was done on Octavius's Arrival?

*A.* He soon got the sole Mastery both of the Senate and the People, and Antony, who opposed him at first, was forced to leave Rome also.

*Q.* What

*Q. What Name did Octavius take after he had declared himself the adopted Son and Heir of his Uncle Julius Caesar?* *Anna Mun.*

*A.* He now called himself *Caius Julius Caesar Octavianus*, by which Name he was afterwards known, till that of *AUGUSTUS*, which was given to him after his Victory at *Actium*, swallowed all the rest.

*Q. Whither did Antony go after he departed from Rome and Italy?*

*A.* Finding himself not strong enough to over-power *Octavianus* there, he marched with all the Forces he could get together into *Gallia Cisalpina*, with Design to dispossess *Decimus Brutus* of that Province, who was lately vested in it by a Decree from the Senate.

*Q. Where did Cassius and M. Brutus, two more of Caesar's Murderers, flee?*

*A.* They went to *Athens*, there resolved on a new War with the *Cæsareans*, and, in order to raise Money and Forces for it, *Brutus* seized *Greece* and *Macedonia*, and *Cassius*, *Cilicia*, and *Syria*, and the East.

*Q. What was done by the Senate at Rome on Antony's making War against Decimus Brutus, and besieging him in Mutina, now called Modena?*

*A.* They declared him a publick Enemy, and *Hir- 3961*  
*nius* and *Pansa*, the two Consuls for this Year, having *Octavianus* joined in Commission with them, were sent to raise that Siege, which occasioned a Battle, and *Octavianus* reaped the whole Glory and Benefit of this Victory; for one of the Consuls was slain, and the other mortally wounded in it.

*Q. Whither did Antony flee after this Defeat?*

*A.* Over the *Alps* into *Gallia Transalpina*; but being there received by the Roman Army, which *Lepidus* commanded in that Province, *Octavianus* came to an Agreement with them; on which a new *Triumvirate* was erected, and the three Generals divided the Roman Empire between them. Hence many Roman Nobles were proscribed, among whom by Order of *M. Antony* perished *Cicero*, PRINCE of the Roman Eloquence.

Q5

Q. What

*Anno* Q. What was the Design of crossing this new Triumvirate?

*Ans.* A. To unite all the *Cæsarean* Party in one common Interest against *Brutus* and *Cassius*, who had now got together a formidable Army of above twenty Legions; for *Cassius* having come to Terms with *Bassus*, all *Syria* submitted to him, and soon after he possessed himself of *Judea* and *Phœnicia*, and laid heavy Contributions on the Country, for maintaining his numerous Army: *Judea* alone, for this Purpose, was taxed 700 Talents; and *Antipater*, whose Wisdom was never wanting for the Good of his Country, took speedy Care to raise it, but was soon after poisoned by *Malichus*.

Q. What Course did the Sons of *Antipater* take to revenge their Father's Death?

A. *Herod* informed *Cassius* of the Manner of it, who gave him Leave to use the Murderer as he thought proper, and sent Orders to his Commanders to assist him therein: Sometime after, on *Cassius* taking *Laodicea*, all the chief Princes and Lords of *Syria* and *Palestine* hastened thither to make their Presents to him, and *Hircanius*, with *Malichus* and *Herod*, were on the Road for this Purpose, designing to lie at *Tyre* that Night; *Herod* on the Way invited all the Company to sup with him, and sent Servants before under Pretence of providing Supper, who communicating *Cassius's* Orders to the Commanders of the Garrison, they sent out a Party, and slew *Malichus* as he approached that Place.

Q. How went on the War between *Brutus*, *Cassius*, and the Triumvir?

3962 A. Great Preparations had been making on both Sides, and *Cassius* sent to *Cleopatra* for her Aid, which being denied, he resolved to invade *Egypt*. On his Way thither, he received Letters after Letters from *Brutus*, to hasten to his Assistance; advising, that the Triumvirate had gotten together an Army of forty Legions, eight of which had passed the *Adriatic*, and the rest were following to fall upon him.

Q. Did this News draw *Cassius* from his intended Expedition against *Cleopatra*?

A. Yes

*A.* Yes, and he immediately marched towards *Brutus*, and joined him at *Smyrna*; but before they went farther Westward, they subdued the *Lygians* and the *Rhodians*, then crossed the *Hellefpont* with 100,000 Men to fight *Octavianus* and *Antony*, who were now come into *Macadonia* with a more numerous Army against them.

*Q.* Where did the two Armies meet?

*A.* At *Philippi*, in that Country; to the Inhabitants whereof *St. Paul* afterwards wrote one of his Epistles.

*Q.* Which Side obtained the Victory?

*A.* After a terrible Slaughter *Cæsar's* Murderers were vanquished, and first *Brutus*, then *Cassius*, were forced to murder themselves with the same Swords they had before murdered him. After this Victory, *Octavianus* returned to *Rome*, and *Antony* went into *Asia* to settle the Eastern Provinces.

*Q.* What was doing at Jerusalem while Cassius was absent from Syria?

*A.* The Faction of *Malichus* took up Arms against the Sons of *Antipater*, to revenge his Death, but were soon mastered by *Phasaelus* and *Herod*, who justly upbraided *Hyrcanus* for favouring the adverse Party: But at this Time a Match being set on Foot between *Herod* and *Marianne* the Grand Daughter of *Hyrcanus*, that reconciled all Differences.

*Q.* Was the Faction wholly suppressed thereby?

*A.* It soon revived again with greater Danger, for they calling to them *Antigonus* the younger Son of *Arsobulus*, raised new Disturbances under Pretence of restoring him to his Father's Throne, and were supported herein by the King of *Tyre*, the Governor of *Damascus*, and others; but *Herod* soon gave them a total Overthrow, and returned to *Jerusalem* with Triumph.

*Q.* How did Antony manage Matters in Asia?

*A.* He exacted grievous Taxes and Contributions in all Places where he came for the Payment of his Army, and had his Chamber-Door crowded every Morning with Kings, Princes, and Ambassadors, to solicit his

Q 6

Favour:



*Anno Favour*: Amongst these were several Embassies from the *Mun. Jews*, to complain of the Sons of *Antipater*, in Favour of *Antigonus*, but *Antony* would not hear them. *Cleopatra*, Queen of *Egypt*, was also summoned before him at *Tarsus*, to answer an Accusation against her for being in the Interest of *Cassius*.

*Q. How did Cleopatra answer to this Charge?*

*A.* She soon convinced *Antony* of her Innocence, and by the Charms of her Wit and Beauty, drew him into those Snares, which held him enslaved to her as long as he lived, and ended not but with his Ruin. *Antony* now wanting Money to pay his Army, sent them to plunder *Palmyra*, called in Scripture *Tadmor*, instead thereof; but the Inhabitants having Notice of the Design, sent their Families and Effects out of their Reach; and this ill Usage so exasperated the *Palmyrenians*, that they thenceforth put themselves under the Protection of the *Parthians*.

*Q. How far did Cleopatra go with Antony?*

*A.* As far as *Tyre*, and then left him ensnared in the Fetters of Love; for as soon as he had appointed *Plancus* his Lieutenant in *Asia*, and *Saxa* in *Syria*, he hastened to *Alexandria*, and spent the Winter with her in a most scandalous Manner.

*Q. How did Saxa manage the Government of Syria and Palestine?*

*A.* These People being oppressed with the heavy Taxes imposed upon them, called in the *Parthians* against him, who came with a great Army under the Command of *Pacorus* the King's Son, with *Labiennus* a Roman General, and forced *Saxa* to flee into *Cilicia*, where *Labiennus* pursued and slew him, then over-ran all *Lesser Asia*, and forced *Plancus* thence also into the Isles. At the same Time *Pacorus* with the other Part of the Army subdued all *Syria* and *Phenicia*, as far as *Tyre*.

*Q. How stood Antony's Affairs in Italy at this Juncture?*

*A. He*

*A.* He there left *Fulvia* his Wife, and his Brother *Antony*, and they, under Pretence of supporting his Interest, had engaged in a War against *Octavianus*, who drove them both out of that Country.

*Q.* Did not all these dismal Tidings rouse *Antony* from his Dotage?

*A.* Yes, he now took Leave of *Cleopatra*, and sailed into *Italy* with 200 Ships against *Octavianus*, for the Relief of *Fulvia* his Wife; but hearing she was dead, he made Peace with him, and married his Sister *Octavia*, who was lately become a Widow by the Death of *Marcellus* her former Husband. This Marriage was solemnized at *Rome* with great Pomp and Solemnity, and afterwards the *Triumvirs* came to a new Partition of the *Roman* Empire between them: *Lepidus* had the Provinces of *Africa*; *Octavianus*, *Dalmatia* and the two *Gallia's*, with *Spain* and *Sardinia*; and *Antony* all the Eastern Provinces beyond the *Adriatic*; the War against the *Parthians* was committed to his Charge, and that against *Sextus Pompeius*, who had seized *Italy*, to *Octavianus*.

*Q.* Did not *Pacorus* and *Labienus* extend their Conquests in the East, while *Antony* was celebrating his Nuptials at *Rome*?

*A.* *Labienus* having ravaged all Lesser *Asia*, and *Pacorus* having taken in *Sidon* and *Ptolemais*, sent a Party to invade *Judea*, where *Pacorus's* Cup-bearer and Name-fake treacherously prevailed upon *Hyrcanus* and *Phasaël* to go on an Embassy to *Barzapharnes*, then Governor of *Syria*, under Pretence of reconciling Matters between them; during whose Absence, *Antigonus* was set on the Throne of *Jerusalem*, and *Hyrcanus* and *Phasaël* were seized, put in Chains, and sent back thither to him.

*Q.* What Usage did they meet with from *Antigonus*?

*A.* *Phasaël* knowing his Death was determined, knocked his Brains out against the Walls of the Prison. *Hyrcanus's* Life was spared; but to incapacitate him from being any more High-Priest of the *Jews*, his Ears were cut

*Antony* cut off. After this he was delivered back to the *Parthians*, who carried him to *Seleucia*, that he might cause no more Disturbance at *Jerusalem*.

Q. Was not *Antony* as yet returned from *Rome*?

A. No, but he sent *Ventidius*, one of his Lieutenants, into the East, against *Pacorus* and *Labiennus*, who arriving sooner than they expected, surprized the latter, and forced him to flee to Mount *Taurus*, whence he sent to *Pacorus* for Relief, who fell on *Ventidius* before he had joined him, and thereby was vanquished, and had most of his Men cut off. After this *Labiennus's* Soldiers deserted, and he skulk'd about in *Cilicia*, till, being discovered by *Demetrius*, (a freed-Man of *Julius Caesar's*, whom *Antony* had made Governor of *Cyprus*) he was taken and put to Death.

Q. Which Way did *Ventidius* march after he had recovered all *Cilicia*?

A. To Mount *Ananus*, which parted that Country and *Syria*: Here he met with *Pharnaspates* one of *Pacorus's* Lieutenants, with another Army of *Parthians*, and gained a second Victory over them, as considerable as the former; after which he reduced the *Arabians*, and *Pacorus*, repassing the *Euphrates*, left *Syria*.

Q. What became of *Herod* during the Revolutions at *Jerusalem*?

A. He made his Escape from thence in the Night, took with him all his Family, the best of his Effects, and as many Soldiers as he had in Pay, and put them into the strong Fortrefs of *Massada*, then went directly to *Rome*, told to *Antony* the deplorable State of his Affairs and Family on the Usurpation of *Antigonus*, and prayed his Aid.

3948 Q. Did *Antony* either pity or assist him?

A. He did more for him than could be expected; for (partly to gratify *Antony*, and partly out of Gratitude to the Family of *Antipater*, who had been so serviceable to *Julius Caesar* in *Egypt*) *Octavianus* was prevailed upon to have *Herod* inaugurated King of *Judea* there, according the *Roman* Usage, and he staid but

but seven Days at *Rome* for the Dispatch of this whole *Ann. Mun.*  
Affair.

Q. *What did Herod set about on his Return into Judea?*

A. What he had most at Heart was, to relieve his Mother, Sister, and Friends, (especially *Marianne* his late betrothed Mistress, who was a Lady of the greatest Beauty and Merit of any of her Time) whom he left shut up in *Masada*, which had been besieged by *Antigonus* ever since his Departure. In order to effect this, he went to *Ventidius*, then to *Silo*, his Lieutenant in *Palestine*, got some *Roman* Auxiliaries from each of them, and lifting into his Service as well Foreigners as *Jews*, soon made himself Master of all *Gallilee*, a few Places excepted.

Q. *Did he go to the Relief of Masada after this?*

A. Not thinking it safe to leave so strong a Place as *Joppa* behind him in the Hand of an Enemy, he first took that in, then raised the Siege of *Masada*, received all his Friends, seized *Ressa*, a strong Fortrefs of the *Idumeans*, marched back to join *Silo*, whom *Ventidius* had left in *Judea*, and encamped before the Walls of *Jerusalem*.

Q. *What have you remarkable from Rome about this Time?*

A. This Year a Son was born to *Asinius Pollio*, one of the Consuls, whom, from his taking of *Salona*, a City of *Dalmatia*, he called *Saloninus*, on whose Birth *Virgil* made his fourth Eclogue, and therein attributed to him, what was generally talked of by the *Jews*, and from them by others, of the Kingdom of the *Messiah*, who was to restore again the GOLDEN AGE to the World.

Q. *Where was Antony all this Time?*

A. He was at *Athens*, spending the Winter in Excesses of Luxury, Folly, and loose Diversions, with his Wife *Octavia*; but on Advice of *Ventidius*'s two Victories over the *Parthians*, he thought fit to lie idle no longer, and leave his Lieutenant to reap all the Lawrels  
of

*Antony* of this War; accordingly he next Spring marched with *Mun.* all his Forces into the East, but *Ventidius*, before his Arrival, had gained a third Victory, greater than the other two, in which *Pacorus* was killed, with above 20,000 of his Men. This Overthrow was the greatest Blow the *Parthians* had at any Time till now received, and the Loss of *Pacorus* was as great as that of the Army; for he was the worthiest Person for Justice, Clemency, Valour, &c. which the Royal Family of *Arfaces* had ever bred, and his Death caused inexpressible Grief to his Father *Orades*.

*Q. How did Antony requite Ventidius for his great Successes, on his Return into Syria?*

*A.* He envied him the Glory of his Victories, took the War out of his Hands, dismissed him from his Presidency of Syria, and sent him to *Rome*, where he had Honours conferred upon him according to his Merit, being first made *Tribune* of the People, afterwards *Prætor*, and then *Consul*.

*Q. Where did Antony take the Command of the Army from Ventidius?*

*A.* In *Commagena*; for *Antiochus*, King of that Country, having embraced the *Parthian* Interest against the *Romans*, *Ventidius* made War upon him for it, and besieged him in *Samofata*, the Capital of his Kingdom; but *Antony* soon compounded the Matter with him; and having appointed *Sosius* his Lieutenant in *Cilicia*, *Syria*, and *Palestine*, left the Army with him, sailed to *Athens*, thence to *Brundysium* to confer with *Octavianus*, then returned back to *Alexandria*, and there spent the ensuing Winter in luxurious Delights with *Cleopatra*.

*Q. How did Herod manage the War against Antigonus?*

*A.* Antony sent *Macheras* a *Roman* General to his Assistance, who, going to the Walls of *Jerusalem* to confer with *Antigonus*, was beaten back; which provok'd him to such a Degree, that he slew all the *Jews* he met on his Retreat. On this Account *Herod* went to *Samofata* to complain of this Outrage to *Antony*; but *Macheras* followed



followed, and reconciled him. During *Herod's* Absence *Anno* from *Judea*, his Brother *Joseph* made an ill-projected *Mun.* Expedition against *Jericho*, where he was himself slain, and all his Men cut off; but *Herod* on his Return revenged his Death by gaining an absolute Victory over *Pappus*, a prime General of *Antigonus's*.

*Q. Whither did Antony go from Alexandria?*

*A.* As soon as Spring began to come on, he sailed to *Athens* with a great Fleet, and having there taken in his Wife *Octavia*, passed into *Italy*, purposing to assist *Octavianus* against *Sextus Pompeius*, which he out of Jealousy not accepting, *Antony* returned into *Syria*, to make Preparation for the *Parthian War*, committing his Wife and Children to the Care of *Octavianus*.

*Q. How did Herod go on with the Siege of Jerusalem?*

*A.* *Sofus* Governor of *Syria* coming to his Assistance, they took the Place after a Siege of above six Months, and in it *Antigonus*, who was sent by *Sofus* to *Antony*, and intended to be by him reserved for his Triumph; but at the Solicitation of *Herod*, and for a Sum of Money, he obtained him to be beheaded. Here ended the Reign of the *Asmoneans*, after it had lasted from *Judas Maccabeus* 129 Years. This Year *Octavianus* married *Livia Drusilla*, Wife of *Tiberius*, who was yielded to him, though within three Months of her Delivery.

*Q. Herod being now in full Possession of Judea, how did he begin his Reign?*

*A.* As he was forced to make his Way to the Throne 3967 through Blood, so he thought to establish himself in it by the same Means, putting daily to Death some of the opposite Faction, among whom were all the Counsellors of the Great Sanhedrim, excepting *Pollis* and *Sameas*, called by the Jewish Writers *Hillel* and *Shammai*.

*Q. Was Orodes King of Parthia as yet recovered from his great Disturbance of Mind occasioned by the Death of his beloved Son Pacorus?*

*A. He*

*Ans.* A. He had worn that off a little, but fell into an *Mun.* great Perplexity about naming a Successor, for he had thirty Sons by the several Wives he married; however at length he determined this Matter by Seniority, and made *Phraates*, the eldest and wickedest of them all, King in his stead.

Q. *How did he act when he became possessed of the Royal Power?*

A. He first put all his Brothers to Death, at which finding his Father much offended, he caused him to be stifled in his Bed; after this he put to Death his own Son, now grown up unto Man's State, to prevent his being placed on the Throne in his stead: On this Account Numbers of the *Parthian* Nobility, dreading his Cruelty, fled into *Syria*, under the Protection of *Antony*, among whom *Monases* was the most eminent.

Q. *What Precautions did Sosius take to please Antony in the Government of Syria?*

A. Now he had put *Herod* in Possession of *Judea*, observing that *Ventidius* lost his Master's Favour by meriting too much, he lay by all this Year in Quiet, but he had already done more than *Antony* could bear, so he removed him also, put *Planus* in his Place, and made *C. Furnius* Governor of *Asia* in his Stead.

Q. *Who did Herod make High-Priest of Jerusalem after the Death of Antigonus?*

A. *Ananias*, an obscure Priest of the Pontifical Family, whom he sent for from *Babylonia*.

Q. *Did Hyrcanus the late High-Priest still continue Prisoner in Seleucia?*

A. *Phraates*, notwithstanding his Cruelty, shewed Kindness and Generosity to this Captive Prince, for as soon as he was told of his Quality, he released him from his Chains, gave him full Liberty, and he was respected among all the *Jews* of *Parthia* (who were as numerous as those in *Judea*) as their King and High-Priest. Here he lived in full Honour, Ease, and Plenty.

but

but hearing of *Herod's* being made King of *Judea*, *Antony* he could not be easy till he returned thither. *Mun.*

*Q. Did Antony prosecute the War against the Parthians, which was at Rome earnestly expected from him?*

*A. Publius Canidius*, one of his Lieutenants, having vanquished the *Armenians*, *Iberians*, and *Albanians*, and carried his victorious Arms as far as Mount *Caucasus*, the Name of *Antony* became very famous and terrible among the Nations of those Parts, with which he being much elated, was blown up into a Confidence of having the same Success against the *Parthians*, and accordingly made all proper Preparations for that War; but therein he first lost *Statianus*, one of his Captains, with 10,000 Men, all his Engines of War, and the Baggage with them; after this the major Part of his own Army, and hardly himself escaped to *Antioch*.

*Q. How did he act on his Return thither?*

*A. Florus* tells us, he had the Vanity to boast as if he had come back with Victory, and assumed the Honours due thereto, though he had lost 60,000 Men in this destructive Undertaking: While *Antony* met with these Misfortunes in the East, *Octavius* gained Ground in the West, having driven *Sextus Pompeius* out of *Italy*, and deposed *Lepidus* from the *Triumvirate*.

*Q. What occasioned this great Change in Italy?*

*A. Lepidus* having joined *Octavius* in the War against *Pompeius*, vainly arrogated the whole Honour of the Victory to himself, and would have seized *Sicily* as the Reward of it. *Octavius* hereon reduced him to the Necessity of begging his Life, and sent him into Banishment; and now the *Roman Empire* was divided between him and *Antony*, the latter had all the East from the Borders of *Illyricum* and the *Adriatic Gulph*, the former all the rest.

*Q. How long was Ananelus High-Priest of Jerusalem?*

*A. Mariamne*

*Anno* A. *Marianne*, the best beloved Wife of *Herod*, and  
*Mun.* *Alexandra* her Mother continually teasing him about it,  
 he was at length deposed, and *Aristobulus*, Brother of  
*Marianne*, a Lad of seventeen Years old, made High-  
 Priest in his stead.

Q. *How did this young Man behave himself in that sacred Office?*

A. He discharged himself with so good a Grace, and the Splendor of his Pontifical Robes added so much to the Beauty of his Person, that every Mouth was full of his Praises: This caused Jealousy in *Herod*, who soon after took Care to have him drowned at *Jericho*.

Q. *Where was Antony at this Time?*

A. He lay idle at *Alexandria*, spending the whole Year in Dalliances with *Cleopatra*, and though fair Opportunities offered for revenging the Roman Cause upon the *Parthians*, he neglected all for the Enjoyment of his Lust with this vile Woman.

Q. *Did Alexandra endeavour to revenge the Death of Aristobulus her Son?*

A. She by Letters acquainted *Cleopatra* of his Murder, and with the whole Villany of the Matter, who coming early with *Antony* into *Syria* this Year, prevailed upon him to call *Herod* to an Account for it, and he was accordingly cited before him.

Q. *How did he answer this Accusation?*

A. By large Presents, and fair Words, and on *Antony's* giving *Cleopatra* *Cæle-Syria* instead of *Judæa*, he was acquitted. But *Herod* during his Absence having left the Charge of *Marianne* and *Alexandra* with his Uncle *Joseph*, gave strict Orders, in Case he should be put to Death, not to suffer *Marianne* to live: *Joseph* blabbed out this Secret to her, which caused great Uneasiness between them ever afterwards.

Q. *What Grants did Cleopatra obtain of Antony while she staid in Syria?*

A. He gave her *Cæle Syria*, *Cyprus*, *Ituræa*, that Part of *Malchus's* Kingdom which bordered upon *Egypt*, and out of *Herod's* Territory of *Jericho*, the Balsam Trees  
 which

which grew there. These Grants very much offended *Anno* the Romans, as they were made the Price of his filthy *Mun.* Conversation with a lewd Woman.

*Q. Whither did Antony go from Syria?*

*A.* Into *Armenia*, and *Cleopatra* accompanied him as far as the *Euphrates*, then returned by the Way of *Apamea* and *Damascus*, to *Jerusalem*, where she was splendidly entertained by *Herod*, pretended to be in Love with him, and would have drawn him into Acts of Lewdness with her, which provoked him to a Resolution, now he had got her in his Power, to dispatch her; but being advised by his Friends of the Danger of this Resolution, he dropped the Thoughts of it, and waited upon her to the Borders of her own Kingdom.

*Q. What was Antony's Design in going to Armenia?*

*A.* To draw *Artabazes* King of that Country into his Power, who had deserted him in the late *Parthian* War. This he effected under Pretence of Friendship, and by violating the most sacred Oaths and Promises; for *Artabazes* was no sooner entered into his Camp, but he was clapped in Chains, his Kingdom seized, his Son *Artaxias* driven out, and forced to take shelter in *Parthia*; this Perfidy was look'd upon as dishonourable to the Roman Name, and *Octavius* made it one Reason for the War, which afterwards broke out between them.

*Q. Whither did Antony go from Armenia?*

*A.* After he had contracted a Marriage for *Alexander*, one of his Sons by *Cleopatra*, with a Daughter of the King of *Media*, he left most of his Army there, and marched with the rest to *Alexandria*, entering that City in the same manner as was usual in the Roman Triumphs, and caused the Procession to end at the Person of *Cleopatra*, who being seated in Public on a golden Throne, placed on a Scaffold overlaid with Silver, and surrounded by the People, he presented *Artabazes*, his Wife, and Children, and all the other Prisoners to her, who were pressed to kneel before her, but refusing to submit to so low an Obedience, were afterwards used the worse for it. After this Ceremony was over, he called the People



*Ann* People into the *Gymnasium*, and distributed all the *Pro-Mus. vinces* of the *Roman Empire* amongst the Children of *Cleopatra*.

*Q. Did not these Follies diminish his Character, and alienate the Affections of the Romans from him?*

*A. Octavius* took Advantage of them, and excited the Senate and People against him. On this Occasion  
397<sup>1</sup> *Antony* sent *Canidius* one of his Lieutenants with sixteen Legions, to the Coasts of the *Ionian Sea*, then having renewed his League with the King of *Media*, hastened after him to *Ephesus*, putting off his Design of making War upon the *Parthians*, which he had at Heart.

*Q. Did he take Cleopatra with him to Ephesus?*

*A. Yes*, though his Friends earnestly advised him to the contrary, and she proved the Ruin of his Affairs; but the Quarrel growing high between him and *Octavius*, and she having lent him 20,000 Talents towards the Expence of the War, insisted that she ought to be allowed her Desire to be present in it.

*Q. Where did Antony go from Ephesus?*

*A. To Samos*, there rendezvoused his Forces, then sailed to *Athens*, and at these two Places spent most of the Year in luxurious Excesses, but omitted nothing to make suitable Preparations for the ensuing War against *Octavius*, and he did the same.

397<sup>2</sup> *Q. Who were Consuls at Rome this Year, and in whose Interest?*

*A. Sossus* (who has been before mentioned in the Wars of *Judea*) was one, and *Domitius Ahenobarbus* the other. Both embraced the Interest of *Antony*, and during the Absence of *Octavius*, promoted a Decree to the People against him: He on his Return made a Speech in the Senate against his Rival, and assigned a Day for them again to assemble, on which he promis'd to make his Allegations good: But the two Consuls and several Senators of *Antony's* Party left *Rome* before that Day, and repaired to him: Hereon he sent a Bill of Divorce to *Octavia*, and Messengers to *Rome* to drive her out of his House, and by the Advice of his Adherents declared War

War against *Octavianus*, who had all the West, and he *Antony* all the East. Accordingly great Armies were brought *Mun.* into the Field, and as great Fleets set forth at Sea to decide the Quarrel.

*Q. Which Side did Herod take in this War?*

*A.* He had provided an Army to join *Antony*, but was sent with it against *Malchus* King of *Arabia Petraea*, who overthrew him with a great Slaughter, and himself hardly escaped into *Judea*, where another Calamity 3973 happened unto him, for a terrible Earthquake had thrown down many Houses there, and buried 30,000 Inhabitants in the Ruins.

*Q. What Course did he take to relieve himself and his People in this Distress?*

*A.* He first craved Peace of the *Arabians*, which they refused on Account of the Earthquake, and invaded *Judea*; but *Herod* slew 12,000 of their Men in Battle, and made the Remainder of their Army Prisoners; and now they were forced to accept what they lately despised, on such Terms, as he thought fit to demand.

*Q. How was the Contest between Octavianus and Antony decided?*

*A.* *Antony* being determined to try his Fortune by Sea, encamped with the Gros of his Army near *Actium*, having his Fleet near him: *Octavianus* encamped on the opposite Side of the *Ambracian* Gulph, in *Epirus*, where he afterwards built a City called *Nicopolis*, which in Greek signifieth the City of Victory, in Commemoration of his Success in this Battle.

*Q. What is said to be the chief Occasion of Antony's Defeat here?*

*A.* He had for some Time a fair Prospect of Success, but *Cleopatra* being affrighted with the Noise and Terror of Battle, being what the Ladies use not to be acquainted with, fled before there was any Reason for it, drew after her the *Egyptian* Squadron, consisting of sixty tall Ships of War, and sailed for *Chersonesus*, thence to *Tenarus*. Hereon *Antony* giving all for lost, made after her thither, where he had Advice of the total Defeat of his

*Anno* his Fleet, but that his Army was safe at Land; on which  
*Mun.* he wrote to *Canidius* his General to retire with it thro'  
*Macedonia* into *Asia*, who being overtaken by *Octavianus*  
 after seven Days march, fled by Night to *Antony*,  
 but the Army list'd into the Enemies Service.

Q. Did Antony and Cleopatra continue at Ténarus after this last Loss?

A. She sail'd to *Alexandria*, he to *Lybia*, where finding the Governor of that Province had also revolted from him to his Rival, all he had now left to do, was to follow her.

Q. Did Octavianus pursue them into Egypt?

A. Having settled the Affairs of *Greece* and *Lesser Asia*, he took up Winter Quarters at *Samos*, whence he was called in a most tempestuous Season to quell an Insurrection in *Italy*, which having accomplished, he returned in thirty Days, then sail'd into the Gulph of *Corinth*, and drawing his Ships over the *Isthmus* of *Peloponnesus*, arriv'd in *Asia* before *Antony* and *Cleopatra* had Notice of his Removal from *Samos*.

Q. Was Herod still in Friendship with Antony?

A. Seeing the ill State of his Affairs, and finding him deaf to all Advice for his own Good, he went to *Rhodes*, to make his Address to *Octavianus*, who accepted his Friendship, and confirm'd him in his Kingdom; with which *Herod* being highly pleas'd, returned to *Judea*, with great Joy, but on his Arrival there, all was sow'd by Troubles in his own Family.

Q. How was these Uneasinesses at Home occasioned?

A. On his going to *Rhodes*, he left his beloved Wife *Mariamme*, and her Mother *Alexandra*, in Charge with *Sobemus*, and order'd him, in Case he should be put to Death by *Octavianus*, not to suffer these two to survive him. *Sobemus* having blabb'd this to *Mariamme*, creat'd in her an utter Aversion and Hatred to him ever after.

Q. Whither did Octavianus go from Rhodes?

A. Into *Syria*, to invade *Egypt*, on that Side, and then sent *Cornelius Gallus*, whom he had appointed Governor of *Lybia*, to invade it on the other.

Q. How

Q. How did Antony defend himself there?

Ann.

A. Three Times he sent Ambassadors to Octavianus Mun. to obtain Peace, but without Success; then after several unsuccessful Engagements, occasion'd by the Treachery of Cleopatra, (who, tho' she could not be prevailed upon to kill him, betray'd him in all Things) he could no longer forbear expressing his Resentment with loud Complaints; whereon, for Fear of him, she fled to a Monument which he had caused to be built near the Temple of Isis, of a great Height and wonderful Structure, where she remov'd the best of her Treasure; which Antony hearing of, fell on his Sword; but living some few Hours after, and being told Cleopatra was alive, caused himself to be carried to her Monument, where being, by Ropes, drawn up to her, by the Hands of herself and her two Maids, he died in her Arms 11 Months after the Battle of Actium.

Q. What became of Cleopatra after the Death of Antony?

A. Being told, after three Days Octavianus intended to carry her to Rome to make Part of the Show in his Triumph, she caused herself to be bitten with an Asp to avoid that Infamy, and died after she had reigned 22 Years, and lived 39. In her Death ended the Reign of the Ptolems in Egypt, which, from the Death of Alexander, had lasted 294 Years; and it continued a Province of the Roman Empire (of which Cornelius Gallus was by Augustus made the first Praefecture) till taken from them by the Saracens, Ann. Dom. 641.

Q. What Sort of Creature is the Asp?

A. It is a Serpent, proper only to the Countries of Egypt and Lybia; those who are bitten with it die within three Hours by Sleep and Lethargy, without any Pain; and Cleopatra chose this Death as the easiest.

Q. Give a short Character of this Queen?

A. She was a Woman of great Parts as well as great Wickedness; for besides being well skilled in Greek and Latin, she spoke several other Languages, and could readily converse with Ethiopians, Troglodites, Jews, Arabians, Syrians, Maids, and Persians, without an Interpreter.

R

Q. How

*Ant.* Q. How did Octavius act, after he had conquered  
*Mark.* Egypt, and put an End to the Civil War?

*Ans.* A. He cut off all of the opposite Party, the chief of  
 whom were *Antyllus*, Antony's eldest Son by *Fulvia*;  
*Cassius*, *Cleopatra's* Son by *Julius Caesar*; and *Candi-*  
*dus*, Antony's General; the rest of Antony's Children,  
 whether by *Fulvia*, *Octavia*, or *Cleopatra*, he received  
 with great Kindness, especially *Antony*, younger Bro-  
 ther of *Antyllus*, who became one of his chief Favourites,  
 and he married him to one of the Daughters of *Octavia*  
 his Sister, which she had by her first Husband *Marcellus*;  
 but he, at length, being convicted of adulterously cor-  
 rupting *Julia*, Daughter of *Augustus*, was deservedly put  
 to Death.

Q. How many Children had Antony by Octavia?

A. Only two Daughters, *Antonia Major* and *Antonia*  
*Minor*, from the latter of which were descended *Caligula*  
 and *Claudius*, from the former *Nero*, who all three be-  
 came Roman Emperors. During *Octavius's* Stay in  
*Egypt*, he went to visit the Sepulchre of *Alexander*, and  
 there saw his Body, which being embalmed, was still  
 preserved in a Case of Glass, *Strabo* (as has been before  
 observed) having taken away the Golden Case in which  
 it was formerly kept; but he would not see the Sepul-  
 chres of the *Ptolemys*, nor could he be induced to visit the  
*Egyptian Apis*, saying, He worshipp'd Gods not Beasts.

Q. Did Herod visit Octavius in Egypt after the  
 Death of Antony?

A. Yes, and thereby gained many Grants; for he re-  
 stored to him the Territory of *Jericho*, with the Balsam  
 Trees; gave him *Gadara*, *Byssa*, *Samaris*, the Towers  
 of *Gaza*, *Antebas*, *Joppa*, and *Straton's* Tower on the  
 Sea-Coast.

Q. Whither did Octavius go from Egypt?

A. He first went to *Antioch*, and settled Matters in  
*Syria*, then marched into *Prope Asia*, and the Summer  
 following enter'd *Rome* in three Triumphs, where he ar-  
 rived in the Month *Septemb.*, afterwards call'd *August*: The  
 vast Riches which he and his Army brought with them,  
 reduced the Value of Money there to one half, and the  
 Prices



Prices of all vendable Wares were doubled thereon: *Ann.* Henceforth he had the Title of IMPERATOR conferred *Mon.* upon him, and all who govern'd the Roman Empire afterwards, were called EMPERORS. From this Conquest of Egypt began the *Ætior* *Æra*, by which the Egyptians computed their Time till the first Year of the Emperor *Dioclesian.* *Ann. Dom.* 284.

*Q. Was Herod and Mariamne at yet reconciled?*

*A.* No, she bore him the utmost Aversion, which exceedingly perplexed him; and thus he continued harass'd between the two opposite Passions of Love and Anger, which latter *Salome* taking Advantage of, accused *Mariamne* of an Intention to poison him, and suborning his Butler to bear false-witness against her, she was put to Death, as was her Mother soon after.

*Q. How did she behave in going to Execution?*

*A.* She went with an intrepid Mind, without changing Colour on the Approach of Death, and died as she lived, Great, Firm, and Fearless, to the last; for she was a virtuous and excellent Princess; in Beauty, and other Charms and Graces of her Person, excelling all the Women of her Time, and would have been a Lady without Exception, could she have carried it with some better Temper to her Husband.

*Q. How did Herod bear the Thoughts of her Death, 3976 after his Wrath was allay'd?*

*A.* They caus'd bitter Reflections in his Mind, and threw him into down-right Distraction: What added to his Disorder was, a grievous Pestilence, which at that Time broke out in the Land, and caus'd off great Numbers of his Nobility and People, so that henceforth he never recovered his former Temper.

*Q. How did Octavius first establish himself in the 3977 Government of the Roman Empire?*

*A.* Having shed the Senate with his own Centurions, to cloak his Ambition, he offer'd to resign his Authority to them; on which the *Senate* Monarchy of it was given to him for ten Years, by the unanimous Consent of the People, this Method was taken only to make the

*Anno* Matter go plausibly down, but with Intention to renew  
*Mun.* the Lease when that Time was expired, and so he did  
 ~~~~~ as long as he lived, also now he took the Name of  
 3979 CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR AUGUSTUS.

Q. What was doing in Judæa at this Time?

A. *Salome* the Sister of *Herod* accused her own Husband *Cophobarnus* of conspiring against him, and procured him to be put to Death. After this *Herod* built *Samaria*, and, in Honour of *Augustus*, called it *Sebaste*, for *Sebastos* in *Greek* is the same as *Augustus* in *Latin*.

Q. Had *Augustus* as yet made any Alterations among the Governors of the Roman Provinces?

A. This Year *Petronius* was made Prefect of *Egypt*, and *Cornelius Gallus* recalled, who, on his Return to *Rome*, being too lavish of his Tongue, was impeached of Extortion, and other high Crimes and Misdemeanors, and condemned by the Senate to Banishment; to prevent which he slew himself. He was an excellent Poet, and familiar Friend of *Virgil's*, as his Tenth Eclogue, written to him, witnesseth.

Q. Was not the Name of *Augustus* now grown famous over the World?

A. Yes, and the remotest Nations of the North and the East sent Ambassadors with Presents to him, viz. the *Scythians*, the *Samatians*, the *Indians*, and the *Seres*.

Q. What People were the *Seres*?

A. They were the same we now call the *Chinese*, famous for making of Silk: Hence *Serica* became the Name of Silk, and *Sericum*, a silken Garment, both among the *Greeks* and *Latins*.

Q. How did *Herod* continue himself in Favour with the Jews, since his late Cruelties?

A. He now stood but upon indifferent Terms with them: but this Year producing a Famine, and that Famine a Pestilence, for the Remedy hereof, (his Treasury being empty) he melted down all the Plate in his Palace, and sent it into *Egypt* to buy Corn, to supply the Wants of his People: This reconciled their Affections to him.

CHAP VI.

Absolute and arbitrary Power given to Augustus; Petronius gains a great Victory over Candace Queen of Ethiopia; Marcellus's Death; Herod builds Sebaste, Cæsarian, &c. Eastern Provinces committed to the Charge of Agrippa; Ambassadors from Porus King of India; Augustus brings the Prisoners and Ensigns from Parthia; Of the Statue of Memnon; Herod begins to build the Temple at Jerusalem; Augustus succeeds Lepidus in the High Priesthood at Rome; Horace and Mecœnas die; Angel Gabriël appears to Zacharias; Birth of CHRIST; Herod's wicked Project and Death, &c.

WHAT farther Honours were conferred upon Augustus by the Romans, &c. about this Time? *Mun.*

A. This Year, entering into his tenth Consulship, absolute and arbitrary Power was given to him by a Decree 3980 of the Senate. Herod also, being now at Peace, built a stately Palace at Mount Sion, in which were two sumptuous Apartments, one of which he called *Cæsarium* in Honour of Augustus Cæsar, the other *Agrippæum* in Honour of Agrippa his chief Favourite. Herod also now furnished *Ailius Gallus*, a Roman of the Equestrian Order, and Augustus's General, with 500 Men out of 3981 his Guards, to make War against the Southern Arabs.

Q. What Success had Gallus in this Expedition?

A. He miscarried in it through the Treachery of *Syllæus*, who was a Person of great Craft, and chief

Ant. Minister to Obodas King of the *Nabathæan Arabs*; he *Mun.* knowing the Country, pretended to be *Gallus's* Guide; but thro' the Difficulties of the Way which he led him, when *Gallus* had lost the better Part of his Army, he was forced again to return after two Years, without effecting any Thing.

Q. How did *Petronius* manage the Government of Egypt?

A. *Candace* Queen of *Ethiopia* having invaded *Thebais* in *Upper Egypt*, he vanquished her Forces in Battle, sent a Thousand of her chief Commanders to *Augustus*, and the rest of the Prisoners, being many Thousands, he sold on his Return.

Q. What was doing in *Parthia* about this Time?

A. *Phraates*, King thereof, being driven out by *Tiridates*, prevailed with the *Sythians* to bring him back with a great Army; hereon *Tiridates* fled to *Rome* to pray the Assistance of *Augustus*: *Phraates* being informed thereof, sent Ambassadors after him to frustrate his Designs, and to demand this Rebel to be delivered to him, and also his Son, whom *Tiridates* had put into the Hands of *Augustus*.

Q. How did *Augustus* act in this Matter?

A. He not only refused to deliver up *Tiridates*, but permitted him to live at *Rome* under his Protection, allowing him a Maintenance out of the Publick Treasury, whereby to subsist with Plenty and Honour; but he sent back to *Phraates* his Son, upon Condition he should restore all the Captives and Ensigns which the *Parthians* had taken from *Crassus* and *Antony*. This was now promised, but not performed till three Years after, when *Augustus* went into *Syria*, and by the Threats of a new War induced him to do so.

Q. Have you any Thing remarkable this Year from *Rome*?

A. *Augustus* was now seized with a dangerous Sickness, of which, after trying many Medicines without Success, he was cured by the Use of the Cold Bath, and

and cooling Potions prescribed him by *Antanius Musa*, *Arch* the eminentest Physician of that Age among the *Romans*. But *Marcellus* falling sick, and using the same Method, it caused his Death, much to the Grief of *Augustus*, for he was the Son of his Sister *Octavia* by her first Husband, a Youth of great Genius, whom he intended for his Heir, in Case he had no Son of his own. This was the *Marcellus*, whose untimely Death *Virgil* so ingeniously sets forth in the Sixth Book of his *Æneids*.

Q. When did Herod finish the City of Sebaste?

A. This Year; and also now began to build another on the Sea-Coast at *Straton's Tower*, which he called *Cæsarea*. In making the Harbour, building and adorning this City, he spent Twelve Years. 3982

Q. How were Alexander and Aristobulus, the Sons of Herod by Mariamne, disposed of?

A. Being now grown up, he sent them to *Rome* for Education, and *Augustus* assigned them Apartments in his own Palace, and made large Additions to their Father's Dominions. All the Provinces of the East being, at this Time, committed to the Charge of *Agrippa*, who had his Residence at *Myssene* in the Island of *Lesbos*, *Herod* went thither to pay him a Visit, and the *Cadaverous* followed with Design to bring several Accusations against him; but *Agrippa* would give no Ear to their Complaints, put his Accusers in Chains, and sent them thus bound into *Judea* to be delivered unto him; *Herod* thinking to sweeten them by Clemency, dismissed them without any Harm, which quelled the Troubles raised against him.

Q. Did Augustus altogether reside at Rome?

A. He this Year went a Progress into the East; and on his Arrival in *Sicily* in his Way thither, sent for *Agrippa* to come to him, married him to his Daughter *Julia*, Widow of *Marcellus*, and sent him to *Rome* to take Care of the West in his Absence; then sailed into *Greece*, whither *Candace* Queen of *Ethiopia* sent Ambassadors 3983

And *ambassadors* to him to sue for a Peace, which was *immediately* granted.

Q. To what Parts did Augustus sail from Sicily?

A. He passed through *Lesser Asia* into *Syria*, where *Phraates*, after some Threats, restored to him the Prisoners and Ensigns taken from *Antony* and *Craffus*. After this *Augustus*, having settled all Affairs, returned to *Samos*, and there winter'd.

Q. Was there any Thing memorable done whilst he staid at Samos?

3985 *A.* He gave the *Samians* their Liberty, made them now a free City, and there came to him there Ambassadors from *Porus* King of *India*, with a Letter from him in the *Greek* Language, wherein he boasted to reign over six hundred Kings.

Q. Who were these six hundred Kings whom he boasted to reign over?

A. They were the *Raja's*, or petty Princes, who governed the Kingdom under him, of whose Descendants there remain even to this Day, who paying Tribute and Homage to the *Great Mogul*, govern at Home with Sovereign Authority.

Q. How many were there sent of these Ambassadors?

A. Only three came to *Samos*, the rest died by the Way, and one of these called *Zarmarus*, a *Gymnosophist*, following *Augustus* to *Athens*, burnt himself in his Presence, as *Calanus*, another of that Sect, had formerly done in the Presence of *Alexander*. The Usage and Custom of these Sort of Men was, when they thought they had lived long enough, to pass out of Life by casting themselves alive upon their funeral Piles.

Q. How was Augustus received at Rome, on his Return from this Progress?

A. With great Honour, particularly for bringing back the Prisoners and Ensigns from *Parthia*, and a Temple was erected in the Capitol, in Commemoration of it, dedicated to *Mars the Avenger*; nor did *Augustus* himself glory a little in this Matter, for many of his Coins still remaining have this Inscription, *Signis receptis*. Herod this

this Year made Preparations for rebuilding the Temple at Jerusalem.

Q. Who had the Prefecture of Egypt after Petronius?

A. Aelius Gallus, who made a Progress into the upper Parts of that Country, and took with him Strabo, the Geographer, who tells us, at Thebes, he saw the Statue of Memnon, which according to Poets, saluted the rising Sun every Morning with an harmonious Sound. On his being at the Place one Morning, he professeth to have heard that Sound, and not to know whence it proceeded, but suspected it came from one of the By-standers.

Q. Had Herod as yet made all Materials ready for rebuilding the Temple?

A. After two Years Preparation, he pulled down the old Edifice, and began to erect his new one. This Year also Augustus adopted Caius and Lucius, the two Sons of Julia, by Agrippa, and declared them Heirs of his Empire.

Q. How long did Herod's Sons stay at Rome?

A. He this Year sailed into Italy, and carried his Sons back with him into Judaea, married Alexander the eldest to Glaphyra, Daughter of Archelaus King of Cappadocia, and the other to Bernice his Niece, Daughter of Salome.

Q. How long did Agrippa stay at Rome after his last Return from Mityllene?

A. He was this Year sent again into the East, and on his Arrival in Proper Asia, Herod went thither to meet him, and prevailed with him to go to Jerusalem, where he was entertained with Splendor and Magnificence; but after a short Stay, he returned back to Ionia, and the next Year made War against the Bosphorans.

Q. What was the Cause of this War?

A. Alexander, King of Cimmerian Bosphorus dying, left his Kingdom to Dynamis his Wife, in whose Right he held it, for she was Daughter to Pharnaces, Son of Mithridates. One Scribonius, pretending to be a Grandson of Mithridates, and to have a Grant from Augustus, married Dynamis, and seized the Country: Hereon Agrippa

Agrippa sent *Polemon*, who was King of *Pontus*, and the *King of Lesser Armenia*, to make War upon him; but before his Arrival, the *Babylonians* having discovered *Scribonius* to be a Cheat had put him to Death, yet nevertheless refused to submit to *Polemon*, and tho' they had been vanquished by him on his first coming, they still stood out against him; this brought *Agrippa* upon them, and a dangerous War ensued.

Q. What Success had Agrippa in this Undertaking?

A. Herod hearing he was distressed at *Singae* in *Pontus*, came thither to his Assistance with a Fleet and Army, and with this Reinforcement he soon reduced them to a thorough Submission. For this timely Assistance *Agrippa* redressed all the Grievances of the *Babylonish Jews*, of which *Antiochus the Great* had planted 2000 Families in *Lesser Asia*, and *Herod*, the more to ingratiate himself with his own People, on his Return to *Jerusalem*, remitted one fourth Part of their Taxes.

Q. What particular Actions are rewarded of Augustus at this Time?

399 *A. Lepidus* being dead, who held the Office of *High-Priest of Rome*, *Augustus* took that Office to himself, as did all his Successors, as well Christian as Heathen, till the Time of *Gratian*, who succeeded his Father *Valentinian*, *Anno Dom. 375*. He being a zealous Christian, thought it inconsistent with his Religion, to take so much as the Title of *High-Priest* in Heathen Rights, and all his Successors followed his Example.

Q. Did Augustus reform any Things, under his Care by Virtue of this Office?

A. He first called in and examined into the Prophetic Books, Numbers of which having been dispersed abroad, created vain Hopes and Fears in the Minds of his People; of these he caused 2000 Volumes to be burnt, as spurious, retaining only those which bore the Name of some of the *Bible* for their Authors; these he put into two golden Cabinets, and hid them up in the Temple of *Aspella*, which he had built in the Palace.

Q. Who

Q. Who were these Sibyls, whose Oracles were of so much great Repute in the old Heathen World, and were approved Min. of, and so often appealed to, by the ancient Writers of the Christian Church?

A. They were Women of ancient Times, said to have been endu'd with a prophetic Spirit, and to have deliver'd Oracles, shewing the Fates and Destinies of Kingdoms; ten of which are mentioned in the Writings of the Ancients, who all, from the eldest of them being named *Sibylla*, were called *Sibyls*; but who they were, or when or where they lived, different Authors, as to these Particulars, write differently concerning them, and most they say of them is manifestly Fable and Fiction.

Q. But has it not been particularly observed, that some of these Prophecies can admit of no rational Interpretation unless when applied to the Messiah?

A. Yes, and as the Jews in their several Dispersions all the World over, were in earnest Expectation of *Christ's* coming, above 80 Years before his Birth, both from the Prophecies of *David* and other Prophets of the old Testament: These Things being often talked of among the Heathens in the several Places where they resided, at length insensibly grew into Reputation, and might be received among them as Prophecies from their own Oracles, and most of them became grafted among the Oracles of the *Sibyls*, as if they had come from them: Or perhaps, God having ordain'd that the coming of his Son should be foretold to the Heathens, might do it from their own Oracles. Thus he forced *Balaam* to prophecy of the coming of his Son out of *Jacob*; thus the Magicians came from the East to acknowledge and adore him; and thus he forced the Devils themselves, when cast forth by him, to own him to be the Son of God. By these two Means, all the Prophecies spread abroad among the Heathens concerning him and his Kingdom, whether *Sibyllike* or others, were first introduced among them.

Q. How did Herod and his two Sons by Mariamne agree?

A. They fell grievously under his Displeasure about this Title, for too freely expressing their Resentments for

Ann for the Death of their Mother, and Herod set up *Antipater* his eldest Son by his first Wife *Doris*, against them ;
 3992 *Agrippa* being now called to *Rome*, before his Departure, *Herod* waited on him in *Asia*, carrying *Antipater* with him, there introduced him into *Agrippa's* Favour, and sent him to *Rome* with him, where he got into the good Grace of *Augustus*.

Q. Who succeeded *Agrippa* in the Governments of Syria and Phœnicia ?

A. *Sentius Saturninus*, and *Titus Volumnius* ; and he, on his Return to *Rome*, was sent against the *Pannonians*, who had revolted ; but, on his Approach, being frightened
 3992 at the Terror of his Name, they submitted to such Terms of Peace as were required. *Agrippa*, on his Return, fell sick at *Campania*, and there died.

Q. Who did *Augustus* take for his Assistant in the Government, after the Death of *Agrippa* ?

A. He very unwillingly made Choice of *Tiberius*, and gave him his Daughter *Julia*, Widow of the Deceased to Wife, obliging him to divorce his former Wife, to make Room for her.

Q. Did the Breach between Herod and his Sons *Alexander* and *Aristobulus* still continue ?

A. It grew wider and wider, inasmuch as *Herod* accused them before *Augustus*, who at present reconciled
 3993 them, but gave the Father Power to chuse his Successor ; and he, on this Quarrel, named *Antipater* first to succeed him in the Kingdom, and after him the Sons of *Mariamne* : And now *Salome*, *Phœdras*, and *Antipater*, conspiring against them, filled the old King's Head with imaginary Plots against him, and caused him to put all the Confidants of those two Princes on the Rack, to extort
 3995 Confessions : Hereon *Alexander* was cast in Prison, and loaded with Irons.

Q. How was this Matter made up between them ?

A. *Archelaus* King of *Cappadocia*, whose Daughter *Alexander* had married, coming to *Jerusalem*, set all to
 3996 Rights again. In this Year *Herod* finished the Building of the Temple, and celebrated the Dedication of it with great

great Pomp and Splendour, which Day falling in with *Anna* the same Day of the Year in which *Herod* first came to *Mena* the Crown, much augmented the Solemnity: And it was requisite this House should be thus repaired, when the Lord thereof was coming to it; for within less than four Years *Christ* was born. The *Pontifices* at *Rome* having from the Time that *Julius Cæsar* reformed the *Kalendar* made every third, instead of every fourth Year, Leap-Year, by which Error three Days were added to the *Roman-Year*, more than should be; *Augustus*, as High-Priest, rectified this Mistake, and a Decree passed the *Senate*, that the Month hitherto called *Sextilis*, should from his Name be called *Augustus*, and so it hath been ever since. About this Time *Horace* the Poet, and *Mæcenæus* his great Patron died, who was a true and faithful Counsellor to *Augustus*, and, next to *Agrippa*, his greatest Favourite. The next Year *Tiberius*, on some 3988 Discontent, left *Rome*, and retired to *Rhodes*.

Q. How stood Matters between Herod and his Sons?

A. The Quarrel again revived by the Instigation of *Salome* and *Antipater*, and *Herod* obtained a Commission from *Augustus* to proceed against them, thereon procur'd them to be condemned in a Council at *Berytus*, and caused them both to be strangled at *Sebaste*. *Antipater* having nothing now that stood in his Way to the Crown, but the Life of *Herod*, (he with *Pheroras*, who died soon after) 3999 formed a Design to dispatch him by Poison, and *Antipater* was to go to *Rome*, *Pheroras* to retire to his *Tetrarchy*, to prevent Suspicion; but the Plot being discovered on *Antipater's* Return from *Rome*, he was put to Death,

Q. While these Things were doing in Judæa, what was done at Rome?

A. The Temple of *Janus* (the Gates of which always stood open in the Time of War) was now shut up, and continued so twelve Years. They had been shut only five Times since the first building of *Rome*. A proper Prelude, says Dr. *Prideaux*, for ushering in his Coming, who was the PRINCE OF PEACE, CHRIST OUR LORD. 4000 For in this Year, the Angel *Gabriel* appeared to *Zaccharias*

And Zacharias in the Temple, and foretold to him the birth of his Son John the Baptist. And in the sixth Month after, he was sent to Nazareth, a City in Galilee, to Mary, a Virgin of the House of David, lately espoused to Joseph of the same Line, to declare to her the good Tidings, that of her was to be born the SON OF GOD; and she being over-shadowed by the Holy Ghost, at the End of this Year, CHRIST THE SAVIOUR OF THE WORLD was born of her.

Q. How long did Herod live after the Birth of Christ?

A. Not long; and knowing the Hatred the Jews had to him, to prevent their rejoicing at his Death, he framed the most wicked Project that perchance ever entered into the Heart of Man; for he summoned all the principal and eminentest of the Jews, to appear before him at Jericho where he lay ill, on a Day appointed, on Pain of Death. When they arrived, he shut them all up in the Circus, and knowing his Death was near, ordered Salome and Alexas her Husband, as soon as he was dead, to send in the Soldiers, and put them all to Death, which, said he, will provide Mourners for my Funeral all over the Land, and make the Jews in every Family lament, whether they will or no.

Q. Was this horrid Design put in Execution?

A. Salome and Alexas not being wicked enough to perform what they solemnly promised, set them all at Liberty to return to their own Homes, without any Wrong done to any of them.

F I N I S.

20 11 57

